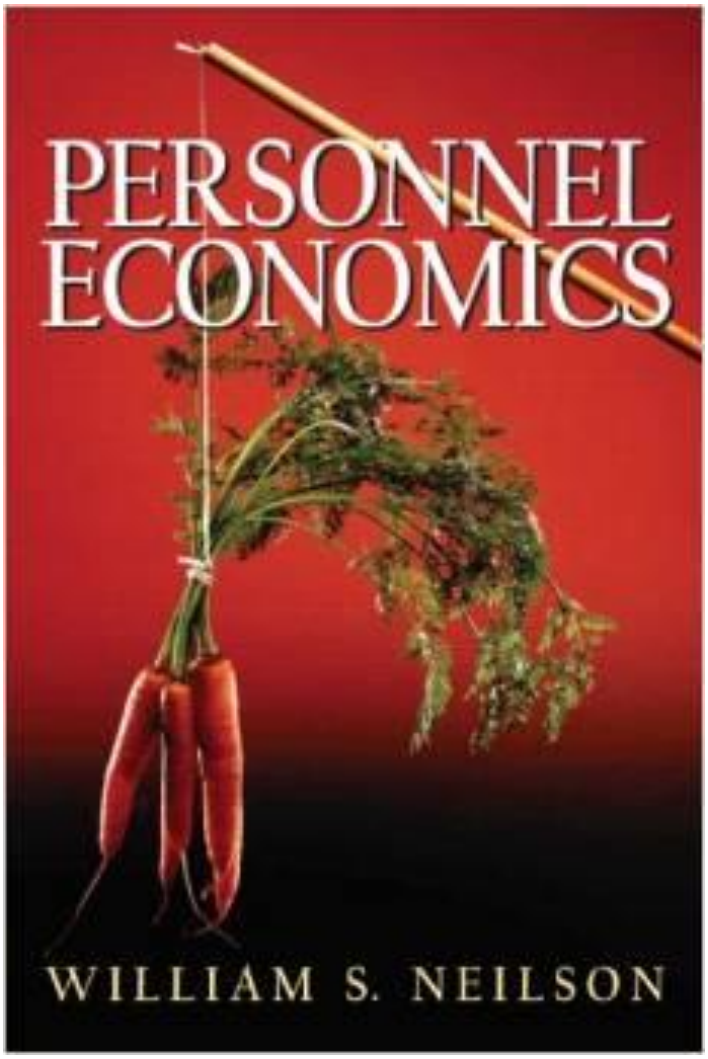


This book was previously published by: Pearson Education, Inc.
Now available for free via download at: http://web.utk.edu/~wneilson/Personnel.pdf

PERSONNEL ECONOMICS

INCENTIVES AND INFORMATION IN THE EMPLOYMENT RELATIONSHIP

WILLIAM S. NEILSON
DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS
UNIVERSITY OF TENNESSEE, KNOXVILLE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface

1. INTRODUCTION
- The Economics of the Employment Relationship
- The Economics of Incentives and Information

2. OPTIMIZATION
- "How Much" Decisions and Marginal Analysis
- Global Optimization
- General Lessons
- A Classic Example: The Short-Run Competitive Firm

3. TRADITIONAL LABOR MARKET ANALYSIS
- The Firm's Problem
- The Worker's Problem
- Labor Markets
- Labor Market Analysis and Personnel Economics

4. COMPENSATION AND MOTIVATION
- Worker Effort and Efficiency
- Compensation Schemes and Effort Choices
  - *Piece rates. Straight salary. Box: Do workers on salary work less than those who are paid for performance? Quotas. Commission. Box: Do workers really work harder when commission rates go up?*
- General Lessons

5. PIECE RATES
- Piece Rates at Safelite Glass
- Optimal Piece Rates
- General Lessons
- A Closer Look at the Salary Component
- Optimal Sales Commissions
- Motivating the Wrong Behavior

6. PROBLEMS WITH PIECE RATES
- Should Teachers be Paid for Performance?
  - *Box: Do incentives lead to "teaching to the test?"*
- Multiple Tasks
- Imperfectly-Observed Effort
- General Lessons
  - *The Equal Compensation Principle. The Incentive Intensity Principle.*

7. MOTIVATING MULTIPLE TYPES
- The Full-Information Case
- Moral Hazard
- The Optimal Contract for the Hidden-Information Setting
- General Lessons

8. GAME THEORY
What is a Game?
The Concept of Equilibrium
Simultaneous Games
Application: Assigning duties in a team. Lessons about simultaneous games.
Simultaneous Games with Infinitely Many Possible Strategies
Application: Output in a duopoly.
Sequential Games
Lessons about sequential games.
9. TOURNAMENTS
Some Examples
A Model of a Tournament
Optimal Effort for an Individual Worker
Competition Between Workers
Box: Do larger prizes really induce more effort? A numerical example.
Implications for Motivating Workers
Pay for performance? Pay structures in hierarchies. Box: The prize structure in golf tournaments. The Peter Principle. Promotions from within vs. hiring from outside.
Tournaments when One Worker has an Advantage
Ability differences. Favoritism.
Influence Activities
Sucking up. Backstabbing. Misrepresenting Information.
10. EFFICIENCY WAGES
A Model of Efficiency Wages
Repetition. Harsh punishment. Repetition and harsh punishment together.
General Lessons
Restrictions on the Firm's Behavior
Restrictions on wage reductions. Restrictions on firing. Unemployment insurance.
11. TEAM INCENTIVES
Why Teams?
Complementarities. Identification of contributions. Knowledge transfer. Fairness.
Three Approaches to Analyzing Teams
A game-theoretic approach. A public goods approach. A mathematical approach. Box: Splitting the bill in a restaurant. General lessons.
When Can Team Compensation Work?
Profit-Sharing and Gain-Sharing
12. COMPARISON OF INCENTIVE SCHEMES
Getting Workers to Work
When Can the Different Schemes be Used?
Who Gets the Surplus?
A Comparison of Problems
Choosing the Right Incentive Scheme
Technical support operators. College football coaching staffs. Dental hygienists.
13. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION
A Few Examples
Aligning the CEO's and the Owners' Interests

Stock vs. Stock Options
Insulating CEOs from Broad Market Swings
Box: Do CEOs benefit from laying off workers?
Why are CEOs Paid So Much?

14. PERFORMANCE EVALUATION
A Tale of Two Firms
The Supervisor's Problem
Box: How many rating categories should there be?
The Worker's Problem
Forced Rating Distributions
General Lessons

15. ADVERSE SELECTION
Trying to Hire the Best Workers
Box: Adverse selection an hiring airport security screeners.
When Does Adverse Selection Occur?
Box: Can baseball teams identify high-productivity players?
Solving the Adverse Selection Problem
Piece rates. Probationary contracts.
Adverse Selection in Other Areas of Economics
Used cars. Car repairs. Health insurance.

16. SIGNALING
Getting an Education
Discounting the future. General lessons about getting an education. Some real world numbers.
Education as a Signal of Quality
Signaling and Equilibrium
Is Education Really Just a Signal?
Other Examples of Signaling
Dressing for success. Licensing. Celebrity endorsements of charities. Deductibles in insurance. Warranties. Signals in nature.

17. SEARCH
Benefits and Costs of Search
Costs. Benefits.
Optimal Search
Important features of the optimal search rule. Box: Do people use the optimal search strategy?
Determinants of the Amount of Search
Job Search
Searching for a first job. Searching for a job when already employed. Searching for a job while collecting unemployment benefits.

18. BARGAINING
The Goal of Bargaining
Sequential Bargaining
The simplest possible bargaining game. A two-round bargaining game. A three-round bargaining game.
Impatience, Uncertainty, and Risk Aversion
Impatience. Uncertainty. Risk Aversion.
The Nash Approach to Bargaining
What can we learn from the Nash bargaining solution?
General Lessons

19. TRAINING
Training in Professional Sports
Training and Human Capital
Bargaining and the Value of Training
Bargaining. Conditions for training to occur.
Making Training Worthwhile for the Firm
Reducing the portability of skills.
Training and the Incentives to Remain with a Firm
20. BENEFITS
The Issue of Child Care
Preferences over Benefits and Pay
The most-preferred package vs. the one offered by the firm.
Cost Advantages for the Firm
The sources of cost advantages. Box: Pharmacies at Caesars casinos.
The Problems Faced by Small Firms
Glossary

PERSONNEL ECONOMICS

INCENTIVES AND INFORMATION IN THE WORKPLACE

PREFACE

Personnel Economics is, at its core, a book about the economics of incentives and information, but with all of its motivation, examples, and applications taken from the employment relationship. In the language prevalent in the economics research literature it covers such topics as principal-agent theory, moral hazard in terms of both imperfectly observed actions and privately-known types, adverse selection and signaling, and repeated games. In the more compelling (to students) language of the employment relationship, these topics translate respectively into using compensation schemes to motivate employees, motivating workers when their actions are only imperfectly monitored by supervisors, motivating workers when different workers have different productivity levels that are unknown to the supervisor, trying to hire high-productivity workers while avoiding low-productivity ones, and using efficiency wages as a motivational tool.

The language of the employment relationship is an appropriate channel for introducing students to these important topics from economics, primarily because undergraduate students find the employment relationship both relevant and inherently interesting. After all, most of them will be entering the work force in the near future, and many of them have worked somewhere and will be able to relate to the material in the course. The topics covered are of interest from both the employer's and the employee's side of the market. More specifically, students will learn how their employers attempt to motivate them and also about many issues related to the job search, including models of optimal search and bargaining. The book is written so that all problems are motivated by the employment relationship, not the theoretical topic to be discussed.

The topics in this course either do not appear or receive only limited coverage elsewhere in the undergraduate curriculum. In particular, labor economics texts typically have only one chapter on how compensation affects productivity, while half of this book is devoted to covering that topic in depth.

OUTLINE OF THE BOOK

The book is loosely organized around the two major topics of paying and hiring employees. The compensation section can be subdivided into a section on piece rate pay and a section on other, more strategic methods of compensation. The hiring section can be subdivided into one on adverse selection and one on finding a job and negotiating a

contract, and one on other, less information-based topics. The text contains two tools chapters, one on optimization, but without calculus, and one on game theory.

The text begins with a chapter reviewing optimization without calculus (Chapter 2). This will be a review chapter for every student who has ever taken an economics course, but I have found it best to reacquaint them with the concepts of marginal analysis and cost-benefit analysis since these are the primary tools used in the analysis of incentive schemes. A chapter on traditional labor market analysis follows. It shows how time and output are treated as being the same thing in the traditional supply and demand model, and it therefore serves as a point of departure for a discussion of how workers must be paid to work, and otherwise they will not produce anything. The next chapter takes a simple setting and shows that if the worker is paid on the basis of time he will produce as little as possible, but that there are a number of ways to base pay on output that can get the worker to produce the Pareto efficient level of output.

The text then moves on to specific compensation schemes, beginning with piece rate schemes in Chapter 5. These are the familiar linear incentive contracts from principal-agent theory, and all of the major results from principal-agent theory make their way into the book, but of course with the firm taking the role of the principal and the worker taking the role of the agent. The terms "principal" and "agent" do not appear in the book. Chapter 5 establishes the importance of aligning incentives with the worker's effort costs if the firm is to obtain the efficient level of output, Chapter 6 shows that compensation must be equated across tasks and that incentives should be reduced in the presence of imperfect monitoring, and Chapter 7 shows that when linear incentive schemes are used with high- and low-effort-cost agents incentives are reduced for the high-cost agents and the low-cost agents earn information rents.

Chapter 8 is a game theory chapter, covering the basics of simultaneous and sequential games that are needed for later chapters. The chapter is not intended to be comprehensive, or even remotely so; instead it is designed to provide students with only the game theory tools they will need for the remainder of the book. Game theory is used in the analysis of tournaments, efficiency wages, team incentives, and bargaining.

The tournament chapter is constructed using a model that is roughly analogous to the Cournot duopoly model. Specifically, the workers' marginal conditions are used to derive best-response functions which can then be used to identify the equilibrium. It is shown how workers respond to increases in their opponent's effort level and how an increase in the size of the prize leads contestants to exert more effort. Efficiency wages are also presented as a way to motivate employees, and this analysis is based on Benoit-Krishna-style finitely-repeated games. An efficiency wage scheme is defined as the event in which the firm pays an above-market wage and the worker exerts extraordinary effort. The focus is on the aspects of the game needed to obtain an efficiency wage scheme. Chapter 10 discusses team incentives using the approaches of game theory, marginal analysis, and the idea of team effort as a public good.

Chapter 12 reviews and compares the four basic compensation methods (piece rates, tournaments, efficiency wages, and team incentives). Chapter 13 uses knowledge

of these methods to discuss executive compensation, and Chapter 14 concludes the compensation portion of the book with a discussion of performance evaluation.

The focus turns to the hiring of workers in Chapter 15, which concerns adverse selection. It introduces basic problem of a firm trying to hire workers who have private information about their own productivity levels, and two solutions to the adverse selection problem are proposed. A third solution, signaling, is introduced in Chapter 16. Chapter 17 uses marginal analysis to examine the search process and Chapter 18 moves on to the issue of bargaining, covering both alternating-offers bargaining and the Nash bargaining solution. Many firms offer their workers benefit packages, and Chapter 19 discusses benefits. The final chapter explores employee training and its effect on the bargaining position of the worker.

Each chapter contains numerous motivating examples, a thorough economic analysis of the problem, and a summary of the general lessons to be learned. There are also homework problems at the end of each chapter (except the introductory one).

LEVEL AND PREREQUISITES

The book is written for students who have already completed a course in intermediate microeconomics. Two of the chapters (Chapter 3 on traditional labor markets and Chapter 19 on benefits) use indifference curve-budget line analysis. Many of the chapters use game theory, but since some intermediate micro courses cover game theory in more depth than others, the text includes a chapter on the game theoretic techniques that are actually used to study personnel economics.

The text is intended for an upper-division undergraduate economics class, but may be suitable for master's students in economics or an analytical course in an MBA program.

CHAPTER 1
INTRODUCTION

Taking a job in exchange for pay is, for most people, the single largest transaction they make in their lives. And while people buy things almost every day, the labor market is one of the few markets in which people are the sellers. The supply side of the market is fundamentally different from the demand side, especially when the sellers have private information about the product they are selling that they can conceal from the buyers.

Personnel economics is the study of the employment relationship, and it pays particular attention to the information problems inherent in any employment relationship. It also covers topics from all aspects of a worker's career. The employer must pay the worker enough to attract him to the job, and also in a way that gets him to actually produce something and not just collect a paycheck. Bad workers might pretend that they are good workers so that they can get a job, but once they are hired good workers might pretend that they are bad workers so that less is expected of them and they do not have to work as hard for their money. Employers have to search for employees, workers have to search for a job, and once a match is made the employer and employee must negotiate a contract. These new workers must be trained. Finally, compensation includes not only pay but also benefits. All of these issues lend themselves to economic analysis.

This book concerns all of these aspects of the employment relationship. As such, it is really a book about personnel issues. It is more than that, though. It is also a book about incentives since the employer must give workers an incentive to actually produce something. Economists have studied incentives in a number of different settings, not just the employment relationship. Accordingly, this book can also be thought of as one about the economics of incentives, but with all of the motivation and examples taken from the employment relationship.

Incentives are not the only issue, though. Workers often know things about themselves that firms do not. For example, a worker knows more about his abilities than the firm does before the worker is hired, and a worker knows more about how hard he is

working than the firm does. If the firm is not careful, workers can take advantage of this information. Economists have long been concerned with how agents deal with situations in which one party has information that another party does not. The third way to think about this book is as being about the economics of information, but with all of the motivation and examples taken from the employment relationship.

1. THE ECONOMICS OF THE EMPLOYMENT RELATIONSHIP

The employment relationship has two basic components: the hiring process and the compensation process. The hiring process begins when the firm decides what qualifications to require of its applicants. Why do some jobs require a bachelor's degree, even in an unrelated field, while other jobs do not? After posting their requirements, the firm searches for a worker, but how does a firm know when to hire a particular worker and when to hold out for someone better? On the other side of the market, when does a worker accept a job and when does he wait for a better offer? After the firm decides on a worker with whom to proceed, the two parties must negotiate a contract, and the bargaining process is of interest to economists. The hiring process does not end with a successful agreement, though. Some firms train their workers, and some firms start their workers off with probationary periods during which they get low pay and can get fired immediately if their performance is unacceptable. The rationale for these decisions is of interest.

Compensation must achieve two goals. First, it must be sufficiently high to attract workers to the job and keep them there. Second, it must provide workers with an incentive to produce output, because workers who do not produce do not generate any revenue (or profit) for the firm. Firms use many methods to motivate workers. Some methods pay the worker directly for output, such as when a salesperson is paid on commission. Other methods are less direct, such as when a firm awards periodic bonuses to top performers, or promotes top performers to higher-paying positions. Some firms even pay workers for other people's hard work, such as when workers are paid as part of a team or when the firm uses a profit sharing plan. Finally, some firms motivate workers by threatening to fire them if the do not perform.

Workers decide how hard to work in response to the compensation plan offered by the firm. Firms must design compensation plans that induce workers to put forth a level of effort that maximizes the firms' profit. Some compensation plans work better in some situations than in others. All of them are complicated by the fact that the worker's supervisor cannot always observe perfectly how hard the worker works. The tools of economics, especially marginal analysis and game theory, allow us to analyze when and how well these compensation schemes work.

Before too long most of you will be entering the labor force. Some of you will have employees to hire and supervise. The material in this course will provide you with

information that will allow you to do a better job in these tasks. Whether or not you become supervisors, all of you will go through the hiring process and be compensated. The material in this course will help you understand how the firm goes about hiring and illuminate some of the practices that employers follow.

2. THE ECONOMICS OF INCENTIVES AND INFORMATION

One of the central tenets of economics is that people and firms respond to incentives. In fact, most people share this belief. For example, it is widely assumed that if the police begin enforcing speed limits more strenuously, drivers will slow down. The incentive for driving slower is being able to avoid paying a fine (and higher insurance premiums), and drivers respond to this incentive. A child whose parents pay him a fixed amount for every book read will read more books. The incentive is the payment, and the child responds to the incentive. When the market price of a good rises, firms produce more of that product. The incentive for increasing production is the increased revenue from each unit sold. A lack of incentives is also important. If speed limits are not enforced, drivers will not obey them. If it is difficult for people to vote, they will not do so. If people are unwilling to pay for a product, no firm will produce it.

The economic analysis of incentives is concerned with the design of systems that provide the incentives for an agent to achieve a desired outcome. In the language of the employment relationship, if the firm wants the worker to produce a certain amount of output, it must design a compensation scheme which induces the worker to produce exactly that amount of output. This problem is complicated by the fact that the firm cares about how hard the worker works, but cannot compensate the worker for effort. Instead, it must compensate the worker for something tangible, like output or time spent at the job. Sometimes, though, the worker exerts a lot of effort but has no output to show for it, such as when a salesman works every day but does not manage to close any deals in a month. The firm must find a way to deal with the fact that pay is not perfectly correlated with effort.

This same problem occurs in the classroom. Some students work really hard but do poorly on exams, while other students do not study at all and still perform well. The instructor may even know which students are working and which ones are not, but must still assign grades based on tangible outcomes, in this case test scores. In many cases professors make grades depend on more than just test scores so that those students who work hard but test poorly can get better grades. The construction of course requirements is the design of a compensation policy.

Someday many of you will hire someone to build a house for you. You would like the builder to do a good job and do it on time, but many things are outside of the builder's control, such as the weather and the availability of subcontractors. How do you

design a contract that gets the builder to make the right tradeoff between speed and quality? This is a problem in the economics of incentives.

Information causes problems for the design of incentive schemes in two ways. First, as already discussed, the firm cannot reward the worker based on effort, but must reward the worker based on something tangible, such as output or time spent working. Second, the worker sometimes possesses information that would be valuable to the firm, but it is not in his best interest to reveal it. For example, the firm may want to pay highly-skilled workers differently from less-skilled workers, but it cannot tell which workers are which. The workers know which group they belong in, but they might find it worthwhile to behave as if they are in the other group. The firm must design an incentive scheme that gets workers to reveal this information.

This problem obviously arises in the hiring process. A firm might want to hire a highly-skilled worker but not a less-skilled one. Put differently, it might want to *pay* a highly-skilled worker but not a less-skilled one. Often, though, the two types of workers look the same on paper, so the firm has no basis for determining which workers are in which group. The firm must design a compensation scheme that allows it to hire only highly-skilled workers and not less-skilled ones.

The economics of incentives and information is a major research topic among academic economists. This course provides you with an introduction to the topic.

CHAPTER 2
OPTIMIZATION

The primary fundamental principle used throughout this book is optimization. Workers take actions that are in their own best interest and make themselves as well off as possible. Firms take actions that are in their own best interest and maximize profits. None of this should come as a surprise to economists, and the techniques discussed in this chapter are also discussed in introductory classes.

Why, then, discuss optimization here? There are three good reasons. First, it refreshes your memory. Second, it gets you to think about optimization in the way that it will be used in the book. Third, in principles classes optimization is almost hidden inside of the sections on consumer and producer behavior. Here optimization is treated as a general principle, hopefully reinforcing and extending what you learned in your introductory class.

1. "HOW MUCH" DECISIONS AND MARGINAL ANALYSIS

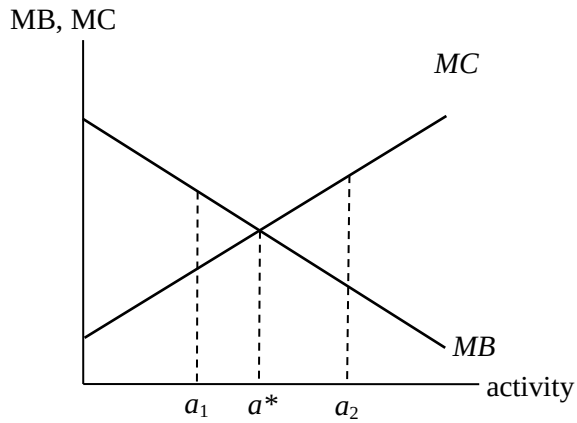
Many of the important questions in economics involve "how much" decisions. How much of a product does a consumer buy? How much should a firm produce? How much labor should a firm employ? How many hours should a worker work? All of these questions involve choosing the amount of an activity.

The answer to all of these questions involves marginal analysis. **Marginal benefit** is the additional benefit from engaging in one more (small) unit of the activity. **Marginal cost** is the additional cost involved in engaging in one more unit of the activity. If marginal benefit is greater than marginal cost, the individual should engage in more of the activity, and if marginal cost is greater than marginal benefit, the individual should decrease the activity.

Marginal benefit typically either decreases or is constant as more of the activity is undertaken. For example, when consuming pizza, the first slice provides more benefit than the second, which provides more benefit than the third, and so on. The marginal

benefit of a slice of pizza decreases as the number of pieces consumed rises. An example of constant marginal benefit comes from a firm in a perfectly competitive industry. The benefit a competitive firm receives from selling an additional unit of output is the price of that output, and when the firm is competitive, that price is constant no matter how much the firm sells (for a review of perfect competition, see Section 4 of this chapter). The line labeled *MB* in Figure 2.1 shows a declining marginal benefit curve.

FIGURE 2.1



Marginal benefit curves typically slope downward, and marginal cost curves typically slope upward. At activity level a_1 the marginal benefit of the activity exceeds the marginal cost, so the individual should increase the activity. At level a_2, $MB < MC$, so the individual should decrease the activity. At a^*, *MB* and *MC* are equal, and the individual should neither increase nor decrease the activity.

Marginal costs typically either increase or are constant as more of the activity is undertaken. For example, the cost of removing the first 10% of pollutants from automobile exhaust costs a lot less than removing the last 10% of pollutants. For an example with constant marginal cost, the price a person must pay for a gallon of milk at the grocery store is the same no matter how many gallons he buys. The line labeled *MC* in Figure 2.1 shows an increasing marginal cost curve.

When the activity level is a_1 in Figure 2.1, the marginal benefit curve is higher than the marginal cost curve. This means that the extra benefits generated by a small increase in the level of the activity outweigh the extra costs, and so the level of the activity should increase. More specifically, increasing the activity by one unit increases benefit by *MB* and increases cost by *MC*, and so **net benefit**, defined as benefit minus

cost, increases by $MB - MC$ which is greater than zero. This is true for every activity level where the marginal benefit curve lies above the marginal cost curve.

When the activity level is a_2, the marginal cost curve is higher than the marginal benefit curve. This time a decrease in the level of the activity leads to a cost saving that outweighs the loss in benefits. By decreasing the activity by one unit, costs fall by MC and benefits fall by MB. Since $MC > MB$, decreasing the activity by one unit leads to an increase in net benefit of $MC - MB$, which is greater than zero. This is true for every activity level where the marginal cost curve lies above the marginal benefit curve.

When marginal benefit and marginal cost are equal there is no reason to either increase or decrease the activity by a small amount. In the figure, this is activity level a^*, where the marginal benefit and marginal cost curves intersect. This is a **local optimum**, with the term "local" meaning that there is no nearby activity level that generates higher net benefit. So, at a local optimum, neither a small increase nor a small decrease in the activity level leads to an increase in net benefit.

2. GLOBAL OPTIMIZATION

Marginal analysis is an important part of answering "how much" questions, but it is not the only part. Marginal analysis finds a local optimum, but the answer to the "how much" question is a **global optimum**, that is, a level of activity such that there is no other level of activity that generates strictly higher net benefit. If an activity level is a global optimum it must also be a local optimum, because if it is true that no other level of activity anywhere generates higher net benefit, then it must also be true that there is no nearby activity level that generates higher net benefit. But a local optimum may not be a global optimum.

Figure 2.2 shows a case where the local optimum found by marginal analysis is also a global optimum. We can tell by looking at the cost and benefit curves. The global optimum is the point where the benefit curve is the farthest above the cost curve. In the figure, the benefit curve rises at a decreasing rate, which is consistent with a downward-sloping marginal benefit curve (recall that one finds a marginal curve by graphing the slope of the original curve), and the cost curve rises at an increasing rate, which is consistent with an upward-sloping marginal cost curve, exactly as in Figure 2.1. The local optimum a^* is found where $MB = MC$. Since marginal benefit is the slope of the benefit curve and marginal cost is the slope of the cost curve, the local optimum is where the two curves in Figure 2.2 have the same slope. As one can see in the figure, there is no other point where the benefit curve is farther above the cost curve, and a^* is indeed a global optimum.

Figure 2.3 shows a case where the local optimum found by marginal analysis is *not* a global optimum. The cost curve has the same shape as before, but the benefit curve is different. This time the benefit curve is horizontal when the activity level is between

zero and a_0, and then it is an upward-sloping line when the activity level is above a_0. Marginal analysis identifies the local optimum a^* where the two curves have the same slope. However, the vertical distance between the two curves is greater when the activity level is zero than when the activity level is a^*. So, the global optimum is zero, and it is labeled a^{**} in the figure.

The benefit curve in Figure 2.3 can occur in the following scenario. Suppose that a salesperson receives a salary of B_0, and gets no additional pay unless he reaches his quota of a_0 units. After he sells a_0 units, he receives a commission of b for every additional unit he sells, where b is the slope of the benefit curve above a_0. Selling is costly to the salesperson because it requires time and effort. According to the figure, he is best off taking his salary and selling nothing, since that is where his benefit curve is the farthest above his cost curve.

FIGURE 2.2

To find the global optimum, look at the benefit and cost curves. The global optimum is where the benefit curve is farthest above the cost curve. The local optimum is where $MB = MC$, which is where the benefit and cost curves have the same slope, as at point a^*. In this figure, the local optimum is also a global optimum, since there is no other point where the benefit curve is farther above the cost curve.

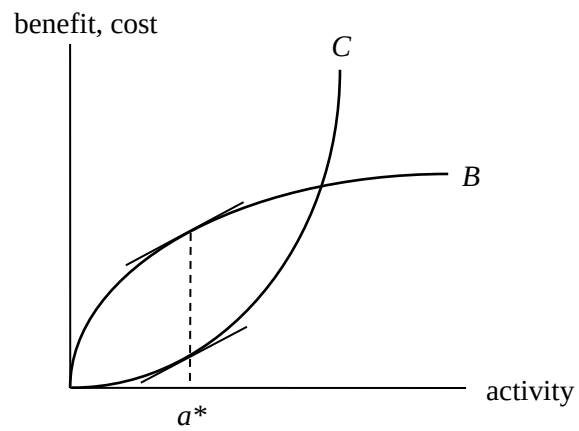


FIGURE 2.3

The marginal benefit curve is horizontal from zero to a_0, and then it is an upward-sloping line. The local optimum is a^*, where the benefit curve and the cost curve have the same slope. However, the vertical distance between the two curves is greater when the activity level is zero than when it is a^*, and so a^* is not a global optimum. The global optimum is zero, and is denoted a^{**}.

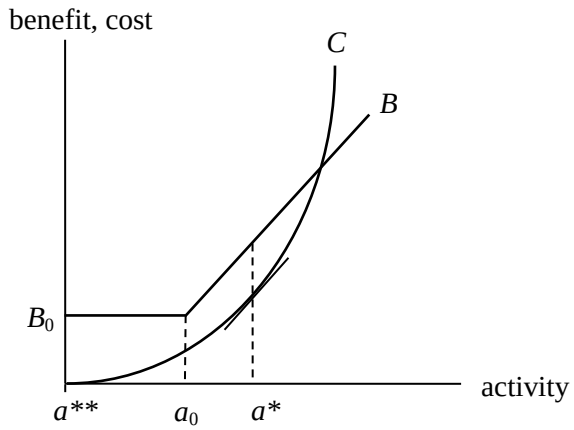
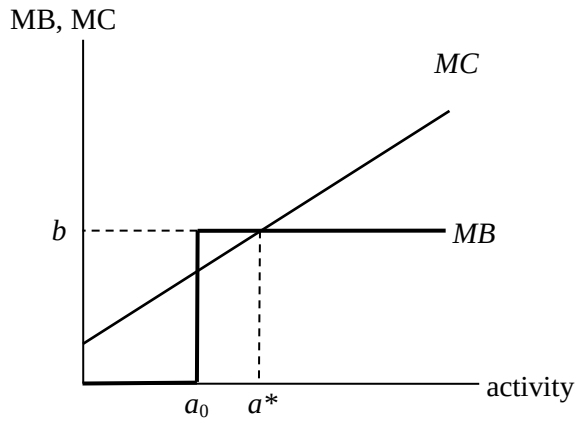


Figure 2.4 shows the marginal curves that correspond to the curves in Figure 2.3. When the activity level is below a_0, small increases in activity generate no additional benefit, so the marginal benefit is zero. When the activity level is above a_0, increasing the activity level by one unit increases benefit by b, and so the marginal benefit curve is horizontal at b. Since the cost curve in Figure 2.3 becomes steeper as the activity level increases, the marginal cost curve is upward sloping. The local optimum is found where the marginal benefit and marginal cost curves intersect. But, as shown in Figure 2.3, this is not the global optimum.

FIGURE 2.4

The marginal benefit curve shown here is derived from the benefit curve in Figure 2.3. Marginal benefit is zero for activity levels below a_0, and it is b for activity levels above a_0. The local optimum, found where $MB = MC$, is at activity level a^*. This is not a global optimum, though, as shown by Figure 2.4. Marginal analysis is not always enough.



We now have two examples, one in which marginal analysis correctly identifies the global optimum (Figures 2.1 and 2.2) and one in which it does not (Figures 2.3 and 2.4). Figuring this out took two graphs for each example. It would be nice if there was a way to tell from the marginal graph whether or not the second graph is needed, because then we could save some trouble. It turns out that there is a way to tell. Compare the marginal curves in Figure 2.1, where marginal analysis identified the global optimum, and in Figure 2.4 where it did not. In Figure 2.1 the marginal benefit curve crosses the marginal cost curve only once, and from above, while in Figure 2.4 the marginal benefit curve crosses the marginal cost curve, the first time from below. This turns out to be a general rule: if the marginal benefit curve crosses the marginal cost curve only once, and from above, then marginal analysis identifies the global optimum. If the marginal benefit curve ever crosses the marginal cost curve from below, it is necessary to look at the benefit and cost curves to find the global optimum.

3. GENERAL LESSONS

We can now identify some general rules for optimization.

1. *If the question begins with the words "How much," the answer involves marginal analysis.* "How much" questions are central in economics, and one of the things that makes economics different from the other social sciences is our reliance on marginal analysis to answer questions.

2. *Marginal analysis identifies the local optimum*. If marginal benefit is greater than marginal cost, the individual should increase the activity by a small amount. If marginal benefit is smaller than marginal cost, he should decrease the activity by a small amount. When the two are equal, neither small change increases net benefit, which is the definition of a local optimum.

3. *If marginal benefit crosses marginal cost only once and from above, then marginal analysis also identifies a global optimum.* If marginal benefit crosses marginal cost only once and from above, there is no need to check the benefit/cost graph to find the global optimum. Marginal analysis is sufficient.

4. *If marginal benefit ever crosses marginal cost from below, then marginal analysis may or may not identify the global optimum.* If marginal benefit crosses marginal cost from below, it becomes necessary to draw the benefit/cost graph to find the global optimum. The global optimum is the activity level at which the benefit curve is the farthest above the cost curve.

Occasionally in this text we will want to derive a marginal benefit function from a total benefit function or a marginal cost function from a total cost function. There are very simple rules for doing so. Suppose that the original function is linear with the form $F(x) = a + bx$. Then the marginal function is $MF(x) = b$. Graphically, the function $F(x)$ is a straight line with slope b and vertical intercept a. The marginal function should be the same as the slope, and it is. Now suppose that the original function is quadratic with the form $G(x) = a + bx + cx^2$. In this case the marginal function is $MG(x) = b + 2cx$. Linear benefit and cost functions yield constant marginal functions, but quadratic benefit and cost functions yield marginal functions that can be either increasing or decreasing. Since we will often want increasing marginal cost functions and decreasing marginal benefit functions, the rule for deriving marginal functions from quadratic functions is extremely useful.

4. A CLASSIC EXAMPLE: THE SHORT-RUN COMPETITIVE FIRM

The most common textbook example of a case in which marginal analysis fails to generate a global optimum is the profit-maximization problem faced by a competitive firm in the short run. A competitive firm is one that is small enough relative to the market that its actions have no effect on the market price, so that it can sell as much or as little as it wants without causing the price of the good to rise or fall. The short run is a period of time long enough for the firm to change the amounts of some of its inputs but

not all of them. In the short run some inputs are fixed and some are variable, leading to fixed and variable costs.

FIGURE 2.5

In the case of a short-run competitive firm, marginal analysis identifies the local optimum q^* where *MR* crosses *MC*. But, since *MR* crosses *MC* twice, the first time from below, the local optimum may not be a global optimum.

Since at q^* the firm does not cover its variable costs, the firm should produce nothing. The local optimum is not a global optimum.

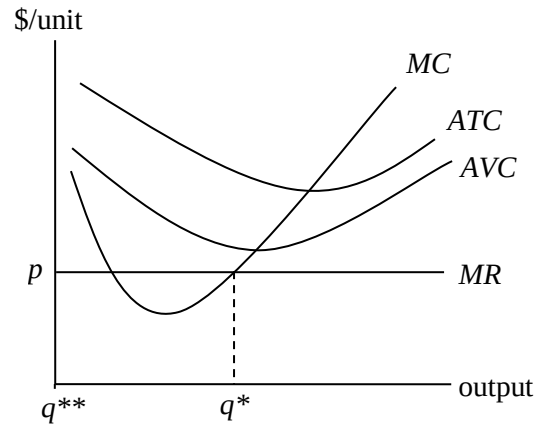


Figure 2.5 should be familiar, since it is found in virtually every introductory economics text. The firm's average total and average variable costs are shown by the curves *ATC* and *AVC*, respectively, and *MC* denotes marginal cost. Since the firm can sell as much as it wants at price *p*, its marginal revenue is equal to *p* no matter how much output it sells.

Marginal analysis identifies a local optimum where the marginal revenue curve crosses the marginal cost curve at point q^*. The only issue is whether or not this is also a global optimum. Notice that in the drawing the marginal revenue curve crosses the marginal cost curve twice, first from below and then from above. As we saw in previous sections, this means that the local optimum might not be a global optimum, and we should graph the benefit and cost curves to decide.

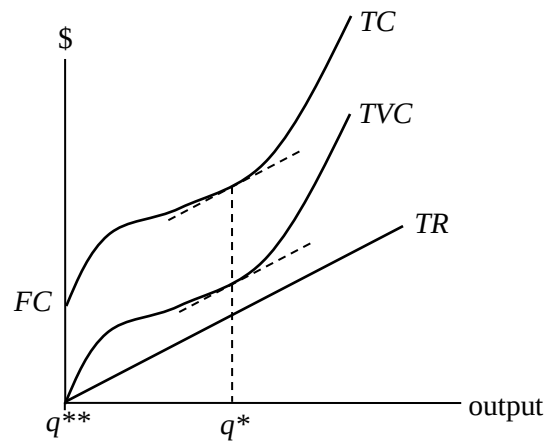
Actually, Figure 2.5 contains enough information to determine whether or not the local optimum q^* is also a global optimum. The firm must pay its fixed costs no matter how much it produces, so those costs are irrelevant to the analysis. The firm covers its variable costs if the price is above average variable costs, otherwise it loses additional money on every unit it sells. If the price is strictly above average variable cost, every

unit sold contributes to profit. So, the firm should produce q^* if the price is above average variable cost at q^*, and it should produce nothing at all if the price is below average variable cost at q^*. The way Figure 2.5 is drawn, the price is below average variable cost, so the firm should produce nothing.

It is informative to look at the corresponding benefit/cost diagram. Figure 2.6 has two cost curves, a variable cost curve labeled *TVC* and a total cost curve labeled *TC*. The *TC* curve is obtained from the *TVC* curve by shifting the *TVC* curve upward by the amount of fixed costs. The total revenue curve is labeled *TR* and it linear with slope p since the firm's revenue is $p \cdot q$, where p is the price and q is the amount sold. As stated above, the firm should produce if it covers its variable costs, and it should shut down otherwise. In Figure 2.6 the total revenue curve is always below the total variable cost curve, so the firm should not produce any output at all.

FIGURE 2.6

The local optimum identified by marginal analysis is q^*, where the *TC*, *TVC*, and *TR* curves all have the same slope. However, since total revenue is not enough to cover total variable costs, the firm loses money on every unit it sells and would be better off producing zero, which is the global optimum q^{**}.



PROBLEMS

1. Explain the difference between a local optimum and a global optimum.

2. Consider a firm that negotiates a lower price for a critical input. Assuming that no other prices change, use a marginal benefit/marginal cost diagram to determine whether the firm will produce more or less output.

3. The benefit function is given by $B(x) = 4 + 12x - 2x^2$, with marginal benefit function $MB(x) = 12 - 4x$. The cost function is given by $x^2 + 6x + 2$, with marginal cost function $MC(x) = 2x + 6$. Find the optimal value of x.

4. Explain how one can tell by looking at a marginal benefit/marginal cost diagram whether or not a local optimum might not be global optimum.

5. A hairdresser faces two types of costs: She must pay $400 per month to rent a chair at a local salon, and she must bear the cost of her own effort from cutting hair. Her marginal effort cost increases with the number of haircuts. Once she pays to rent the chair, she gets to keep the $40 per haircut she charges her customers. Draw benefit and cost curves corresponding to the case in which it is worthwhile to pay to rent the chair, and show the optimal number of haircuts per month.

6. The cost function is $C(x) = x^2 + 2$, with marginal cost function $MC(x) = 2x$. The benefit function is given by

$$B(x) = \begin{cases} 60 & 0 \le x \le 5 \\ & if \\ 12x & x \ge 5 \end{cases}$$

which has marginal benefit given by $MB(x) = 0$ if $0 \le x \le 5$ and $MB(x) = 12$ if $x \ge 5$.

(a) Find the value of x where the marginal condition holds.
(b) Find the global optimum.

CHAPTER 3
TRADITIONAL LABOR MARKET ANALYSIS

Personnel economics is about the employment relationship. So is labor economics. The two fields of economics are concerned with different aspects of the employment relationship, and approach the relationship in different ways. Labor economics is the older of the two fields, and uses more traditional tools. This chapter briefly outlines some of the results from traditional labor market analysis, which can then be used as a point of departure when we delve into personnel economics in the next chapter.

1. THE FIRM'S PROBLEM

The first step in analyzing the firm's problem is to figure out exactly what the firm is doing. More specifically, the firm makes a choice and we must figure out what the firm chooses and what its objective is. The answer is familiar: Firms choose the amounts of inputs to use in order to maximize profit. Typically in economics we look at two inputs, capital and labor.

If the firm uses L units of labor, typically measured in hours, and K units of capital, it produces output $Q = F(L,K)$, where F is the production function. The firm also faces a demand curve, and $P(Q)$ is the market-clearing price when the firm tries to sell Q units. Finally, labor costs w per unit, where w is the hourly wage, and the rental price of capital is r per unit.

This gives us enough information to write down the firm's profit function. If the firm uses L units of labor and K units of capital, it produces $F(L,K)$ units of output and sells them at the market-clearing price. The firm's total revenue is $R(Q)$, and since $Q = F(L,K)$, total revenue can be written $R(F(L,K))$. The firm's labor cost is wL, which is the hourly wage times the number of hours of labor employed, and its capital cost is rK, the rental price per unit of capital times the number of units of capital. Profit, then, is given by

$$\pi = R(F(L,K)) - wL - rK.$$

The firm chooses the amounts of capital and labor to maximize profit.

Because this chapter is concerned with labor markets, we will restrict attention to how much labor the firm employs. Since this is a "how much" problem, the answer involves marginal analysis, equating marginal benefit and marginal cost. Begin by looking at marginal benefit. Using labor benefits the firm by increasing revenue, and an additional unit of output increases revenue by MR, marginal revenue. An additional hour of labor increases output by MP_L, the marginal product of labor. So, an additional hour of labor increases revenue by $MR \cdot MP_L$, or MP_L units of output which each generate MR dollars of additional revenue.

There is also a cost to using labor since workers must be compensated, and each additional hour of labor requires the firm to pay the wage w. The firm's marginal condition equates the marginal benefit of labor with the marginal cost, or

$$MR \cdot MP_L = w.$$

The left-hand side is the additional revenue generated by a one-hour increase in labor, and the right-hand side is the additional cost. The firm employs labor until the extra revenue generated by an additional unit of labor equals the extra cost of it, which is the hourly wage. The left-hand side is often given a name, and it is the **marginal revenue product of labor**. The marginal condition states that the firm employs labor until the marginal revenue product of labor equals the wage rate.

FIGURE 3.1

The firm's marginal condition states that it employs labor until the marginal revenue product of labor equals the wage rate, or $MR \cdot MP_L = w$. The downward-sloping curve is the marginal revenue product of labor, and it is also the firm's labor demand curve. The horizontal line represents the wage. The firm maximizes profit by employing L^* hours of labor, which is where the two curves cross.

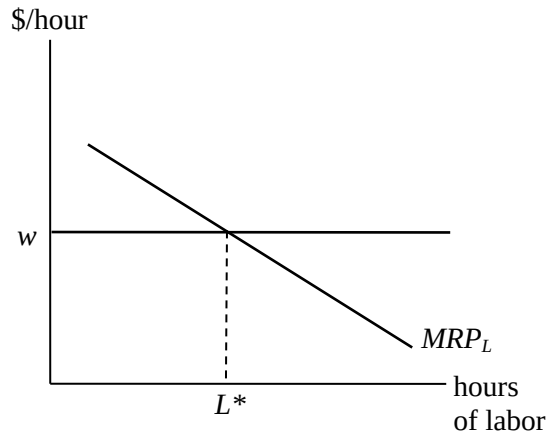


Figure 3.1 graphs the marginal condition. The horizontal axis measures hours of labor, and the unit for the vertical axis is dollars per hour of labor, which is the appropriate unit for both the wage rate (workers are paid a certain number of dollars per hour) and the marginal revenue product of labor (an additional hour of labor generates a certain number of dollars in revenue). The marginal revenue product curve is downward sloping for two reasons. Each additional unit of output generates less additional revenue than the unit before it, so that marginal revenue is declining in output. Also, each additional unit of labor generates less additional output than the unit before it, holding capital fixed, and so the marginal product of labor is also declining. Both components of marginal revenue product are decreasing functions, and so marginal revenue product is also a decreasing function. The wage curve is a horizontal line at the market wage. The firm employs the amount of labor where the two curves cross, marked L^* in the figure. Since the marginal benefit curve (MRP_L) crosses the marginal cost curve (w) only once and from above, L^* is a global optimum as well as a local optimum.

The marginal revenue product curve is the firm's labor demand curve. It shows how much labor the firm chooses to employ for every given wage rate. Using the components of marginal revenue product it is straightforward to find the factors that cause the firm's labor demand curve to shift. An increase in the demand for the firm's output causes prices to rise, which cause marginal revenue to rise, which shifts the labor

demand curve outward. An increase in worker productivity causes the marginal product of labor to rise, also shifting the labor demand curve outward.

2. THE WORKER'S PROBLEM

We now turn to the choices made by workers. Once again we address the problem by first determining what workers choose and what their objective is. Workers maximize their utility, which is the way economists usually discuss the behavior of individual people. What workers choose is a more subtle issue. Since this chapter is about labor markets, we want labor to somehow enter the analysis. But how?

Some people really like their jobs and get utility from working. More people, though, only work because it is a source of income, and income allows them to buy things that give them utility. Labor should not be an entry in the worker's utility function, since work does not provide any utility, but the income generated by work can be an entry in the utility function. We need a second argument, though. If income is the only argument, the worker should work as much as possible to maximize income. But this is not what people do. They work for part of the day, and then enjoy leisure time the rest of the day. We can make leisure be the other argument of the utility function. There are 168 hours in a week. If the worker chooses to work L hours in a week, then he is also choosing to devote $168 - L$ hours to leisure activities. Leisure time generates utility, and so the second argument of the utility function should be leisure time.

The worker chooses the amount of time to spend working to maximize his utility. His utility function can be written $U(Z,I)$, where Z denotes leisure and I denotes income. Working provides a benefit in the form of increased income, but it also imposes a cost in the form of lost leisure time. Working for one additional hour generates an additional hour's pay, w, and each additional dollar of income increases utility by MU_I, the marginal utility of income. Therefore, the worker's marginal benefit of labor is $w \cdot MU_I$, the additional utility from the income generated by working for another hour. Working for another hour reduces leisure time by one hour, and that causes utility to fall by MU_Z, the marginal utility of leisure. The worker's marginal cost of labor, then, is MU_Z. The marginal condition can be written

$$w \cdot MU_I = MU_Z.$$

The marginal condition states that the worker spends time at work until the marginal benefit in terms of increased income is equal to the marginal cost in terms of decreased leisure time. Put another way, the worker spends time at work until he is indifferent between spending one more hour at work to earn additional income and spending one more hour of leisure time.

It is customary to rearrange the above expression by dividing both sides by MU_I:

$$w = \frac{MU_Z}{MU_I}. \qquad (*)$$

The right-hand side is the marginal rate of substitution of income for leisure. To interpret it, think about the units in which the two terms are measured. MU_Z is utility per hour of leisure, and MU_I is utility per dollar of income. Consequently, MU_Z/MU_I is (utility/hour of leisure)/(utility/dollar) which reduces to dollars per hour of leisure. Consequently, the right-hand side of expression (*) is the number of dollars the worker is just willing to give up to get one more hour of leisure. The left-hand side is the wage, which is the number of dollars the worker *has to* give up to get one more hour of leisure. The marginal condition states that the amount of money the worker is just willing to forego for an hour of leisure is equal to the amount he *must* forego to get it.

FIGURE 3.2

The worker's marginal condition states that he works until the marginal rate of substitution of income for labor equals the wage rate, or $MU_Z/MU_I = w$. The upward-sloping curve is the marginal rate of substitution curve, and it is also the worker's labor supply curve. The horizontal line represents the wage. The worker maximizes utility by working for L^* hours, which is where the two lines cross.

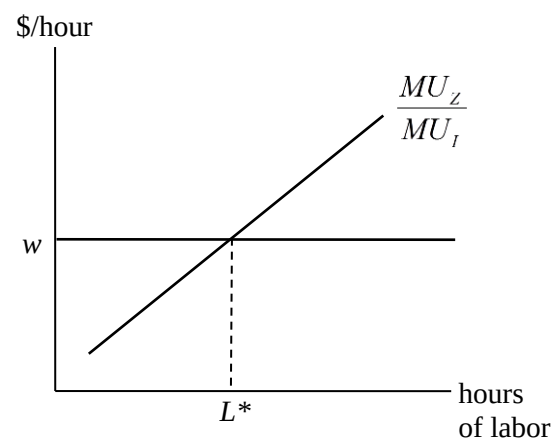


Figure 3.2 graphs the marginal condition $w = MU_Z/MU_I$. As the worker works more, he earns more income which makes the marginal utility of income fall, and he has less leisure time which makes the marginal utility of leisure rise. Accordingly, as he works more MU_Z/MU_I rises, since the numerator gets larger and the denominator gets smaller. The curve is upward-sloping in the figure. The marginal condition is satisfied where the marginal rate of substitution curve crosses the horizontal line through the wage

w, and the worker chooses to work for L^* hours. Since the marginal benefit curve (w) crosses the marginal cost curve (MU_Z/MU_I) only once and from above, L^* is also a global optimum.

The upward-sloping curve in Figure 3.2 is also the worker's labor supply curve. Since it is a supply curve, we are interested in the factors that cause it to shift. Constructing the supply curve from the worker's utility maximization problem makes this straightforward. Anything that causes the worker to desire income more causes MU_I to rise, which in turn shifts the upward-sloping curve in Figure 3.2 downward. This downward shift is also a rightward shift (draw it to see this), so anything that causes the worker to desire income more causes the labor supply curve to shift to the right. Examples of things that might cause the worker to desire income more would be having to pay for some large expense, like college or braces or a new vehicle. Anything that causes the worker to desire leisure more causes MU_Z to rise, which in turn shifts the curve in Figure 3.2 upward, which is also a shift to the left. So, for example, as the worker becomes older he values his leisure time more, and this causes his labor supply curve to shift to the left.

AN ALTERNATIVE APPROACH

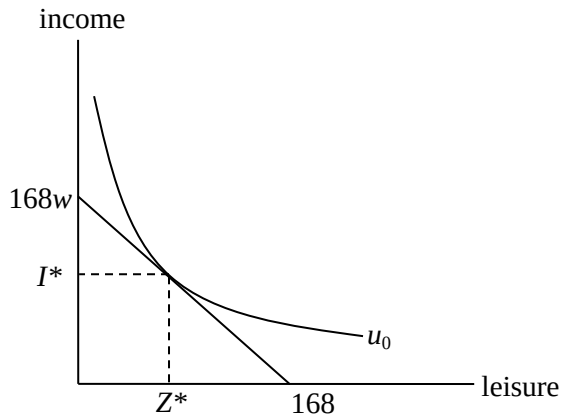
Most intermediate microeconomics courses take an alternative approach to analyzing the worker's labor-supply decision. The alternative approach uses indifference curves, and it yields some additional insight into the problem, and also leads to a more complicated shape for the labor supply curve.

Figure 3.3 shows a budget line/indifference curve diagram. The axes measure the two variables that generate utility for the worker, leisure and income, with leisure on the horizontal axis and income on the vertical axis. There are 168 hours in a week, and so the most leisure the worker can consume in a week is 168 hours. The most income he can earn comes from working for a full 168 hours, which is $168w$. The budget line connects the two points (168,0) and (0,$168w$). The slope of the budget line is $-w$, the negative of the wage rate.

FIGURE 3.3

The worker's budget line is downward sloping, and he can get a maximum of 168 hours of leisure if he does not work at all, or a maximum of 168*w* in income if he works every hour of the week. His indifference curve is downward-sloping, reflecting the tradeoff between income and leisure.

The worker maximizes utility by choosing the point on the budget line that is on the highest indifference curve.



An indifference curve is the set of points that all generate the same amount of utility. The worker can get additional utility from either more income or more leisure. To keep the level of utility fixed, then, if he consumes more leisure he must also consume less income. Similarly, if he consumes more income, to stay indifferent he must consume less leisure. This makes the indifference curves downward-sloping. Higher indifference curves have higher levels of both income and leisure, which means that higher indifference curves correspond to higher levels of utility. The slope of the indifference curve is the negative of the marginal rate of substitution, $-MU_Z/MU_I$.

The worker maximizes utility by finding the point on the budget line that is on the highest indifference curve, which is the point where the indifference curve is just tangent to the budget line, as shown in the figure. The tangency condition is that the budget line and the indifference curve have the same slope. Since the slope of the budget line is $-w$, and the slope of the indifference curve is $-MU_Z/MU_I$, the tangency condition is

$$w = \frac{MU_Z}{MU_I},$$

which is exactly the condition (*) we found using marginal analysis.

FIGURE 3.4

As the wage rate rises, the budget lines become steeper. When the wage rate is low, and the budget line is flat, the worker chooses to consume a large amount of leisure. As the wage rate rises the worker works more and consumes less leisure up to a certain point. Eventually the wage rate becomes high enough that the worker responds to further increases by consuming more leisure.

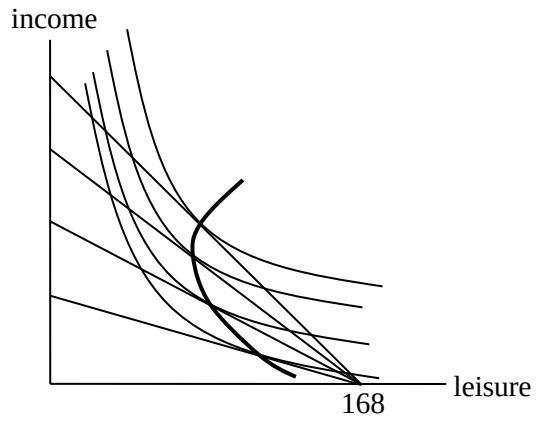


Figure 3.4 repeats this procedure for many different wage rates, allowing us to see how the worker's choice of how much leisure to consume depends on the wage rate. When the wage rate starts out low, the worker chooses to consume less leisure as the wage rises. This makes sense, since the wage is the price of leisure, and as the price goes up, people consume less. As the wage rate continues to rise, though, something different happens. For high wage rates, increases in the wage lead to increases in the amount of leisure consumed.

Since $L = 168 - Z$, a one-hour increase in leisure corresponds to a one-hour decrease in labor, and vice versa. So, when the wage rate is low, increases in the wage lead to increases in the amount of labor supplied. But, when the wage rate is high, further increases in the wage lead to decreases in the amount of labor supplied. The corresponding labor supply curve is shown in Figure 3.5. It is upward-sloping for low wage rates but downward-sloping (or backward-bending) for high wage rates.

FIGURE 3.5

Figure 3.4 shows that as the wage rate rises, the worker first decreases leisure consumption and then increases it. Since a decrease in leisure is an increase in labor, as the wage rate rises the worker first supplies more labor and then supplies less, and the labor supply curve is upward-sloping for low wages and backward-bending for high wages.

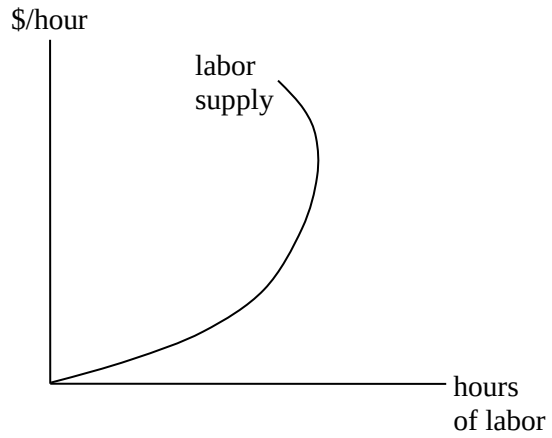


Figure 3.2 and Figure 3.5 do not match. Why not? Figure 3.2 draws the labor supply curve assuming that MU_Z/MU_I increases as the wage increases. This is a sensible first approximation because when the wage increases the worker's income increases, causing the marginal utility of income to fall. Since Figure 3.5 does not match Figure 3.2, though, there must be something wrong with this first approximation. The problem is that an increase in income also makes leisure more valuable, because increased income expands the possible uses of leisure time. A worker with more income can travel more, see more movies, watch TV using a better video system, and so on. The impact of increased income on the value of leisure can make the marginal utility of income rise, which means that the curve MU_Z/MU_I can bend backward, just as in Figure 3.5.

3. LABOR MARKETS

The primary contribution of the last two sections was to construct supply and demand curves for labor in ways that allow us to determine what causes the curves to shift. The most important use of supply and demand curves is to determine the effects of changes in either the workers' or the firms' circumstances on the amount of labor employed and the equilibrium wage. Figure 3.6 shows a supply/demand graph, assuming for the sake of simplicity that the supply curve is upward-sloping. The two curves cross where the quantity of labor demanded by firms and the quantity of labor supplied by workers are the same at L^*, and the corresponding wage is w^*.

FIGURE 3.6

When workers must pay higher property taxes, the marginal utility of income rises and the labor supply curve shifts to the right from *S* to *S'*. In the ensuing equilibrium the amount of labor employed rises from *L** to *L'* and the equilibrium wage rate falls from *w** to *w'*.

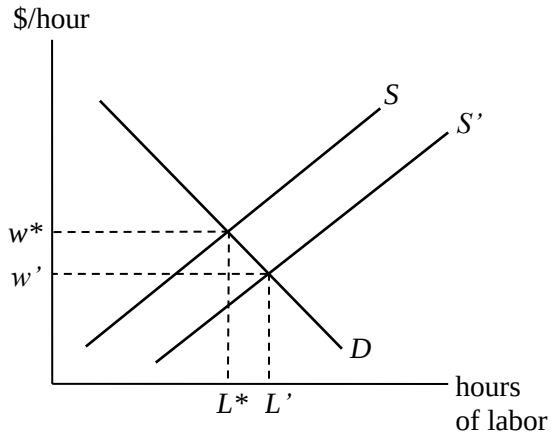
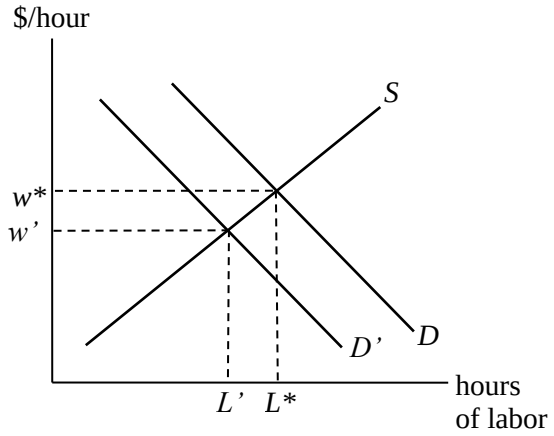


FIGURE 3.7

When demand for the firm's product falls, its marginal revenue also falls and it demands less labor. The labor demand curve shifts leftward from *D* to *D'*. The amount of labor employed falls from *L** to *L'* and the equilibrium wage falls from *w** to *w'*.



Suppose that there is an increase on the property tax on homes. What happens to the amount of labor and the equilibrium wage? Workers who own their own homes will find income more valuable than before because they must now pay additional property taxes. When income becomes more valuable the marginal utility of income increases,

which in turn shifts the labor supply curve to the right from curve *S* to *S'*. The amount of labor employed rises from *L** to *L'*, which makes sense because workers want to work more so that they can pay the extra taxes, and the equilibrium wage falls from *w** to *w'*, which makes sense because firms only employ more labor if the wage falls.

Now consider a different example. A wireless phone service provider is the worst in the industry, with terrible customer satisfaction, and the only customers it manages to hold onto are the ones who find it too costly to change their phone numbers when they switch carriers. As a result of a new law that allows customers to keep their phone numbers when they switch wireless providers, the wireless phone company suffers a large drop in the demand for its output. This reduces the firm's marginal revenue, which in turn shifts the labor demand curve to the left. Figure 3.7 shows the resulting equilibrium in which the firm employs less labor and the wage falls.

4. LABOR MARKET ANALYSIS AND PERSONNEL ECONOMICS

Traditional labor market analysis is quite useful for determining how changes in the circumstances of workers or firms affect the equilibrium wage and the amount of labor employed. It leaves two important issues unaddressed, though.

In the traditional labor market model, a worker chooses to go to work for a certain amount of time, and the firm pays the worker for the amount of time spent at work. Somehow during that time the worker produces some output. Why? More to the point, how does the firm motivate the worker to actually do something while at work? It is certainly possible to spend time at work without doing anything productive. The traditional labor market model makes no distinction between time at work and effort at work.

Personnel economics is concerned with how the firm motivates workers to produce output. Time and effort are not treated as interchangeable, and the firm must design its compensation scheme in a way that gets workers to exert effort. The next several chapters will look at how the firm designs compensation schemes to get workers to work.

In the traditional labor market model, all workers are the same and a unit of labor is a unit of labor no matter who provides it. In real life, though, some workers are more productive than others, and workers often know more about what makes them different than firms do. The firm would like to use this information to hire the right workers, but unless it can get prospective employees to reveal information about themselves, it cannot use the information. This can cause problems for hiring and also for the ways in which the firm motivates workers. Personnel economics is also concerned with how firms respond to this information that workers have but do not necessarily share with prospective employers.

PROBLEMS

1. What do firms choose and what do they maximize in the traditional labor market model? What do workers choose and what do they maximize in the traditional labor market model?

2. Explain why the wage is the firm's marginal cost of labor but not the worker's marginal benefit from labor.

3. Using a graph like the one in Figure 3.1, show the effect on hours of labor demanded when consumers boycott the firm's output.

4. Using a graph like those in Figure 3.3 and 3.4, show the effect on hours worked of an increase in the income tax.

5. A firm's labor demand function is given by its marginal revenue product of labor. Explain how the formula changes and how the demand curve shifts when the firm expands its market by exporting its product to another country.

6. A worker chooses the amount of labor that makes $MU_Z/MU_I = w$. Explain how this expression changes when a person gets married to a spouse with a high income. What happens to that person's labor supply curve after they get married?

CHAPTER 4
COMPENSATION AND MOTIVATION

Getting paid is great. It provides one with money to spend on things that the worker likes. However, getting paid also requires work, and work is often not so great. While some people are self-motivated and/or really like their jobs, it is uncommon for workers to enjoy every aspect of their jobs. Those unenjoyable tasks only get done because the worker is paid to do them.

Firms must pay workers to perform tasks that they would not otherwise perform. This is not as straightforward as it seems. One can readily observe a wide variety of compensation schemes that firms use to induce their workers to perform. Some pay a fixed amount per unit of time, such as a monthly salary or an hourly wage, while others pay a salary plus a bonus, or some amount per unit of output, or some amount per dollar of revenue produced, such as a commission. Some firms only pay workers if they reach some quota or other output standard.

In this and the next several chapters, we will explore how the firm's compensation scheme motivates workers to perform tasks they do not enjoy. In this chapter we look at a very simple employment relationship and look at the effectiveness of different compensation schemes.

1. WORKER EFFORT AND EFFICIENCY

In this chapter we restrict attention to an extremely simplified work relationship. The employee has only one task, and must decide how much effort to devote to that task. The task results in output for the firm, which it can then sell at the going market price. The worker finds exerting effort on the task to be unpleasant, which we interpret as being costly. The purpose of this section is to illustrate how effort affects the worker and the firm, and to determine the optimal level of effort.

The worker's cost of effort is given in Table 4.1. The worker can exert up to ten units of effort. Effort is unpleasant, reducing his utility, and the cost of effort can be interpreted as the dollar loss that gives him the same utility loss. So, for example, the utility loss from exerting 4 units of effort equals the utility loss from foregoing $320 in income. Exerting 7 units of effort leads to the same utility loss as foregoing $980.

TABLE 4.1
Worker's cost of effort

Units of effort	Cost
0	$0
1	20
2	80
3	180
4	320
5	500
6	720
7	980
8	1280
9	1620
10	2000

Each unit of effort produces one unit of output for the firm. The firm sells each unit of output for $800. However, the firm has some costs besides labor costs. Each unit of output also requires $560 worth of materials, so each unit of output generates $240 **net revenue** for the firm, where the term "net revenue" will always mean *revenue minus all non-labor costs* in this book.

Is there a "best" or "right" level of effort in this context? Exerting effort helps the firm but is costly to the worker. Exerting more effort helps the firm even more, but is even more costly to the worker. How do we know how much effort the worker should exert in this situation, and how do we know how much effort is too little or too much? Economists use the concept of Pareto efficiency in situations like this. An **allocation is Pareto efficient** if there is no other allocation that makes one party better off without making the other party worse off. If the worker exerts effort, he is obviously made worse off than not exerting any effort at all. But, if he exerts effort, he produces output that the firm can sell. The proceeds from the sale can be used to compensate the worker.

For example, if the worker exerts one unit of effort, he incurs a $20 effort cost. One unit of output is produced, which the firm sells for $800. After paying the $560 in materials cost, the firm has $240 left over. Since the increase in net revenue outweighs the cost increase, there is a gain to be shared. The firm could pay the worker, say, $30, and both the firm and the worker would be better off than they would be if the worker exerted no effort. So, we can determine that zero units of effort does not lead to a Pareto efficient allocation because it is possible to make both parties better off.

It is also not Pareto efficient for the worker to exert 10 units of effort. With 10 units of effort, the worker's cost is $2000, but the firm sells the 10 units of output for a

total of \$2400 in net revenue (\$240 net revenue per unit of output). The firm could pay the worker, say, \$2010 to compensate for the effort and still have \$230 in profit, so both parties can be better off with 10 units of effort than with zero. This is not the only comparison, though, and it is not the right one. Suppose that the worker exerted 9 units of effort instead. His effort cost would fall by \$2000 – \$1620 = \$380, while the firm's net revenue would fall by \$240. The cost saving outweighs the net revenue loss, so there is a gain to be shared. So, both parties could benefit if the worker reduced his effort level.

The first example showed that an effort level could not lead to a Pareto efficient allocation if the net revenue gain from increasing effort outweighs the increase in costs. The second example showed that an effort level could not lead to a Pareto efficient allocation if the reduction in costs from decreasing effort outweighs the loss in net revenue. We say that an **effort level is Pareto efficient** if it can lead to a Pareto efficient allocation. We also sometimes call this the **socially efficient** or simply the **efficient** effort level. For an effort level to be Pareto efficient, then, it must be the case that the net revenue gains from increasing effort do not outweigh the costs, and that the cost reductions from decreasing effort do not outweigh the losses in net revenue. In economic terms, this translates into a comparison of the marginal net revenue to the firm and the marginal cost of effort to the worker. The firm's marginal net revenue is the same for every level of output, since the firm receives \$240 in additional net revenue for each additional unit of output. The worker's marginal cost of effort must be calculated, and these calculations are found in Table 4.2. We compute marginal cost as the cost of the last unit of effort, so that the marginal cost of the nth unit of effort is simply the total cost of the nth unit minus the total cost of the $(n-1)^{\text{st}}$ unit. This formula does not yield a value for zero units of effort, because the formula requires subtracting the cost of unit -1 from the cost of unit 0, and there is no unit -1. Consequently we place a $-$ in the table for unit zero.

Using Table 4.2, the Pareto efficient level of effort is 6 units. The marginal cost of the sixth unit of effort is \$220, while the marginal net revenue is \$240. Since marginal net revenue exceeds marginal cost the sixth unit of effort should be exerted. The marginal cost of exerting the seventh unit of effort, though, is \$260, which exceeds the \$240 net revenue it generates. There is no way to make both parties (strictly) better off by increasing the effort level beyond 6, and consequently 6 units is the Pareto efficient effort level.

TABLE 4.2
Marginal cost of effort
and the Pareto efficient effort level

Units of effort	Effort cost	Marginal effort cost
0	$0	–
1	20	20
2	80	60
3	180	100
4	320	140
5	500	180
6	720	220
7	980	260
8	1280	300
9	1620	340
10	2000	380

The same effort level would be chosen if the worker owned the firm. In that case, all of the net revenue would go to the worker, and so he would choose the Pareto efficient effort level automatically. As the owner of the firm, the worker would choose to maximize profit, which would be net revenue minus effort cost. As discussed in Chapter 2, the solution to this problem is to exert effort as long as the marginal net revenue exceeds the marginal effort cost, which is what was done in Table 4.2 in choosing 6 units of effort.

Net revenue minus effort cost can also be considered a measure of social welfare. Net revenue is a gain to the firm, while effort cost is a loss to the worker. Combining the two yields net revenue minus effort cost, a quantity we call **total surplus**. In general, total surplus is the sum of all benefits minus the sum of all costs for all parties involved in the transaction, which in this case includes the worker and the firm but not consumers. According to standard marginal analysis, the effort level that maximizes total surplus is the one at which marginal net revenue equals marginal effort cost.

Consequently, we have three interpretations of the Pareto efficient effort level. The first is the effort level that can lead to a Pareto efficient allocation. The second is the effort level the worker would choose if he owned the firm. The third is the effort level that maximizes total surplus, a measure of social welfare. The first is the definition we began with, while the second works because it makes the same individual act as both the worker and the firm, so of course he will exploit all gains. The third one works because

maximizing total surplus gives the same marginal condition as with the worker-owned firm.

2. COMPENSATION SCHEMES AND EFFORT CHOICES

We have now found the level of effort that is "best" in the sense of both Pareto efficiency and maximizing total surplus. If the firm wants the worker to exert that level of effort, though, it must pay him to do so. The worker is selfish, and will behave in his own best interest, not necessarily in the best interest of the firm or social welfare. The purpose of this section is to explore some common compensation schemes and see if they are able to entice the worker to exert the Pareto efficient level of effort.

For each compensation scheme there are two issues to explore. First, what level of effort will the worker choose? The worker chooses the effort level that maximizes his compensation from the firm minus his effort cost. Second, does the firm gain or lose from the compensation scheme? The firm will not use a compensation scheme that leads to negative profit.

The compensation schemes considered here are commonly found in the real world. They include paying the worker per unit of output, commonly called a piece rate; paying the worker a straight salary; paying the worker after he meets a production quota; and paying the worker a percentage of the revenue he generates, commonly called a commission.

PIECE RATES

In a **piece rate compensation system**, the firm pays the worker a fixed amount for each unit of output produced. The **piece rate** is the amount paid per unit of output. For example, migrant farm workers are often paid by the amount of fruit picked, rather than the time spent picking. Some automobile windshield replacement companies pay installers by the number of installations they make, instead of by the hour.

To analyze such a compensation system, we must choose a piece rate to analyze. Start with a piece rate of $120. The worker receives $120 for each additional unit of effort, so his marginal benefit of effort is $120. His marginal cost is given in Table 4.2. The marginal benefit of effort exceeds the marginal cost at 3 units of effort, but marginal cost exceeds marginal benefit at 4 units of effort, and the worker exerts 3 units of effort. Obviously, this does not yield the efficient level of effort, so we need to find the right piece rate. Since the piece rate is the worker's marginal benefit, and since the worker exerts effort as long as the marginal benefit exceeds the marginal cost, to get the efficient level of 6 units of effort the piece rate must lie between $220, the marginal cost of the 6th unit of effort, and $260, the marginal cost of the 7th unit of effort. For example, if the piece rate is $230 the worker will exert 6 units of effort, earning a total of 6 x $230 =

$1380. His effort cost is $720, so he earns a net benefit of $660 from the employment relationship.

What about the firm? The firm earns $240 before labor costs for each unit, but pays $230 in labor costs for each unit. Consequently, the firm earns profit of 6 x ($240 − 230) = $60. The worker earns a net benefit of $660, but the firm only earns $60. This piece rate system does much better for the worker than the firm. In fact, the very best the firm can do is by setting a piece rate of $221, which is the lowest piece rate it can set and still be sure that the worker exerts 6 units of effort. In this case the worker earns income of 6 x $221 = $1326, yielding a net benefit of $1326 − 720 = $606. The firm earns $240 − 221 = $19 per unit for a total profit of $114.

The firm would actually be better off with a lower piece rate. If the piece rate is $181, Table 4.2 shows that the worker exerts 5 units of effort. The worker earns a total of 5 x $181 = $905, and incurs an effort cost of $500, for a net benefit of $405. The firm earns 5 x $240 = $1200 in net revenue, and pays $905 to the worker, for a profit of $295. The firm earns higher profit by inducing the worker to exert less than the socially efficient level of effort. This raises the question of whether it is possible for the firm to earn more than $114 in profit while still getting the worker to exert 6 units of effort.

One method that is used in many industries is to have the worker pay a fee to the firm at the start and then earn a piece rate. For example, hair stylists rent their spaces from the owner of the shop, and then keep all of the proceeds from haircuts. Some cabbies rent their cars from the cab company and then keep all of the proceeds from passengers. Accordingly, suppose that the firm charges the worker a $500 up-front fee, and then pays a piece rate of $230. A comparison of marginal benefit and marginal effort cost using Table 4.2 suggests that the worker exerts 6 units of effort. The worker earns (6 x $230) – $500 = $880, and his effort cost is $720, for a net benefit of $160. Since this amount is positive, the worker is willing to take the job and exert 6 units of effort. The firm earns net revenue of 6 x $240 = $1440 and its net payment to the worker is $880, for a profit of $560. By charging the up-front fee the firm is able to extract more of the surplus from the worker.

Of course, if the firm charges an up-front fee that is too high, the worker will choose not to work for the firm. Suppose, for example, that the firm charges a fee of $700 at the start and then pays a piece rate of $230. Comparing the worker's marginal benefit and marginal effort cost still suggest exerting 6 units of effort, but this time the worker's income of (6 × $230) – $700 = $680 does not cover his effort cost of $720, for a net benefit of –$40. If he refuses to take the job he exerts no effort at all and does not pay the up-front fee, in which case his income is $0 but so is his effort cost, yielding a net benefit of $0. He is better off not working when the up-front fee is too large.

STRAIGHT SALARY

Firms often pay their workers a straight salary. Sometimes it takes the form of a fixed amount per month, and sometimes it takes the form of a fixed amount per hour, otherwise known as an hourly wage. Either way, it is based on time, not effort or output. Let's see if a straight salary can induce the worker to exert the Pareto efficient level of effort.

To ensure that the worker's effort costs are covered at the efficient level of effort, set the salary at $800. So, the worker is paid $800 no matter what, and the firm asks him to produce 6 units of effort. How much will the worker produce? The answer is nothing at all. If he exerts 6 units of effort, his income is $800. If he exerts 5 units of effort, his income is still $800. If he exerts no effort at all, his income is still $800. No matter how much effort he exerts, his income is $800. Since additional effort does not yield additional income, his marginal benefit from exerting effort is zero, and so he will not exert any.

The worker benefits greatly from this compensation scheme. His pay is $800, but he exerts no effort and his effort cost is $0. His net benefit is $800. On the other hand, the firm loses from this compensation scheme. It earns no revenue, but still pays $800 in labor costs. The firm would not find a straight salary compensation scheme profitable.

Nevertheless, we see firms offering straight salary all the time, and you might object to the conclusion that workers do no work under this compensation scheme. And, in fact, workers on salary do work. Why? According to this analysis, there must be some other motivating factor. The most likely candidates involve consideration of the future: the worker works so he does not get fired or so that he does not earn a bad reputation. We explore these issues further in Chapter 10. The scenario considered here has no future incorporated into it, so there is no motivation for the worker to exert any effort. He gets his salary whether he exerts any effort or not, and he gets nothing extra for exerting effort, so he exerts no effort.

DO WORKERS ON SALARY WORK LESS THAN THOSE WHO ARE PAID FOR PERFORMANCE?

Harry Paarsh of the University of Iowa and Bruce Shearer of Université Laval in Canada compared the productivity of tree planters in British Columbia under two different pay systems.* In one system the planters were paid by the hour, and in the other they were paid by the number of seedlings planted. Their statistical analysis shows that, on average, the piece rate system induced the average worker to plant about 173 more trees per day than the salary system did, an increase of 23%. However, because the piece rate system induced workers to work more quickly, it also induced them to take less care in planting the trees, and only about 109 of the 173 extra trees were planted well. (The issue of piece rates and the quality of performance is explored more thoroughly in Chapter 6.)

There has recently been a move in the legislature of British Columbia, Canada, to require that tree-planters be paid a fixed wage rather than a piece rate. Not surprisingly, tree planting firms have resisted this move.

* Paarsh, H. and B. Shearer, "Piece Rates, Fixed Wages, and Incentive Effects: Statistical Evidence from Payroll Records," *International Economic Review* 41, February 2000, 59-92.

QUOTAS

In a quota system, a worker must produce a certain amount before he gets any money, and he gets additional money for producing more than the required minimum. So, a quota system is similar to a piece rate system for high amounts of effort. As already discussed, in order to get the efficient amount of effort, the firm should set a piece rate between $220 (to guarantee that the worker exerts 6 units of effort) and $240 (so that the firm does not spend more than marginal net revenue on the 6th unit of output). Taking this as given, all we have left to specify is the quota and the payment made when the quota is reached.

First look at a compensation system in which the worker is paid nothing for the first five units of output and $230 per unit for every unit beyond the fifth. So, the quota is 6 units, and the payment for meeting the quota is the same as the payment for additional units, $230. The relevant information for analyzing the worker's response is contained in Table 4.3.

The benefit the worker derives from effort is income. When he exerts 6 units of effort marginal income exceeds the marginal cost of effort, as desired. However, at that level of effort, the worker's cost of effort is $720, but his income is only $230, for a net benefit of –$490. If, instead, the worker chooses not to exert any effort at all, his income and effort cost are both zero, for a net benefit of $0. Under this compensation scheme, then, the worker will choose to exert no effort.

TABLE 4.3
Worker costs and benefits under a simple quota system:
Quota is 6 units, pay is $230 per unit for the 6th and every additional unit

Units of effort	Effort cost	Marginal effort cost	Income	Marginal income
0	$0	–	$0	–
1	20	20	0	0
2	80	60	0	0
3	180	100	0	0
4	320	140	0	0
5	500	180	0	0
6	720	220	230	230
7	980	260	460	230
8	1280	300	690	230
9	1620	340	920	230
10	2000	380	1150	230

The problem with the above compensation scheme is that it did not pay the worker enough to cover his costs, so he did not work. We can fix this by raising the payment for meeting the quota. Suppose that the quota is still 6 units of output, so that the worker is paid nothing for the first 5 units of output, but this time the firm pays $750 for the sixth unit, and $230 per unit for each additional unit. The resulting payments are found in Table 4.4. Once again marginal analysis suggests exerting 6 units of effort. This time, though, the worker finds it beneficial to exert the 6 units of effort, because his income of $750 more than covers his effort cost of $720. It is also important to check that the firm is making a profit. The firm receives $240 in net revenue for each unit sold, and pays the worker $750, for a profit of (6 x $240) – $750 = $690, so the firm profits from the compensation scheme.

TABLE 4.4

Worker costs and benefits under a quota system:
Pay is $750 for meeting quota of 6 units, plus $230 for every additional unit

Units of effort	Effort cost	Marginal effort cost	Income	Marginal income
0	$0	–	$0	–
1	20	20	0	0
2	80	60	0	0
3	180	100	0	0
4	320	140	0	0
5	500	180	0	0
6	720	220	750	230
7	980	260	980	230
8	1280	300	1210	230
9	1620	340	1440	230
10	2000	380	1670	230

Both of these quota systems set the quota high. The system that worked, the one depicted in Table 4.4, used a high payment for meeting the quota. It is also possible to devise a workable quota scheme with a low quota. Suppose that the quota is 3 units, so that the worker is paid nothing for the first 2 units of output, and he is paid $230 per unit for the third unit of output and every subsequent unit of output. The payments are shown in Table 4.5. Once again marginal analysis leads to an effort level of 6 units of effort, as desired. Also, income at this effort level is $920, which more than compensates for the effort cost of $720, so the worker will choose to exert the efficient level of effort. As for the firm, its profit is (6 x $240) – $920 = $520.

A quota system shares the feature of a piece rate system of paying the worker by the unit. But, compared to a straight piece rate system, the firm can earn additional profit when the worker is induced to exert the efficient amount of effort, because the firm does not have to pay the worker for the output below the quota. The firm must, however, pay the worker enough to cover his effort costs or he will exert no effort.

TABLE 4.5
Worker costs and benefits under system with a low quota:
Pay is $230 per unit for the 3rd unit and every subsequent unit

Units of effort	Effort cost	Marginal effort cost	Income	Marginal income
0	$0	–	$0	–
1	20	20	0	0
2	80	60	0	0
3	180	100	230	230
4	320	140	460	230
5	500	180	690	230
6	720	220	920	230
7	980	260	1150	230
8	1280	300	1380	230
9	1620	340	1610	230
10	2000	380	1840	230

COMMISSION

Many salespeople are paid by commission; that is, they are paid a certain percentage of the dollar value of sales that they make. The purpose, of course, is to motivate salespeople to sell more of the product. Commissions are very similar to piece rates, since both relate the compensation directly to the amount of output, but commissions are more flexible because they allow for differences in the value of the product. For example, a car salesperson might earn a certain percentage of the dollar value of every car he sells. Since every car is different, the commission gives him an incentive to sell more expensive cars. A straight piece rate, in contrast, would pay the salesperson a fixed amount per car sold, regardless of the value of the car.

In the example we have been using, the price of the good is $800, so commissions should be computed as percentages of the $800 selling price. Also, the firm spends $560 per unit on materials, which amounts to 70% of the price. So, the highest commission the firm can pay without losing money on the unit is 30%.

If the firm sets the commission rate at 28.75%, it pays the worker $230 per unit produced, which is exactly the same as setting a $230 piece rate. As we saw in Table 4.2, this induces the worker to exert the efficient level of effort, 6 units, but it does not yield much profit for the firm. So, commissions have exactly the same problems as piece rates, and for the simple example we considered here, every commission rate has a corresponding piece rate that induces the same behavior.

DO WORKERS REALLY WORK HARDER WHEN COMMISSION RATES GO UP?

Gerald Oettinger of the University of Texas, Austin, studied the response of baseball stadium vendors to changes in the commission rate.* Stadium vendors walk through the stands at games and sell beer, soft drinks, or food. While an individual vendor has the same commission rate for the entire season, the commission rate depends on seniority, so different vendors receive different commission rates at the same time. Prof. Oettinger found that, after controlling for the fact that more senior vendors might be assigned higher-demand products or better parts of the stadium than newer vendors, higher commission rates *do* have a positive impact on the dollar amount of sales a vendor makes. For example, the highest commission rate is more than 20% higher than the lowest commission rate, and vendors making the highest commission rate sell about 2.4% more than the vendors making the lowest commission rate.

* Oettinger, G., "Do Piece Rates Influence Effort Choices? Evidence from Stadium Vendors?" *Economics Letters* 73, October 2001, 117-123.

3. GENERAL LESSONS

The examples of compensation schemes in the preceding section illustrate three key lessons for using compensation to motivate performance.

LESSON 1. The worker will exert no effort unless his pay increases with performance. This fact was illustrated by the straight salary example. In that example, pay was unrelated to effort, and since effort was costly to the worker, he exerted no effort. The key to getting the worker to exert effort is to have a positive marginal benefit of effort, and since marginal benefit is the increase in the benefit as effort increases, the payoffs to effort must increase as effort increases.

LESSON 2. The worker will exert no effort unless his benefit from exerting effort exceeds his cost. This is hardly a surprise, but it led to the failure of several of the compensation schemes above. For example, in the quota system, if the payment for meeting the quota was too low, the worker would earn a negative net benefit from exerting effort, so would exert no effort, as in Table 4.3.

The first two lessons identify two requirements that a compensation scheme must meet if it is to induce the worker to exert costly effort. It must tie pay to performance, and it must pay the worker enough to offset the effort costs. The second requirement has been given a name which will allow for a convenient reference. We say that the **worker's participation constraint is satisfied** if the worker's pay exceeds the sum of his

effort cost and his opportunity cost at the relevant effort level. In this chapter we have assumed that the worker receives a net benefit of zero from the next best alternative use of his time, so the opportunity cost is zero. The worker's participation constraint then reduces to the worker receiving nonnegative net benefit.

LESSON 3. The firm will not offer a compensation scheme unless it expects to profit from it. The firm also has a participation constraint. We say that the **firm's participation constraint is satisfied** if the firm earns nonnegative profit at the relevant effort level. A straight salary compensation scheme does not satisfy the firm's participation constraint, because as argued above, the worker exerts no effort, and the firm suffers a loss equal to the amount of the worker's salary.

All successful compensation systems must meet these three requirements. They also serve to highlight the goals of a successful compensation scheme.

GOAL 1. A successful compensation scheme should induce the worker to exert the efficient level of effort. The opening section of this chapter argued that the appropriate level of effort is the efficient level, since it maximizes the surplus available for the firm and the worker to share. For this to happen, though, the firm must tie pay to performance in the right way (according to Lesson 1) and the worker's participation constraint must be satisfied (according to Lesson 2).

GOAL 2. A successful compensation scheme should enable the firm to keep as much of the surplus as possible. By exerting effort, the worker creates a surplus to be shared. The firm should choose a compensation scheme that keeps most, if not all, of the surplus as profit, leaving just enough of the surplus to ensure that the worker's participation constraint is satisfied.

The two goals work together. The compensation scheme should both make the surplus as large as possible and keep as much of the surplus as possible.

PROBLEMS

1. Define Pareto efficiency.

2. Explain the relationship between revenue, net revenue, and profit.

For problems 3 through 7, consider a worker and a firm with the following revenues and costs:

Units of effort	Worker's cost of effort	Firm's net revenue from effort
0	0	0
1	6	28
2	18	56
3	36	84
4	60	112
5	90	140
6	126	168
7	168	196
8	216	224
9	270	252
10	330	280

3. What is the optimal level of effort?

4. If the firm offers to pay the worker $15 per unit of effort, how much effort will the worker exert and how much profit does the firm make?

5. If the firm offers to pay the worker $10 plus $26 for each unit of effort past the second, how much effort will the worker exert and how much profit does the firm make?

6. If the firm requires the worker to pay the firm $20, and then the firm pays the worker $26 per unit of effort, how much effort will the worker exert and how much profit does the firm make?

7. If the firm offers to pay the worker $26 for each unit of effort past the fifth, how much effort will the worker exert and how much profit does the firm make?

CHAPTER 5
PIECE RATES

The preceding chapter showed the importance of tying pay to performance. If the compensation scheme is designed correctly, it will induce the employee to exert the efficient amount of effort, and both parties will benefit from the employment relationship. But, if it is designed incorrectly, the employee exerts an inefficient level of effort, and perhaps no effort at all, and it is entirely possible that one of the parties is made worse off by the relationship.

The compensation scheme performs two tasks: it induces effort from the employee and it ensures that both parties benefit. In this chapter we look at one particular type of compensation scheme, a piece rate scheme in which the employee is paid by the unit of output. While this is not the only pay-for-performance scheme, it is a particularly important one. First, it has been used by a number of firms in a number of industries. In fact, about 15% of manual laborers are paid according to piece rate schemes. At the other end of the spectrum, some lawyers are paid by the number of hours they actually bill to clients, not by the total number of hours they work. Second, sales commissions are piece rates, and sales commissions are extremely common. Third, outside of the standard employment relationship, many contracts contain clauses that are essentially piece rates, with one party paying the other party based on the amount produced. Fourth, and finally, piece rates are both simple to analyze and informative about the employment relationship.

1. PIECE RATES AT SAFELITE GLASS

The Safelite Glass Corporation is America's largest automobile glass service company, with its most familiar service the replacement of damaged windshields. In 1994 and 1995, the company gradually changed the compensation plan for its auto glass installers, switching from hourly wages to a piece rate compensation scheme. The company used a sophisticated data management system that kept track of how many and what types of glass were installed by each installer every week, providing the basis for the piece rate pay.

A straight piece rate scheme would pay a certain amount for each piece of auto glass installed. Safelite did not use a straight piece rate system, though. Workers were guaranteed a minimum of $11 per hour, and were paid about $20 for each unit installed. So, during a 40 hour work week, an installer was guaranteed at least $440, which is the same as he would earn from installing 22 units at the piece rate. If a worker installed more than 22 units, he would be paid according to the piece rate and earn more than $440. If, however, he installed fewer than 22 units, he would be paid the guaranteed wage of $440 for the week. This guaranteed minimum pay did two things. First, it reduced the fluctuations in installer's pay caused by fluctuations in demand, and second, it reassured workers who faced uncertainty because of the new pay system.

The theory tells us that under an hourly wage compensation scheme, workers would do the minimum amount of work required to keep their jobs, while under a piece rate system workers would be motivated to exert more effort. Edward Lazear of Stanford University obtained Safelite's pay records to determine whether or not the switch to piece rates had a positive impact on worker productivity.[1] He found that the switch to piece rates led to a 44% increase in output per worker. This is a significant increase, and it can be attributed to three factors. First, the piece rate system provided more incentives for workers, so they worked harder. This accounts for about half of the productivity increase. Second, the least productive workers did not fare very well under the piece rate system, so they left, raising the average productivity of the work force. Finally, the high pay available under the piece rate attracted new, highly productive workers, further raising the average productivity of the work force.

About half of the 44% productivity increase came from individual workers becoming more productive, and about half from a change in the composition of the work force to a more productive one. The workers who became more productive earned more than they did under the hourly wage system, with their average weekly pay rising by about 11%. So, about half of the 44% productivity increase came from existing workers trying harder, and about half of that increase was paid to the workers. The rest was kept by the firm. And, even though worker pay increased by about 11%, the firm's cost per unit installed fell by about 20%. So, both the installers and the Safelite Glass Corporation benefited from the switch to a piece rate system.

2. OPTIMAL PIECE RATES

The example of Safelite Glass demonstrates that piece rate compensation schemes can both motivate workers and generate profit for the employer. It does not show, however, what the piece rate should be. Characterizing the optimal piece rate is

[1]Lazear, Edward, "Performance Pay and Productivity," *American Economic Review* 90, December 2000, 1346-1361.

the goal of this section.

A typical piece rate system consists of a piece rate, or an amount paid to the worker for every unit produced, and a salary component that the worker receives regardless of how much is produced. We denote the piece rate by b, output by q, and the salary component by s. So, if a worker produces q units of output, his total compensation is given by

$$\text{Total compensation} = s + bq.$$

The worker chooses q to maximize his net benefit. His benefit from producing q is his pay, $s + bq$, but he must exert effort to produce it. His cost-of-effort function is denoted by $C(e)$. In this chapter we assume that it takes exactly one unit of effort to produce one unit of output, so that we can also use C as a cost-of-output function, $C(q)$. We make three additional assumptions about the cost-of-effort function. First, it is nonnegative, so that exerting effort is always costly (as opposed to enjoyable). Second, more output requires more effort, which in turn entails greater cost. Put another way, the cost-of-effort function is increasing in output. Third, each unit of output entails a greater cost than the previous unit, so that the marginal cost of output is increasing. The worker's net benefit is given by

$$\text{Net benefit} = s + bq - C(q).$$

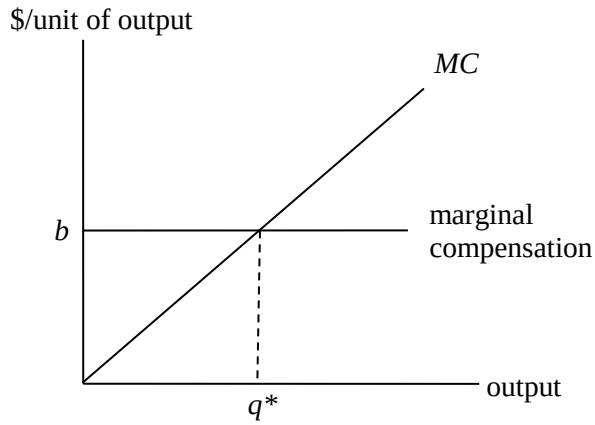
If the worker produces any output at all, he produces an amount that equates marginal benefit and marginal cost. His benefit from producing output is his compensation, $s + bq$, and the additional compensation for producing one more unit of output is simply the piece rate, b. So, marginal benefit is just his marginal compensation earned, which is the piece rate, b. Marginal cost is an upward-sloping function, and it is shown in Figure 5.1. The amount of output at which marginal benefit and marginal cost are equated is shown as q^* in the figure. Mathematically, if the worker produces anything at all, he produces an amount of output q that solves

$$MC(q^*) = b,$$

that is, the amount of output that equalizes marginal cost and the piece rate.

FIGURE 5.1

MC is the worker's marginal cost-of-effort curve, and the worker's marginal compensation is simply the piece rate. The worker maximizes net benefit when his marginal cost and the marginal compensation earned are equalized, which is at point q^*



The firm's problem is somewhat different. The firm does not choose how much output is produced, it chooses the compensation scheme, that is, the salary component s and the piece rate b. The firm's profit is its revenue from selling the q units of output less the costs of producing them. There are two types of production costs. One is a labor cost, which is just the compensation paid to the worker, and the other is the cost of capital, materials, and so on. We use the term **net revenue** to mean revenue minus all non-labor costs, so profit is simply net revenue minus labor costs. Letting the function $NR(q)$ denote the net revenue from selling q units, the firm's profit is given by

$$\pi(q) = NR(q) - [s + bq],$$

where $s + bq$ is the compensation paid to the worker.

The firm must pay the worker enough to ensure that the worker's participation constraint is satisfied. Suppose that there is some level of net benefit, u_0, such that if the worker earns net benefit below this threshold, he will not take the job. So, the compensation scheme must allow the worker to earn at least u_0. The worker's participation constraint is

$$s + bq^* - C(q^*) \geq u_0,$$

meaning that his pay at his optimal effort level minus his cost of exerting that effort must

be high enough to attract him to the job. But, the firm does not want to pay the worker any more than it has to, so it pays the worker just enough to satisfy the participation constraint exactly, that is, it sets pay low enough so that the worker earns net benefit exactly equal to u_0, or

$$s + bq^* = C(q^*) + u_0.$$

Now go back to the firm's profit function. Since it sets pay low enough to barely satisfy the worker's participation constraint, after substituting $[C(q) + u_0]$ for $[s + bq]$ the profit function can be rewritten

$$\pi(q) = NR(q) - C(q) - u_0.$$

The firm maximizes profit by equating marginal net revenue and marginal labor cost, which in this case means

$$MNR(q) = MC(q)$$

since u_0, the amount of net benefit a worker would receive at another job, does not depend on how much is produced at this job.

This tells us the profit-maximizing level of output, but not the optimal compensation plan. To get there, remember that the worker chooses an output level to make $MC(q) = b$. Substituting for the right side of the above equation yields

$$MNR(q) = b.$$

So, the optimal piece rate is equal to the firm's marginal net revenue.

FIGURE 5.2

The firm's profit is maximized when output is q^{**}, where the firm's marginal net revenue equals the worker's marginal cost of effort. If the firm sets the piece rate at b', the worker exerts too little effort, producing q'. The optimal piece rate is b^{**}, which induces the worker to produce the profit-maximizing output level, q^{**}.

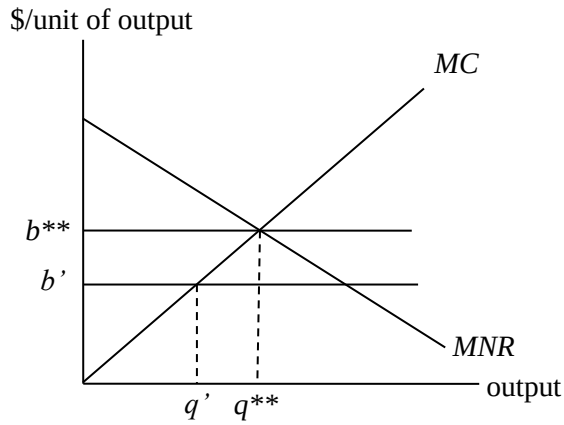


Figure 5.2 shows all of this graphically. The firm maximizes profit if it induces the worker to exert the amount of effort that equates the firm's marginal net revenue and the worker's marginal cost of effort. This is shown by output level q^{**} in the figure. The worker chooses the output level that equates his marginal cost with the piece rate. If the firm sets a low piece rate, like b', the worker exerts too little effort, producing only q', which is where the horizontal piece rate line crosses the marginal cost line. The firm earns less than the maximal amount of profit. The optimal piece rate is b^{**}, which induces the worker to produce q^{**}, which is the profit maximizing amount of output.

We can now fully characterize the optimal piece rate compensation scheme. The optimal piece rate, b^{**}, is determined by the marginal condition

$$MNR(q^{**}) = MC(q^{**}) = b^{**}.$$

The optimal salary component is set so that the worker's participation constraint is just satisfied:

$$s^{**} = u_0 - [b^{**}q^{**} - C(q^{**})].$$

The optimal salary component ensures that the worker's total net benefit is equal to u_0, the net benefit level required to attract him to the job.

3. GENERAL LESSONS

The construction of the optimal piece rate contains some important general results.

1. *Piece rates motivate workers*. As is always the case, the worker equates his marginal compensation and his marginal effort cost as long as his participation constraint is satisfied. With a piece rate scheme, the piece rate *is* the marginal compensation. Higher piece rates induce the worker to exert more effort and produce more output by moving the worker up his marginal cost-of-effort curve.

2. *The optimal piece rate is equal to the firm's marginal net revenue*. By setting the piece rate equal to marginal net revenue at the optimal output level, the firm induces the worker to exert the optimal amount of effort and produce the optimal amount of output, as in Figure 5.2. There are good reasons for this. For the firm to maximize profit, the worker must act in the best interest of the firm. The only way for this to happen is for the worker to have the same incentives as the firm, and the firm's incentives come from the fact that for each additional unit produced, it earns a potential profit equal to marginal net revenue. To provide the worker with the same incentives, the firm must pay a piece rate equal to marginal net revenue.

3. *The salary component only impacts the distribution of the surplus*. Since the amount of salary does not depend on the amount the worker produces, it does not enter into the marginal analysis, and has no effect on how much effort the worker exerts *if* he exerts any at all. But it is an important determinant of whether or not the worker takes the job. At the same time, the firm wants the salary to be low because lower salary means more profit for the firm.

4. *The firm's profit must be at least zero*. Although this was not discussed in the preceding section, the firm has a participation constraint, too. The firm can earn zero profit if it does not hire the worker, so for the firm to hire the worker, the firm must make at least zero profit from the employment relationship. Since the firm's profit is given by $\pi(q^{**}) = R(q^{**}) - [C(q^{**}) + u_0]$, the worker's cost of effort must be less than the firm's net revenue at the optimal output level, q^{**}.

5. *The optimal piece rate scheme leads to a Pareto efficient outcome*. An allocation is Pareto efficient (or socially efficient) if there is no other allocation that makes one party better off without making the other party worse off. The optimal piece rate scheme induces the worker to produce q^{**} units of output, which equalizes the firm's marginal net revenue and the worker's marginal cost. If the worker produced more than

q^{**}, the firm would have to provide additional compensation that would exceed the firm's additional net revenue, so it is impossible to make both parties better off by increasing the piece rate to induce more production. If the worker produced less than q^{**}, the firm would be able to compensate the worker less, but its net revenue would fall by more than this amount, so at least one of the parties would be hurt by reducing output. Also, since both the worker's and the firm's participation constraints are satisfied, neither party can be made better off by terminating the employment relationship. Consequently, there is no way to make one party better off without hurting the other party. If chosen correctly, a piece rate compensation scheme can lead to a socially optimal outcome.

4. A CLOSER LOOK AT THE SALARY COMPONENT

As we determined in Section 2, the optimal salary component of the piece rate compensation scheme is set to exactly satisfy the worker's participation constraint. Let's take a closer look at exactly what this means.

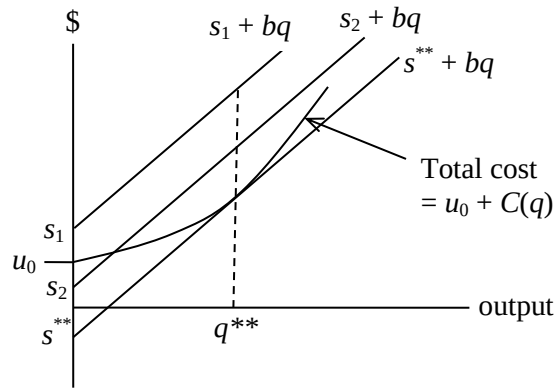
Suppose that the firm sets the piece rate at b and the salary at s_1. Figure 5.3 shows the worker's compensation as a function of the amount of output he produces. If he produces nothing he is paid s_1, and each additional unit of output increases his pay by the piece rate, b. Consequently, his total compensation is a line with intercept s_1 and slope b.

Figure 5.3 also shows the worker's costs. The worker faces two types of costs. The first is his effort cost, which is captured by the function $C(q)$. The other is the worker's opportunity cost, the foregone net benefit he would have received if he did not take the job. The opportunity cost is u_0. His total cost, then, is $u_0 + C(q)$, which is also shown in the figure. Since his net benefit is total compensation minus effort cost, his optimal output level is the one at which the total compensation line is the farthest above the cost curve.

FIGURE 5.3

The worker's compensation is given by $s + bq$, and his cost is given by $u_0 + C(q)$, where u_0 is his opportunity cost. The vertical distance between the compensation line and the cost curve is the worker's surplus from the employment relationship.

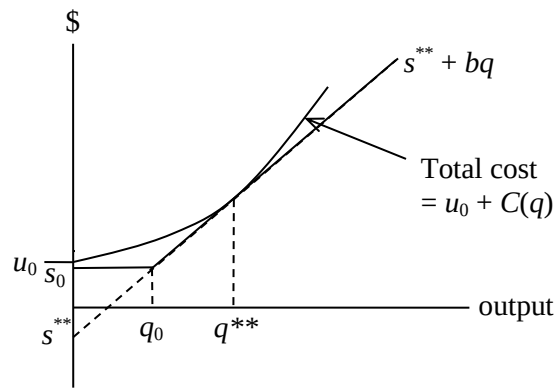
To maximize profit, the firm must give the worker as little surplus as possible. This is achieved by reducing the salary to s^{**}, so that the compensation line is tangent to the cost curve and the worker's surplus is zero.



When the salary is set at s_1, the worker chooses to produce output q^{**} and his total compensation is above his total cost. The worker earns strictly positive surplus. But remember, it is the firm that sets salary, not the worker. Is this the best the firm can do? The answer is no. The worker does not need this much surplus in order to take the job, and he would still take the job if the surplus was lower. So, the firm could cut the salary to s_2, which shifts the total compensation curve downward. Cutting the salary would reduce the worker's surplus but still leave it positive. By cutting the salary, the firm can keep more of the surplus for itself. But when the salary is s_2 the worker's surplus is still positive, and the firm can still do better. The firm can keep cutting salary until it is equal to s^{**}, at which the total compensation curve is tangent to the total cost curve. At this point the worker's surplus is zero and his participation constraint is exactly satisfied. This is the optimal salary computed in Section 2.

FIGURE 5.4

The firm can achieve exactly the same results as setting the negative salary s^{**} through a different compensation scheme without the negative salary component. The firm pays the worker a salary of s_0 and sets a quota of q_0. The worker earns an additional b per unit for each unit above the quota. The worker's compensation curve is now kinked, being horizontal at s_0 for output levels below q_0 and rising for output levels above q_0.



The optimal salary shown in Figure 5.3 is negative. We discussed negative salary components in Chapter 4. There are also ways around the negative salary component. Figure 5.4 shows an alternative compensation scheme. In this compensation scheme the worker earns salary s_0 and receives a piece rate, but he does not get paid for every unit of output he produces. He receives nothing for the first q_0 units, and then receives the piece rate b for every unit above that. In other words, he has a quota of q_0 and receives no additional pay until he meets his quota. He gets paid an additional amount b for each unit he produces above the quota. This is a realistic compensation scheme, and it allows the firm to keep all of the surplus without using a negative salary component.

5. MOTIVATING THE WRONG BEHAVIOR

The theory predicts, and the evidence shows, that piece rates motivate workers, and that properly-set piece rates induce behavior that maximizes the firm's profit. Sometimes, though, the system is poorly designed, so that it motivates the wrong behavior. This section includes a few examples.[2]

[2] Unless otherwise noted, these examples are from Prendergast, Canice, "The Provision of Incentives in Firms," *Journal of Economic Literature*, March 1999, 7-63;

In 1992, Sears Auto Centers in California and New Jersey were caught selling unnecessary repairs. There were many documented instances of replacing good parts, and Sears eventually agreed to pay $8 million to settle the California charges and to make restitution to customers nationwide. One of the major causes of the problem was the way Sears compensated their mechanics. They were paid, in part, on commission, so higher repair bills meant higher pay. Not surprisingly, this motivated the mechanics to perform more repairs, whether they were needed or not. After getting caught and paying restitution, Sears ended the practice of paying mechanics on the basis of commissions.

Since 1988 it has been illegal for the Internal Revenue Service to use any sort of revenue-based performance measure for evaluating auditors. After all, if auditors are evaluated and paid based on the revenue they collect from audits, it changes their incentives dramatically. They should avoid wealthy taxpayers who will have complicated returns and the backing of lawyers and accountants, and instead target less wealthy taxpayers who are unlikely to put up a fight. Also, they should more readily use the agency's property-seizure authority to ensure that the revenue is collected.

In 1997 a document from the Las Vegas office of the IRS was uncovered that listed performance quotas for that office's auditors, and in 1998 it was discovered that poor people in Nevada were twice as likely to be audited as poor people anywhere else in the country. Also in 1998 the Arkansas-Oklahoma district was found to have used revenue statistics in employee performance evaluations, and that district had a property-seizure rate that was more than twice the national average.

These two examples show that an poorly-conceived incentive pay system can lead to unwanted results, not because the employees are breaking the rules, but merely because they are responding to the incentives they face. This happens in a number of ways that are not as nationally prominent as the first two examples. For instance, a company decided that secretaries should be paid on the basis of how much they type, and installed a device to measure keystrokes on keyboards. They later discovered that one of the secretaries ate lunch in her office, eating with one hand and typing nonsense as fast as she could with the other.

Scott Adams, in his book, *The Dilbert Principle*, reports the following story that was sent to him by one of his readers:[3]

> A manager wants to find and fix software bugs more quickly. He offers an incentive plan: $20 for each bug the Quality Assurance people find and $20 for each bug the programmers fix. (These are the same programmers who create the bugs.) Result: An underground economy

[3]Adams, Scott, *The Dilbert Principle*, HarperBusiness, 1996, p. 12.

> in "bugs" springs up instantly. The plan is rethought after one employee nets $1,700 the first week.

Essentially, the incentive plan provides a $20 piece rate for easily-detectible software bugs and, not surprisingly, the programmers produced more easily-detectible bugs.

Occasionally penalties, or negative piece rates, are used as motivation. Incentive clauses are very common in team sports in the United States. Ken O'Brien, an NFL quarterback in the 1980s, had a problem early in his career with throwing too many interceptions. So, to combat this, he was given a contract that penalized him for every interception. This did result in him throwing fewer interceptions, but it also resulted in him throwing the ball less, even in situations in which he should have, to the detriment of the team. A similar problem arises with surgeons in New York, where surgeons are penalized if their mortality rates get too high. Surgeons respond by taking less risky cases.

6. OPTIMAL SALES COMMISSIONS

Sales commissions are a very common form of piece rate, covering sales of virtually all big-ticket items, including real estate, cars and trucks, and most industrial sales. They work in basically the same way as the piece rate schemes discussed earlier, but with a difference caused by the fact that the dollar amount of the commission is tied directly to the price of the good in a way that the piece rate is not.

To make this more concrete, suppose that the firm faces a downward-sloping demand curve, and that the price at which it can sell q units of the good is given by the function $P(q)$. Further suppose that all non-labor costs are constant per unit of output and given by c. The firm's total revenue is the amount it sells times the price per unit, or $P(q)q$, and net revenue is $NR(q) = P(q)q - cq$.

The firm's salesperson is paid on commission. The commission contract consists of two parts. The first is a salary component, denoted by s. The second is a commission rate, r, which is the fraction of the sales price the salesperson receives for each unit sold. So, if the salesperson sells q units, his total pay is $s + rP(q)q$. He sells q units at a price $P(q)$ each, and so receives a commission in the amount $rP(q)$ for each unit.

To determine how many units the salesperson will sell, we need to perform marginal analysis. It is helpful to start with marginal revenue, as opposed to marginal net revenue. Marginal total revenue is the slope of the total revenue function, $TR(q) = P(q)q$, where the notation $TR(q)$ is used to differentiate it from net revenue, $NR(q)$. Net revenue differs from total revenue in that the cost of non-labor inputs is subtracted, and these non-labor inputs cost c per unit of output. So, marginal net revenue is given by

$$MNR(q) = MTR(q) - c.$$

The sales commission is given by the function $SC(q) = rP(q)q = rTR(q)$. Consequently, the sales commission is a fraction r of total revenue, and the marginal sales commission is a fraction r of marginal total revenue:

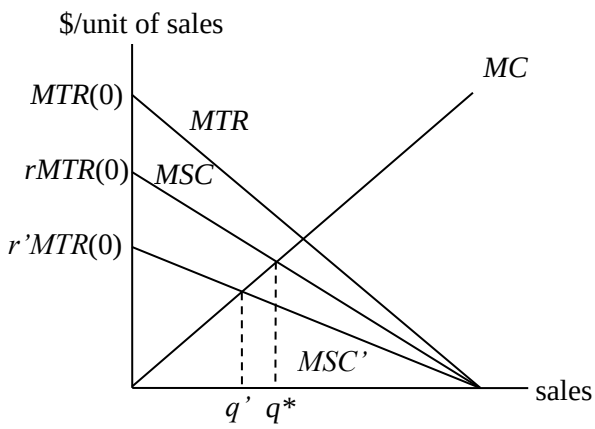
$$MSC(q) = rMTR(q).$$

We can now graph the marginal net revenue and marginal sales commission curves. We begin with a graph of the marginal sales commission curve in Figure 5.5. Start with the *MTR* curve, which is downward sloping because demand is downward sloping. The marginal sales commission curve, labeled *MSC*, is obtained by taking a fraction r of the *MTR* curve, which rotates the curve inward from the horizontal intercept. Lower commission rates lead to lower *MSC* curves.

FIGURE 5.5

To get the *MSC* curve from the *MTR* curve, rotate it downward holding the horizontal intercept fixed. Lower commission rates lead to lower *MSC* curves, as shown by the diagram with $r' < r$.

When the commission rate is r the salesperson exerts effort until the marginal sales commission equals the marginal cost of effort, which is a q^*. A reduction in the commission rate r rotates the *MSC* curve inward to *MSC'*, which leads to fewer sales at q'.



The salesperson sells until the marginal cost of effort equals the marginal benefit. When the commission rate is r the marginal benefit of sales is shown by the *MSC* curve

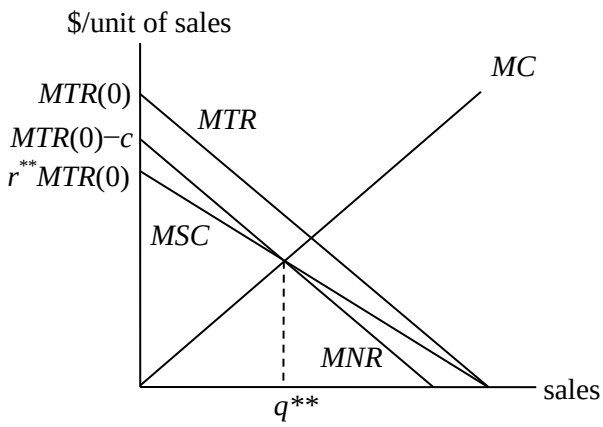
and the marginal cost is shown by the *MC* curve, so the salesperson sells the amount q^*. A decrease in the commission rate *r* rotates the *MSC* curve inward, leading to fewer sales. All of this is just like the analysis of piece rates except there the marginal compensation curve was horizontal and here it is downward sloping.

The *MNR* curve is derived from the *MTR* curve by shifting it downward by the amount of the per-unit non-labor cost, *c*, as shown in Figure 5.6. The firm maximizes profit when the salesperson sells q^{**}, where $MNR(q^{**}) = MC(q^{**})$. To achieve this, the firm should set a the commission rate r^{**} so that

$$MSC(q^{**}) = r^{**}MTR(q) = MNR(q).$$

FIGURE 5.6

The optimal sales commission makes the *MSC* curve pass through the intersection of the *MNR* and *MC* curves.



If we think of $r^{**}MTR(q)$ as the salesperson's piece rate, we get the standard result that the optimal piece rate equals the firm's marginal net revenue. This means that the firm should pay a commission to the salesperson equal to the entire net revenue on the marginal unit sold. To put it another way, even though salespeople should receive a commission rate that is a small fraction of the price of the good, they should receive one that is 100% of the marginal net revenue.

PROBLEMS

Problems 1 through 4 use the following information:

A worker is paid using a piece rate scheme with piece rate b and salary s. The worker's cost of effort is $C(q) = 2q^2$, and his marginal cost is $MC(q) = 4q$. Each unit of effort generates one unit of output. The firm's net revenue is $NR(q) = 80q$, and marginal net revenue is $MNR(q) = 80$. The worker's net benefit at the next best alternative employer is zero.

1. Assume that the salary is high enough for the participation constraint to hold. Find how much output the worker produces as a function of the piece rate.

2. Find the profit-maximizing level of output.

3. Find the profit-maximizing piece rate.

4. Find the profit-maximizing salary.

Problems 5 through 8 use the following information:

A worker is paid using a commission scheme with commission rate r and salary s, so his total pay from selling q units of output is $r \cdot TR(q)$, where $TR(q)$ is the total revenue when output is q. The firm's total revenue function is $TR(q) = 200q - 2q^2$, and non-labor costs are 40 per unit. Marginal total revenue is given by $MTR(q) = 200 - 4q$. The worker's effort cost is given by $C(q) = 40q + 3q^2$, and his marginal cost is given by $MC(q) = 40 + 6q$. The worker's net benefit at the next best alternative employer is zero.

5. Find the net revenue and marginal net revenue functions.

6. Find the profit-maximizing level of output.

7. Find the profit-maximizing commission rate.

CHAPTER 6
PROBLEMS WITH PIECE RATES

Piece rate compensation schemes can be powerful motivational devices. Not only can they be used to entice workers to exert *more* effort, but they can be fine-tuned to induce workers to exert the *optimal* amount of effort, both from the firm's point of view and from a social welfare point of view. The end of Chapter 5 contained some examples of situations in which the use of piece rate systems led to bad, but predictable, outcomes. These bad outcomes arose because piece rates led to situations in which workers exerted more effort than the firm would have liked and in ways that were detrimental to the firm. These are not the only problems with piece rates, though, and this chapter explores some of them.

1. SHOULD TEACHERS BE PAID FOR PERFORMANCE?

The current pay system for teachers is based on two factors: how long the person has been teaching, and how many graduate courses he or she has taken. By and large the public has been in favor of changing the system so that raises are based on what the students learn, not how long the teacher has been teaching. Besides, there are problems with the incentives in the current system. Teachers who have taught for a long time have no incentive to leave, because they are being paid at the top of the scale, while new teachers have little incentive to stay, since they are paid at the bottom of the scale. Also, because teachers get paid more for having taken additional graduate courses, the incentive is to take a large number of them, whether or not they enhance the teacher's effectiveness.

Why not link teachers' raises to their students' performance? This allows the system to reward teachers who do well and punish teachers who do not. It also provides teachers with the incentive to exert extraordinary effort, which the current system does not, since it pays all teachers the same way. Besides, the theory says that paying for performance can be an exceptional motivational tool. School districts in more than half of the states in the U.S., including New York City, Los Angeles, and all of Florida, have implemented or have considered implementing merit pay programs for teachers for just

these reasons. The British government has attempted to tie raises to performance throughout England.

The Colonial school district, with 4700 students in a prosperous suburb of Philadelphia, has already begun a performance pay system for their teachers. Individual teachers are paid bonuses of up to $2500 based on their students' standardized test scores. The public tends to favor such changes. Teacher unions do not, and neither do a number of analysts. They cite several reasons, such as the demoralizing nature of the program since it implies that teachers are not already doing all they can, but three of the reasons are of particular importance here.

One reason that many are opposed to basing pay on standardized test performance is that the tests only capture part of what a student is supposed to learn, and teachers will have an incentive to "teach to the test." Standardized test scores can be improved when students learns certain strategies, which is the basis for many SAT preparation courses. They can also be improved if the material covered is restricted to the material on the tests, and if assignments mirror the types of tasks on the tests. But, critics argue, this leaves out other parts of the educational process, such as research projects, laboratory work, and so on. If a teacher's performance is measured on only one set of tasks, teachers will focus all of their efforts on those tasks that are rewarded.

A second reason is that by making teachers compete for raises, cooperation among teachers will be reduced. Education is, ideally, a cooperative exercise, with teachers in one class reinforcing material taught in another class. Also, teachers with good ideas should share them. Under the performance pay plan, though, sharing might cost a teacher money, and so it is less likely to occur.

A third reason given by the opposition, especially teachers unions, is that teachers have very little control over how well their students do on the standardized tests. They are at the mercy of their class assignments. A good teacher with low-achieving students will do worse than a poor teacher with high-achieving, highly motivated ones. Also, the tests were designed to give an indication of a student's aptitude and development, not his teacher's performance, so test scores may or may not be a reliable measure of what the teacher is accomplishing. Finally, test scores can be influenced by many things beyond the teacher's control, especially the student's home life. Doug McAvoy, the General Secretary of England's National Union of Teachers, states, "Linking pay to pupils' performance in tests or exams is unfair. There are so many external factors beyond the teachers' control that affect how pupils perform in school that any system of measurement will always be crude no matter how much the government denies this."[1]

[1] BBC News, July 8, 1999.

This example suggests two problems with merit pay. First, programs lead workers to focus on tasks that are rewarded and ignore tasks that are not. In Chapter 5 workers only had one task, so this was not an issue, but critics of incentive pay for teachers suggest that since teachers are supposed to perform several tasks, such as preparing students for standardized tests, teaching them additional material, and cooperating with other teachers, this is an issue in the real world. Second, teacher performance is not measured perfectly, and so teachers might earn more or less than they deserve. In the remainder of this chapter we move away from the world of public education and into the world of profit-maximizing firms to see whether these problems exist there and what firms should do about them.

DO INCENTIVES LEAD TO "TEACHING TO THE TEST?"

For many years, public school students in Texas were required to take the Texas Assessment of Academic Skills, or TAAS. This standardized test was used to evaluate schools throughout the state. Schools were placed into different categories based on the percentage of the students at the school who passed the test. Even though the state provided only very small monetary rewards when a school performed well according to the test, school boards and parents placed a great deal of pressure on principals and teachers to get the highest ratings.

Donald Deere and Wayne Strayer of Texas A&M University looked at the data from TAAS to determine whether or not there is evidence that schools teach to the test in order to get higher evaluations.[*] Their work uncovers three facts. First, passing rates grew substantially through time. Over a six-year period, the fraction of students passing the math test increased from 58% to 85%, and the fraction passing the reading test grew from 74% to 86%. Second, the same students' performances on other standardized tests showed nowhere near this growth rate. Third, the biggest gains in test scores came for students who were close to or below the passing level, probably because schools concentrated their efforts on getting the children who were close to passing to increase their scores. All of this points to the conclusion that when incentives are based on standardized test scores, teachers respond to the incentives and teach to the test.

[*] Deere, Donald and Wayne Strayer, "Putting Schools to the Test: School Accountability, Incentives, and Behavior," Texas A&M University, March 2001.

2. MULTIPLE TASKS

One of the major concerns about piece rate systems is that they promote quantity at the expense of quality. Suppose, for example, that a worker at a manufacturing company is paid according to the number of units of output he produces. He can increase his output by speeding up his production, but then he takes less care and the items he produces have more defects. If he slowed down he would produce fewer items but with higher quality. Firms care about the quality of their output, because defects lead to either customers returning the item or deciding to buy from someone else in the future. But, if the worker is rewarded only for quantity and not quality, he will produce a large amount of output with very little attention to quality, and the firm's long-term profits might fall.

If the firm wants the worker to devote effort to both quantity and quality, how should it set up its pay scheme? More generally, how should a firm set up its compensation scheme when a worker has two tasks? Consider a worker who can apply effort to two tasks which take different amounts of time. It takes a_1 hours to produce a unit of output 1, and he gets paid a piece rate b_1 for each unit of output 1 he produces. Similarly, it takes a_2 hours to produce a unit of output 2, which earns him the piece rate b_2. If he produces q_1 units of output 1 and q_2 units of output 2, his total income is

$$s + b_1q_1 + b_2q_2,$$

where s is the salary component of his compensation.

The worker gets disutility from exerting effort, and his disutility depends on the amount of time spent producing output. Producing q_1 units of output 1 takes a_1q_1 hours and producing q_2 units of output 2 takes a_2q_2 hours, for a total of $a_1q_1 + a_2q_2$ hours. The disutility of effort is captured by the cost function $C(a_1q_1 + a_2q_2)$, which should be thought of as the disutility of the time spent working. The marginal cost of producing output 1 is the additional cost of producing one more unit, which requires a_1 additional hours of work. The additional cost from one more hour of work is MC, so the marginal cost of output 1 is a_1MC. Similarly, the marginal cost of output 2 is a_2MC.

The worker's net benefit is given by

$$s + b_1q_1 + b_2q_2 - C(a_1q_1 + a_2q_2).$$

The worker chooses how much output of each type to produce to maximize his net benefit, and we are interested in how much time is spent on each of the two tasks. In particular, does he produce both types of output, or does he spend all of his time on one type of output and ignore the other? We can answer this by rephrasing the question in the following way: If the worker decides to spend a total of A hours producing output, how should he allocate the time between the two types of output?

Suppose that the worker has decided to spend A hours producing output, split in some way between the two different types of output, and let's begin by assuming that he decides to produce q_1 units of output 1 and q_2 units of output 2. What would happen if he produced one more unit of output 1? First, since he is only spending a total of A hours producing, he would have to reduce production of output 2. Producing one more unit of output 1 requires an additional a_1 hours, and producing one less unit of output 2 frees up a_2 hours. To free up the a_1 hours needed to produce the additional unit of output 1, he must cut production of output 2 by a_1/a_2 units, since that takes $(a_1/a_2)\cdot a_2 = a_1$ hours, as desired.

Producing one more unit of output 1 affects his pay. The extra unit of output 1 raises his pay by b_1, the piece rate for output 1. But, cutting production of output 2 by a_1/a_2 units reduces his pay by $(a_1/a_2)\cdot b_2$. It is worthwhile producing one more unit of output 1 if the increase in pay from producing additional output 1 exceeds the decrease in pay from producing less output 2, or if $b_1 > (a_1/a_2)\cdot b_2$. We can rearrange this to

$$\frac{b_1}{a_1} > \frac{b_2}{a_2}.$$

The fraction b_1/a_1 is the pay per hour spent producing output 1, and b_2/a_2 is pay per hour spent producing output 2. The above condition states that an hour spent producing output 1 pays better than an hour spent on output 2. If this condition holds, the worker should only produce output 1. Time spent on output 1 always pays better than time spent on output 2, so he should increase the amount of time devoted to output 1 and decrease the time devoted to output 2 until he spends all of his time on output 1 and none on output 2.

If the opposite condition holds, $b_1/a_1 < b_2/a_2$, the worker should produce only output 2. *The only way that the firm can get the worker to produce both types of output is if* $b_1/a_1 = b_2/a_2$, so that an hour spent producing output 1 pays exactly the same as an hour spent on output 2. Otherwise, the worker spends all his time on the activity that pays better.

We have not yet said anything about the firm's part of the problem. We don't need to. The important point here is that if the firm wants the worker to exert effort to produce both types of output it must reward both types of output equally, otherwise the worker only exerts effort in the task that pays better. It is easy to think of situations in which one task pays better and the other task is ignored. For example, sales clerks in clothing stores are often paid by commission. They get paid for dealing with customers, not for hanging up clothes or helping their coworkers, and so these other important tasks are often not performed. For another, perhaps more immediate example, students can

learn from going to class and from reading the book. But if tests do not cover both, students will only do one of the two.

We close this section with three examples of how paying according to one measure can lead employees to ignore another measure.[2] A long time ago, before telephone service was deregulated, when you called information you would be connected to someone who was employed by the local phone company and paid by the hour. These operators were instructed to handle calls accurately, and they did. Then deregulation came, and information services were contracted out to large centralized banks of operators who were paid by the number of calls they handled. This was a piece rate. The ensuing behavior was just what we would expect: speed increased but accuracy decreased. The operator's goal was to give out a number quickly, not necessarily the right one.

It is also possible to stress accuracy at the expense of speed. Scott Adams, the creator of Dilbert, once worked as a teller at a bank. Management only cared about the number of mistakes made. Obviously, the best way for a teller to cut down the number of mistakes is to cut down the number of transactions handled. So, tellers had the incentive to go slower, talk to customers longer, and so on. They also became able to spot the customers who would have long, complex transactions that might be more likely to entail errors. So, when those customers came to the front of the line, tellers would hang onto their current customers as long as possible hoping that the difficult customer would go to someone else.

One final tale shows how paying according to output leads to speed over quality. Phone installations are done in homes and businesses, and so they are difficult to supervise. What would happen if installers were paid by the job, not by the successfully completed job? Then installers would do the easy jobs quickly and well, but the difficult ones quickly and poorly, because doing the difficult ones well would take too long and be too costly (in terms of opportunity costs) for the installers. They would still get paid for the faulty installations, but the company would have to pay for someone to go out and fix the problems.

3. IMPERFECTLY-OBSERVABLE EFFORT

Up to this point it has been assumed that effort and output were perfectly correlated, and the firm could observe how much effort the worker exerted by simply counting the units of output the worker produced. This is unrealistic. Sometimes workers work very hard with little to show for it, and sometimes they don't have to work

[2] These anecdotes are from Edward E. Lawler III, *Rewarding Excellence: Pay Strategies for the New Economy*, Josse-Bass, Inc., 2000; and Scott Adams, *The Joy of Work: Dilbert's Guide to Finding Happiness at the Expense of Your Co-workers*, HarperBusiness, 1998.

much at all to produce a lot. Think about the case of a car salesman. Some days no serious buyers come on the lot, and no matter how hard he works with the people he does see he is unable to sell any cars. Other days he might get several buyers who have already decided to buy a car, and he makes sales without much effort at all. The flow of customers is beyond the salesman's control, but the firm cannot base his pay on the amount of effort he exerts because that amount could never be verified in a court of law. The number and value of the cars he sells is verifiable in court, though. If the salesman's pay is based on his performance, that is, the number of cars he sells, his pay is not perfectly correlated with his effort.

This raises some issues for how the optimal piece rate should be set. The key issue here is that the worker faces income risk. The salesman's income was risky because it depended in part on the flow of customers, which was beyond his control. In general, people are **risk averse**, meaning that they would rather have the expected amount of income for sure rather than face the risk. So, for example, a risk averse individual would rather have \$1000 for sure than play a bet that pays \$2000 with probability ½ and pays \$0 otherwise. Similarly, a risk averse individual would prefer to have \$0 for sure rather than play a bet that pays \$500 if a coin lands heads and pays −\$500 if it lands tails. In fact, he would even be willing to pay to avoid this bet, and the amount that a risk averse individual is willing to pay in order to avoid randomness and receive the expected value of the gamble for sure is called a **risk premium**. We can think of this as an alternative definition of risk aversion: a risk averse individual is one who is willing to pay a positive risk premium to avoid randomness and receive the expected value of the gamble for sure.

Risk averse workers would prefer not to have any income risk. Of course, the firm could remove all income risk by simply paying the worker a straight salary, but this does not motivate the worker to exert any effort. Furthermore, since worker's do not like risk, they must be compensated for facing it, otherwise they would work somewhere else. The problem of finding the optimal piece rate, then, is one of trading off the motivation provided by the piece rate with the income risk inherent in performance pay.

To model the firm's choice of a piece rate, we must distinguish between effort and output. Let e denote the amount of effort exerted by the worker and let q denote the amount of output he produces. The two are related, with

$$q = e + \tilde{\varepsilon},$$

where the tilde above the epsilon denotes that it is random. The random variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ is assumed to be a **noise variable**, that is, it is a random variable with a mean of zero. The noise variable has an average value of zero, which means that on average the amount of output produced by the worker is equal to the amount of effort he exerts. Put another

way, on average each unit of effort yields one unit of output. In any given time period, though, actual output could be higher or lower than the amount of effort exerted. So, the worker could have a day that was more productive than usual, or one that was less productive than usual. That is the source of risk.

The worker's income is based on a salary component s and a piece rate b paid for each unit of output, so that total income is

$$s + bq = s + be + b\tilde{\varepsilon}.$$

The worker's cost of effort depends on how much effort he exerts, and it is given by $C(e)$. The worker has one more cost, though, the cost of bearing risk. Like the cost of effort, it is not an out-of-pocket cost, but it is still a cost because bearing risk reduces the worker's utility, just as an out-of-pocket cost would. The size of this risk cost is affected by several factors. First, it depends on how much the worker dislikes risk. The more he dislikes risk, the higher the risk cost. Second, it depends on the piece rate. The risky component of the worker's income is $b\tilde{\varepsilon}$. If the piece rate b is zero, the risky component disappears, and the worker bears no risk cost. If b is positive, though, there is risk, and the worker faces a risk cost. The larger b is, the larger the risky component of income is, and the more risk the worker faces. So, the risk cost increases with the piece rate. Finally, the risk cost depends on the amount of variation in the noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}$. The more it fluctuates, the more risk the worker faces, and the higher the risk cost.

Let $RC(b)$ denote the worker's risk cost, and it is a function of b because increases in the piece rate increase the risk cost. His net benefit, then, is given by

$$s + bq - C(e) - RC(b) = s + be + b\tilde{\varepsilon} - C(e) - RC(b).$$

Because of the randomness of the noise variable, the worker does not maximize net benefit. Instead, he maximizes *expected* net benefit, or the average value of net benefit over a large set of observations. Remember that the expected value of the noise variable is zero, so it disappears from the expected net benefit term. This leads to the formula for expected net benefit:

$$s + be - C(e) - RC(b).$$

The worker has a participation constraint for which he will choose to work for the firm. The participation constraint sets a lower bound on expected net benefit:

$$s + be - C(e) - RC(b) \geq u_0.$$

As long as the participation constraint is satisfied, the worker chooses the effort level that maximizes expected net benefit. Since, like the salary component, the risk cost is not a function of e, it does not figure into the marginal condition for maximizing net benefit. We are left with the standard marginal condition from Chapter 5:

$$MC(e^*) = b,$$

or the marginal cost of effort equals the marginal benefit of effort, which is the piece rate. So, the presence of the noise variable has no effect on the worker's marginal condition. It does, however, show up in the worker's participation constraint. Consequently, it may have an impact on whether or not the worker chooses to work for the firm, but if he does choose to work for the firm, the noise variable has no impact on how hard he works.

The noise variable does impact the *firm's* choice of the optimal piece rate, though. The noise variable enters into the worker's participation constraint, so the firm must pay the worker more to compensate for the risk induced by the piece rate system. Consequently, the firm faces a tradeoff when determining the optimal piece rate: a higher piece rate induces the worker to exert more effort, but it also increases the amount of risk the worker faces, and for which he must be compensated.

When the firm maximizes profit, it sets total compensation so that the worker's participation constraint is met exactly, or

$$s + be = C(e) + RC(b) + u_0.$$

The left-hand side is expected total compensation when the worker exerts effort e, and the right-hand side is the cost of that effort, plus the cost of bearing the risk, plus the opportunity cost of the next-best alternative use of the worker's time. The firm's profit is then given by

$$\pi(b) = NR(e^* + \tilde{\varepsilon}) - (s + b[e^* + \tilde{\varepsilon}]),$$

where e^* is the effort level chosen by the worker when the piece rate is b and NR is the net revenue function. The first term on the right-hand side is the firm's net revenue (revenue minus non-labor costs) and the second term is the labor cost.

There is noise in the firm's profit function, so we take the expected value. Since the expected value of the noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ is zero, expected profit is given by

$$E\pi(b) = NR(e^*) - (s + be^*),$$

where the first term on the right is expected net revenue and the term in brackets is the labor cost. Substituting from the worker's participation constraint yields

$$E\pi(b) = NR(e^*) - [C(e^*) + RC(b) + u_0].$$

The firm chooses the piece rate b to maximize expected profit.

The first question we want to ask is the following: Does the firm set the piece rate higher or lower than it would if there were no noise? If there were no noise the worker would face no income risk, causing $RC(b) = 0$ and

$$\pi_0(b) = NR(e^*) - [C(e^*) + u_0],$$

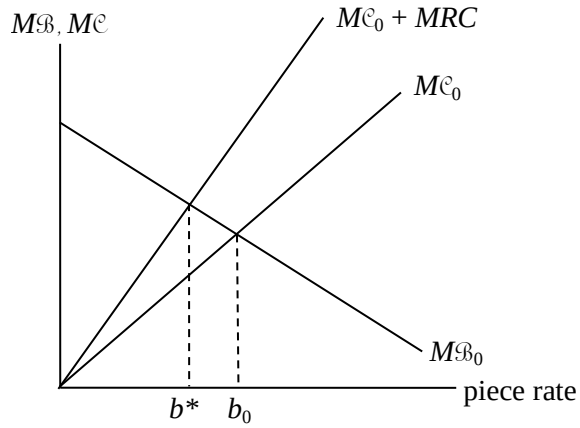
where π_0 denotes profit in the noiseless case. The first term is the firm's benefit and the second is the cost. Let b_0 denote the optimal piece rate when there is no noise and let e_0 denote the level of effort induced. Then b_0 makes the marginal profit zero, which is another way of saying that it equates the marginal benefit of increasing the piece rate with the marginal cost. To distinguish the firm's benefit and cost functions from the worker's, let $\mathcal{B}_0(b)$ denote the firm's benefit when the piece rate is b and there is no noise, and let $\mathcal{C}_0(b)$ denote the firm's cost when the piece rate is b and there is no noise. Then the piece rate b_0 satisfies

$$M\mathcal{B}_0(b_0) = M\mathcal{C}_0(b_0).$$

Figure 9.1 shows the marginal benefit and marginal cost curves. The optimal piece rate when there is no noise is found at the intersection of the curves $M\mathcal{B}_0$ and $M\mathcal{C}_0$.

FIGURE 6.1

The firm sets the piece rate to equate marginal benefit and marginal cost. When there is no noise the marginal cost curve is $M\mathcal{C}_0$ and the optimal piece rate is b_0. When there is noise the marginal cost curve rotates upward to $M\mathcal{C}_0 + MRC$ because of the worker's cost of bearing risk, and the optimal piece rate falls to b^*.



But what if the firm faces noise? Then the marginal cost of increasing the piece rate rises because increasing the piece rate increases $RC(b)$, the amount the firm must compensate workers for facing income risk. The firm's marginal cost rises to $M\mathcal{C}_0(b) + MRC(b)$. To see whether the firm wants to set the piece rate higher than, lower than, or equal to b_0, look back at Figure 6.1. The marginal cost curve rotates upward to $M\mathcal{C}_0 + MRC$ because of the risk cost borne by workers. The optimal piece rate is found at the intersection of $M\mathcal{C}_0 + MRC$ and $M\mathcal{B}_0$, which is at b^*. The optimal piece rate is lower in the presence of noise than it is in the absence of noise.

The intuition behind this result is fairly straightforward. When firms base pay on output, but output does not perfectly reflect effort, workers face income risk. Since workers do not like income risk, they must be compensated for facing it. Furthermore, the higher the piece rate, the more risk workers face, and the more they must be compensated. The presence of noise therefore leads the firm to set a lower piece rate so that it does not have to compensate workers as much for facing income risk. When it sets the piece rate lower, it must raise the salary component of pay so that the worker's participation constraint is still met. So, when firms cannot measure effort perfectly, they respond by putting less of the worker's income at risk by offering a higher salary and a lower piece rate.

We can also examine the effects of some changes in the environment. When workers become more risk averse, they must be compensated even more for facing

income risk. This raises *MRC* further, and reduces the optimal piece rate even further. So, when employees become more risk averse, the optimal piece rate falls.

When the employer can measure effort less accurately, the noise term has more fluctuations. As stated earlier, this increases the amount of income risk faced by the worker. Since workers do not like income risk, when output is measured less accurately they must be compensated more for facing the income risk. This also causes *MRC* to rise, and induces the firm to reduce the piece rate.

4. FAIRNESS

When output is not a perfect measure of effort, two employees who are paid with piece rates can exert the exact same amounts of effort but receive different incomes. This is unfair. If this lack of fairness does not bother the employees, then the firm should not be concerned and it can set the piece rate the same way it did in the preceding section. If worker's care about fairness, though, the firm should set the piece rate lower.

Incentive pay naturally makes wages unequal when the firm cannot measure effort precisely. Suppose there are two workers. Worker 1's output q_1 is given by $q_1 = e_1 + \tilde{\varepsilon}_1$, and worker 2's output is given by $q_2 = e_2 + \tilde{\varepsilon}_2$. Further assume that the two workers exert the same amount of effort, $e_1 = e_2$, so that if effort were measured perfectly they would be paid exactly the same amount. If worker 1 gets lucky and the outcome of the noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}_1$ is high, and if worker 2 gets unlucky so that the outcome of the noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}_2$ is low, then worker 1 produces more output, and gets paid more than worker 2, even thought they exerted exactly the same amount of effort. If worker 2 had been lucky and worker 1 had been unlucky, then worker 2 would have been paid more. What matters here is that the only reason that the two workers are paid differently is that one is luckier than the other.

If workers do not like it when different workers who exert the same effort get paid differently, then they must be paid more for putting up with income inequality. This is exactly the same as the firm having to compensate workers for bearing income risk in Section 3. The higher the piece rate, the more incomes fluctuate, and the more potential inequality there is. So, the higher the piece rate, the more the firm must compensate workers for putting up with income inequality. It is therefore in the firm's best interest to set the piece rate lower so that it does not have to compensate the workers as much.

5. GENERAL LESSONS

The results of this chapter can be summarized by two principles for using incentive pay.

THE EQUAL COMPENSATION PRINCIPLE

If the firm's profit is maximized when the employee undertakes more than one costly activity, all of the valuable activities must be compensated equally at the margin; otherwise the employee undertakes only those activities that are rewarded most highly.

THE INCENTIVE INTENSITY PRINCIPLE

The optimal piece rate (or the optimal sales commission rate) is higher when:

1. The firm's marginal net revenue is higher;
2. Employees are less risk averse;
3. The employer can measure effort more accurately; and
4. Employees are less concerned with fairness.

The Equal Compensation Principle comes from Section 2. There we saw that when there are two tasks employees undertake the one that pays better. So, to get employees to engage in both activities, the two activities must be rewarded equally at the margin.

The Incentive Intensity Principle comes from Chapter 5 and from Sections 3 and 4. First, we learned in Chapter 5 that in the absence of noise the optimal piece rate is equal to the firm's marginal net revenue. This is the first point in the Incentive Intensity Principle. In Section 3 of this chapter we learned that if firms cannot measure effort accurately, the use of incentive pay makes workers' incomes risky. Since workers do not like income risk, they must be compensated for bearing the risk. The amount of compensation rises when workers become more risk averse and when the firm's measurements become less accurate. To reduce the amount it must compensate the workers for facing risk, the firm sets the piece rate lower. Or, put the opposite way, as workers become less risk averse or as measurements become more accurate, the firm's optimal piece rate rises.

Finally, in Section 4 we found that if workers are concerned with fairness they do not like the pay inequality that arises from the use of incentive pay, and they must be compensated for putting up with the inequality. The higher the piece rate, the more compensation they require. The firm should reduce the piece rate in order to reduce the amount of inequality compensation it must pay. Or, put the opposite way, as workers become less concerned with fairness, the firm's optimal piece rate rises.

How do these principles show up in the debate about teacher compensation discussed in Section 6.1? The proposal being made specifically in the Colonial school district outside Philadelphia was to reward teachers based on the performance of their students on standardized tests. The complaints were that (1) teachers would focus on the material covered on the standardized tests at the expense of other material, (2) teachers would no longer cooperate in the best interests of the children, and (3) teachers ultimately have little control over how their students do on the tests. The first two of these relate to

the equal compensation principle. If teachers are rewarded for one activity only, they will concentrate on that one activity at the expense of others. The third complaint relates to the incentive intensity principle. If student test scores are not an accurate measure of teacher effort, performance pay should be minimal. So, based on these two principles, the complaints about rewarding teachers according to their students' test scores are valid.

When, then, should piece rates or sales commission be used? According to the incentive intensity principle and equal compensation principle, they should be used when employees perform a single, well-defined task that allows for easy, accurate measurement. Such a case was discussed in Chapter 5. Safelite Glass pays its windshield installers by the installation. Successful installations are easy to measure, and there are no other activities that installers should undertake.

PROBLEMS

1. What general rule do workers follow when choosing which task to perform?

2. What tradeoff does a firm face when it wants to pay its employees using a piece rate but cannot measure effort perfectly?

3. A worker is supposed to perform three tasks. The effort requirements and piece rates are contained in the table below. Which tasks (or combination of tasks) does the worker perform? Provide a combination of piece rates that makes the worker indifferent between all three of the tasks.

Task	Effort required	Piece rate
A	2	$12
B	3	15
C	5	24

4. A worker is called upon to produce two types of output. Output 1 requires 1 unit of effort to produce, and output 2 requires 4 units of effort to produce. The worker is paid a piece rate of 10 for each unit of output 1 and a piece rate of b_2 for each unit of output 2. The worker's cost function is $C(e) = e^2$ and his marginal cost function is $MC(e) = 2e$, where e denotes the amount of effort expended by the worker. Find the piece rate for output 2 that makes the worker willing to produce both types of output.

5. A firm hires students to be telemarketers. One group of students makes their calls from a supervised office, and another group of students makes their calls from home. Explain why it makes sense to pay the first group according to the number of calls made but not the second group, referring to the Incentive Intensity Principle.

6. Draw a graph showing what happens to the optimal piece rate when the price of the firm's output rises.

CHAPTER 7
MOTIVATING MULTIPLE TYPES

Each of the last three chapters was about motivating workers. They all made an assumption that was kept hidden – they all assumed that either there is only one worker or, if there are many workers, they are all identical. There was a good reason for making this assumption, since it simplifies the analysis, which is an important thing to do when introducing concepts.

In this chapter we discard the hidden assumption and assume that workers are not identical. In particular, some workers are better at producing than others, but both the high-productivity workers and the low-productivity workers work for the same firm in the same job. There are two central issues to be addressed. First, if the firm cannot tell which type is which, how should the firm set the piece rates to motivate both types? Second, which type of worker makes out better, the high-productivity ones or the low-productivity ones? In other words, does it pay to have talent, or are the skills and knowledge that makes someone a high-productivity worker wasted in this setting?

1. THE FULL-INFORMATION CASE

Before tackling the setting in which the firm cannot tell whether a worker has high productivity or low productivity, it helps to consider the setting in which the firm can tell the types apart. There are two reasons for doing so. First, this provides a benchmark against which we can compare the results for the setting we are interested in. Second, it helps introduce some of the concepts.

Begin by thinking about what makes one worker a high-productivity worker and another one a low-productivity worker. Given a particular set of incentives, the high-productivity worker should produce more output than the low-productivity one. One way to get at this is to assume that one worker has lower effort costs than the other. The one with the lower effort costs exerts more effort than the other, thereby producing more. So, our assumption is that the high-productivity worker has lower effort costs than the low-productivity worker.

To make this more concrete, let's use some specific cost functions. High-productivity (low effort cost) workers have cost function $C_H(q) = q^2$, while low-

productivity (high effort cost) workers have cost function $C_L(q) = 2q^2$. The corresponding marginal cost functions are $MC_H(q) = 2q$ for high-productivity workers and $MC_L(q) = 4q$ for low-productivity workers.[1] It costs the low-productivity worker twice as much to produce a given amount of output as it costs the high-productivity worker. The low-productivity worker's marginal cost is also doubled.

Both workers have a reservation utility of zero. The firm earns marginal net revenue of 12 for every unit of effort exerted by the workers. The firm offers standard piece rate compensation packages which consist of a salary component s and a piece rate b, so that a worker who produces output q earns a total of $s + bq$. Finally, the two types of workers are equally prevalent in both society and the firm. This means that any particular worker is equally likely to have high or low productivity.

The assumption used in this section is that the firm can look at a worker and tell whether he has high productivity or low productivity, and in the next section we will assume that the firm cannot tell the worker's type. When it can tell the two types of workers apart, it should offer the profit-maximizing compensation package to each type. These packages were discussed thoroughly in Chapter 5, so only a brief outline is given here. Start with the high-productivity workers, and assume that the firm offers them a compensation package with salary s_H and piece rate b_H. The marginal condition for the worker is to produce output until the marginal benefit equals the marginal cost:

$$MC_H(q) = 2q = b_H \qquad (*)$$

if his participation constraint is satisfied:

$$s_H + b_H q - C_H(q) \geq 0. \qquad (**)$$

From (*) the worker produces $q_H = b_H/2$ if the participation constraint is satisfied.

The marginal condition for the firm is to set the piece rate equal to marginal net revenue, so that $b_H = 12$. From the worker's marginal condition (*), output is $q_H = b_H/2 = 6$. The salary component is set as low as possible so that the participation constraint (**) holds with equality. Plugging $q_H = 6$, $b_H = 12$, and $C_H(q) = q^2$ into (**) yields:

$$NB_H = s_H + b_H q_H - C_H(q_H) = s_H + 12 \cdot 6 - 6^2 = s_H + 36 = 0,$$

[1] There is a simple rule for finding marginal functions. If the original function takes the form of $a + bx$, the marginal function is b. If the original function takes the form $a + bx + cx^2$, the marginal function is $b + 2cx$. So, if the cost function takes the form of $2q^2$, the marginal cost function is $4q$. You probably learned this in a calculus class, and it's a simple rule that is used again in Section 3.

where NB_H is the high-productivity worker's net benefit, and it is set equal to zero (at the end) because that is the worker's reservation utility. Solving yields $s_H = -36$. The worker's pay is $-36 + 12 \cdot 6 = 36$ but his effort cost is $6^2 = 36$, yielding a net benefit of zero. The firm's net revenue is $12 \cdot 6 = 72$ and its labor cost is 36 for a profit of 36.

Now consider the low-productivity worker. The firm's marginal condition is to set the piece rate equal to marginal net revenue, so the low piece rate is $b_L = 12$. The worker's marginal condition is to produce until marginal cost equals the piece rate:

$$MC_L(q) = 4q = 12 = b_L,$$

so that $q_L = 3$. The firm sets s_L so that the low-productivity worker's participation constraint is just satisfied:

$$NB_L = s_H + b_L q_L - C_L(q_L) = s_L + 12 \cdot 3 - 2 \cdot 3^2 = s_L + 18 = 0,$$

which yields $s_L = -18$. The worker gets paid $-18 + 12 \cdot 3 = 18$, but gets zero net benefit. The firm earns profit of 18.

If the firm hires a random worker before figuring out if he has high or low productivity, and then offers the optimal piece rate contract for the type of worker he turns out to be, the firm's expected profit is (½)(36) + (½)(18) = 27. To facilitate comparison with the setting in which the firm cannot tell the worker's type, these results are summarized in Table 7.1.

TABLE 7.1
Full information setting
Contract: $-18 + 12q$ for low-productivity workers,
$-36 + 12q$ for high-productivity workers

	High-productivity	Low-productivity
Output	6	3
Pay	36	18
Net benefit	0	0
Profit	36	18
Expected profit:	27	

One more thing should be said about the full-information setting. As we learned in Chapter 5, when the firm sets the piece rate and the salary to maximize profit, its

workers produce the Pareto efficient amount of output. This is also true here, and so the output levels in Table 7.1 are also the Pareto efficient output levels. This is one reason why the full-information setting is such a useful benchmark – it allows us to determine the efficient levels of output so that we can determine whether or not the presence of hidden information leads to inefficient outcomes.

2. MORAL HAZARD

Now suppose that the firm cannot tell what type a worker is, in which case the firm no longer knows which contract to offer the worker. What would happen if the firm offered the worker a choice between the two contracts we found in the last section? Would the two types of workers take the right contracts, or would something else happen?

This is a fairly easy question to answer: Something else would happen. Look back at Table 7.1. Both contracts have the same piece rate, but the contract designed for low-productivity workers has a higher salary. So, both types of workers prefer the low-productivity contract.

Since that was too easy, and it did not get workers to choose the right contracts, let's try something else. Suppose that the firm offers workers the following choice. Either (1) produce 3 units or less of output, and get paid a piece rate of 12 and a salary of −18; or (2) produce more than 3 units of output, and get paid a piece rate of 12 and a salary of −36. Now the only choice for the workers is how much to produce.

The low-productivity workers satisfy their marginal condition by producing 3 units of output, and their participation constraint is satisfied, so they will produce 3 units of output. Figuring out the output of the high-productivity workers takes a bit more work. First, if they produce more than 3 units, then they should produce 6 because that is where the marginal condition is satisfied. If they produce 6 units of output, then from Table 7.1 we know that their net benefit is zero. What if they produce 3 units of output? They get paid $-18 + 12 \cdot 3 = 18$, but their effort costs are given by $C_H(3) = 3^2 = 9$. Their net benefit is the pay minus the effort cost, or 9. This is better than the zero net benefit they get from producing 6 units of output, so the high-productivity workers produce 3. But this is the same as the output of the low-productivity workers. What we find is that high-productivity workers benefit from mimicking the low-productivity workers.

This pattern in which the high types mimic the low types is known as **moral hazard**. Moral hazard occurs here because the high-productivity workers benefit from pretending to be low-productivity workers. Even though they produce fewer units than they otherwise would, they can exploit their cost advantages to generate greater net benefit.

Low-productivity workers are no better or worse off than they were in the full information setting, but high-productivity workers gain and the firm loses. High

productivity workers get a net benefit of 9, as opposed to a net benefit of zero in the full information setting. The firm still earns a profit of 18 when it employs a low-productivity worker, but since high-productivity workers mimic the low-productivity workers, the firm also earns a profit of 18 from employing a high-productivity worker. Compare this to the full-information case, in which a high-productivity worker generated a profit of 36. The firm's expected profit is now 18. This is all summarized in Table 7.2.

Moral hazard also leads to a loss of efficiency. Comparing Table 7.2 to Table 7.1 we see that the low-productivity workers still produce the efficient level of output, but the high-productivity workers produce less.

TABLE 7.2

Hidden information setting

Contract: $-18 + 12q$ for up to 3 units of output,

$-36 + 12q$ for more than 3 units of output

	High-productivity	Low-productivity
Output	3	3
Pay	18	18
Net benefit	9	0
Profit	18	18
Expected profit:	18	

3. THE OPTIMAL CONTRACT FOR THE HIDDEN INFORMATION SETTING

Because of moral hazard, the high-productivity workers have an incentive to imitate the low-productivity workers, which reduces the firm's expected profit. The firm can counter this effect in two ways, both of which involve making imitating the low-productivity workers less attractive. First, it could pay the low-productivity workers less, so that imitation does not generate as much net benefit. Second, it could pay high-productivity workers more for producing more, so that the opportunity cost of imitation is higher. In this section we will construct the optimal contract for the firm, and we will find that it has both of these features.

Let's start with a general contract. The firm sets five numbers:

s_L = salary for low-productivity contract
s_H = salary for high-productivity contract
b_L = piece rate for low-productivity contract

b_H = piece rate for high-productivity contract
$\bar{q}$ = output level that determines which contract is in effect.

If a worker produces $\bar{q}$ or fewer units of output, he is governed by the low-productivity contract with salary s_L and piece rate b_L, but if he produces more than $\bar{q}$ units of output, he is governed by the high-productivity contract.

The contract only makes sense if both parts of it are used, that is, if the high-productivity workers produce $q_H > \bar{q}$ and the low-productivity workers produce $q_L \leq \bar{q}$. This leads to our first constraint. The low-productivity workers must be willing to produce q_L, which means that their participation constraint must be satisfied:

$$s_L + b_L q_L - 2q_L^2 \geq 0.$$

We want the high-productivity workers to produce $q_H > \bar{q}$. To do so, they must be better off producing q_H than producing q_L. Economists call this condition an **incentive compatibility constraint**, because it says that the high types must have an incentive not to imitate the low types:

$$s_H + b_H q_H - q_H^2 \geq s_L + b_L q_L - q_L^2.$$

The left-hand side is the high-productivity worker's net benefit from producing q_H, and the right-hand side is his net benefit from producing q_L, the low-productivity worker's output. The expression states that producing q_H must generate at least as much net benefit as producing q_L.

When the firm maximizes profit, it gives as little of the surplus as possible to the workers. This means that it should pay low-productivity workers no more than it has to in order to just satisfy their participation constraint, and so it must hold with equality. Also, the firm should pay high-productivity workers no more than is necessary to just satisfy their incentive compatibility constraint, so it must also hold with equality. Letting LP denote the low-productivity worker's participation constraint and HIC denote the high-productivity worker's incentive compatibility constraint, we have:

LP: $$s_L + b_L q_L - 2q_L^2 = 0.$$

HIC: $$s_H + b_H q_H - q_H^2 = s_L + b_L q_L - q_L^2.$$

Now that they hold with equality, the LP and HIC constraints make it possible to write down the firm's profit function. If the firm faces a low-productivity worker, its profit is

$$\pi_L = 12q_L - (s_L + b_L q_L)$$

since the firm earns net revenue of 12 for every unit produced and it pays the low-productivity worker $s_L + b_L q_L$. Rearranging the LP constraint yields

$$s_L + b_L q_L = 2q_L^2. \qquad (\dagger)$$

Substituting this into the expression for profit yields

$$\pi_L = 12q_L - 2q_L^2.$$

When the firm faces a high-productivity worker, its profit is

$$\pi_H = 12q_H - (s_H + b_H q_H).$$

Rearranging the HIC constraint gives us

$$s_H + b_H q_H = s_L + b_L q_L - q_L^2 + q_H^2.$$

Substituting in (†) from the LP constraint allows us to further simplify this to

$$\begin{aligned} s_H + b_H q_H &= s_L + b_L q_L - q_L^2 + q_H^2 \\ &= 2q_L^2 - q_L^2 + q_H^2 \\ &= q_L^2 + q_H^2. \end{aligned} \qquad (\dagger\dagger)$$

Now substitute this into the expression for profit to get

$$\pi_H = 12q_H - q_L^2 - q_H^2.$$

The next step is to find the profit-maximizing levels of q_L and q_H. First, though, since the firm cannot tell which type of worker it faces, we must find expected profit. When the firm employs a worker, it is equally likely to get a low-productivity worker who generates profit π_L and a high-productivity worker who generates profit π_H. Expected profit is then given by

$$\begin{aligned}\pi &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi_L + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi_H \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(12q_L - 2q_L^2) + \tfrac{1}{2}(12q_H - q_L^2 - q_H^2) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(12q_L - 3q_L^2) + \tfrac{1}{2}(12q_H - q_H^2),\end{aligned}$$

where the last line comes from rearranging the second line.

The firm chooses q_L and q_H to maximize expected profit. The marginal condition for q_L (see footnote 1) comes from taking the marginal expected profit with respect to q_L and setting it equal to zero:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(12 - 6q_L) = 0.$$

Solving for q_L yields $q_L = 2$. Now do the same for q_H, and the marginal condition is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(12 - 2q_H) = 0.$$

The optimal output for the high-productivity worker is $q_H = 6$.

This has been a lot of math, but it gives us something to talk about. In the full information setting we found that the high-productivity workers produce 6 units and the low-productivity workers produce 3, and these were the efficient levels of output. In the hidden information setting the high-productivity workers still produce 6, but the low productivity workers only produce 2. The high-productivity workers still produce the efficient level of output, but the low-productivity ones produce less. Why do we lose efficiency in the hidden information setting?

The answer comes from thinking about moral hazard. The natural tendency is for the high-productivity workers to mimic the low-productivity ones in order to exploit their cost advantages. When the low-productivity workers produce 3, as in the full information case, they have an effort cost of 18. When high-productivity workers produce 3, their effort costs are only 9, allowing them to earn a net benefit of 18 – 9 = 9. But, when low-productivity workers produce only 2 their cost is 8, and when high-productivity workers produce 2 their cost is 4. So, when low-productivity workers produce only 2 the high-productivity workers are only able to earn a net benefit of 8 – 4 = 4. By getting the low-productivity workers to produce only 2 units of output, the firm makes imitation a less-attractive alternative for the high-productivity workers.

Now let's go on to find the details of the compensation package. To find the piece rates, remember that workers choose their output so as to equate marginal cost with the piece rate. The marginal cost function for high-productivity workers is $MC_H(q) = 2q$, so when they produce 6 units of output their marginal cost is $2 \cdot 6 = 12$, and this must be the piece rate b_H. The marginal cost function for low-productivity workers is $MC_L(q) =$

$4q$. When they produce 2 units of output their marginal cost is $4 \cdot 2 = 8$, and this is the piece rate b_L.

The low-productivity worker's salary is determined by his participation constraint, LP. Rearranging yields

$$s_L = 2q_L^2 - b_L q_L = 2 \cdot 2^2 - 8 \cdot 2 = -8$$

after plugging in the values we've already found, $b_L = 8$ and $q_L = 2$. The high-productivity worker's salary is determined by his incentive compatibility constraint, HIC. Rearranging (††) yields

$$s_H = q_L^2 + q_H^2 - b_H q_H = 2^2 + 6^2 - 12 \cdot 6 = -32$$

after substituting in the known values $q_L = 2$, $q_H = 6$, and $b_H = 12$.

We can complete our calculations by computing the workers' net benefits and the firm's expected profit. The low-productivity workers get

$$NB_L = s_L + b_L q_L - C_L(q_L) = -8 + 8 \cdot 2 - 2 \cdot 2^2 = 0$$

and the high productivity workers get

$$NB_H = s_H + b_H q_H - C_H(q_H) = -32 + 12 \cdot 6 - 6^2 = 4.$$

Finally, the firm's expected profit is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \pi &= \tfrac{1}{2}(12q_L - 3q_L^2) + \tfrac{1}{2}(12q_H - q_H^2) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(12 \cdot 2 - 3 \cdot 2^2) + \tfrac{1}{2}(12 \cdot 6 - 6^2) \\ &= 24. \end{aligned}$$

The firm does worse than in the full-information case, but better than it did when it offered the contract in Table 7.2.

We can now fully specify the optimal contract. The firm pays a salary of -8 and a piece rate of 8 if the worker produces no more than 2 units of output, and pays a salary of -32 and a piece rate of 12 if the worker produces more than 2 units of output. The results are summarized in Table 7.3.

TABLE 7.3
Optimal contract with hidden information
Contract: $-8 + 8q$ for up to 2 units of output,
$-32 + 12q$ for more than 2 units of output

	High-productivity	Low-productivity
Output	6	2
Pay	40	8
Net benefit	4	0
Profit	32	16
Expected profit:	24	

This table reveals several important pieces of information. First, the high-productivity workers produce the efficient level of output but the low-productivity workers do not. The reason that the low-productivity workers produce less than in the full information case is that the firm lowers the piece rate in order to diminish the incentive for high-productivity workers to imitate low-productivity workers.

Second, the low-productivity workers earn zero net benefit, as usual, but the high-productivity workers earn positive net benefit. The net benefit of 4 that the high-productivity workers earn is exactly the same as what they would earn if they imitated the low-productivity workers and produced only 2 units of output. The firm must give the high-productivity workers at least this much net benefit to keep them from imitating the low-productivity workers. The source of this positive net benefit for high-productivity workers is the information that they have and the firm wants – if the firm knew that they were high-productivity workers, they could offer them separate contracts and extract all of the net benefit, as in Section 1. So, the net benefit of 4 that the high-productivity workers earn is their payment for revealing their information, and is known as an **information rent**.

Third, the firm's expected profit is higher than it was in Table 7.2 but lower than in Table 7.1. The firm does not do as well as in the full information setting for two reasons: the low-productivity workers do not produce as much as in the full information case (2 units instead of 3), and the high-productivity workers extract information rents. The firm does do better than in Table 7.2, though, because it offers a contract then induces the high-productivity types to produce more than the low-productivity ones.

4. GENERAL LESSONS

Although it was highly mathematical, the analysis in this section yields some important results.

1. *If the firm can tell the different types of workers apart, it can offer them different compensation schemes.* The firm sets a high piece rate and a low salary for the high-productivity workers, and a low piece rate and a high salary for the low-productivity workers. Since their piece rate is higher and their costs are lower, high-productivity workers end up producing more than low-productivity ones do. Both types get zero net benefit, though.

2. *If the firm can tell the different types of workers apart, it can induce them to produce the efficient levels of output.* Full information leads to a Pareto efficient allocation. Also, since the workers end up with zero net benefit, the firm's profit is as high as possible in the full information case.

3. *If the firm cannot tell the different types of workers apart, high-productivity workers have an incentive to imitate low-productivity workers.* This is moral hazard, and it reduces the firm's profit. High-productivity workers enjoy a cost advantage over the low-productivity workers, and they can exploit this advantage by mimicking the low-productivity workers.

4. *If the firm cannot tell the different types of workers apart, it should offer a menu of compensation schemes to the workers.* The menu of compensation schemes should state how much the worker will get paid for different output ranges, with higher salary and a lower piece rate for low output levels and a lower salary and a higher piece rate for high output levels. If the firm constructs the menu of compensation schemes correctly, the high-productivity workers will produce more and get paid more than the low-productivity workers, thereby solving the moral hazard problem.

5. *If the firm cannot tell the different types of workers apart, low-productivity workers end up producing less than the efficient level of output and earn zero net benefit.* The firm sets a lower piece rate than in the full information setting, and since their incentives are reduced, low-productivity workers produce less than in the full information setting. The firm is still able to extract all of the surplus, though.

6. *If the firm cannot tell the different types of workers apart, high-productivity workers produce the efficient level of output but earn positive net benefit.* High-productivity workers must be compensated for not imitating low-productivity workers,

which leads them to earn positive net benefit. This positive net benefit is a result of the high-productivity types having information that the firm would like to extract, and is called an information rent.

At the beginning of this chapter we posed two questions. If the firm cannot tell which type is which, how should the firm set the piece rates to motivate both types? And, which type of worker makes out better, the high-productivity ones or the low-productivity ones? We now know the answers. Regarding the first question, the firm uses the same piece rate for the high-productivity workers as it would use if it knew the workers' types, but it must set a lower piece rate for the low-productivity workers. Regarding the second question, the high-productivity workers definitely make out better, since they earn information rents.

PROBLEMS

For the following problems assume that a high-productivity worker has cost function $C_H(q) = q^2$ and marginal cost function $MC_H(q) = 2q$, and a low-productivity worker has cost function $C_L(q) = 3q^2$ and marginal cost function $MC_L(q) = 6q$. The two types are equally likely, and both types of worker have reservation utility of zero. The firm earns net revenue of 60 for each unit of output produced by the workers.

1. Find the optimal contract for the two types of workers in the full information setting.

2. Now consider the hidden information setting. Write down the low-productivity worker's participation constraint and the high-productivity worker's incentive compatibility constraint using the notation from Section 3.

3. Write down the profit the firm receives from both types of workers.

4. Use the low-productivity worker's participation constraint to write π_L as a function of q_L.

5. Use the low-productivity worker's participation constraint and the high-productivity worker's incentive compatibility constraint to write π_H as a function of q_H and q_L.

6. Write down the firm's expected profit as a function of q_H and q_L.

7. Find the optimal output levels for the two types of workers in the hidden information setting.

8. Find the optimal piece rates for the two types of workers in the hidden information setting.

9. Find the optimal salary levels for the two types of workers in the hidden information setting.

10. Find the high-productivity worker's information rent.

CHAPTER 8
GAME THEORY

So far in this book we have explored (thoroughly) the use of piece rate systems to motivate workers. Piece rates are not the only way to induce workers to exert effort, though, and we will examine two others in the next two chapters. In Chapter 9 we look at a situation in which workers compete with each other for raises or bonuses, and in Chapter 10 we look at a situation in which the firm and the worker cooperate with each other to increase the surplus from the employment relationship. The work on piece rates relied primarily on marginal analysis, but our standard tool is insufficient for studying the new problems. This chapter provides the new tool we need.

Game theory is the study of strategic interactions between small numbers of actors. In the case of workers competing with each other for a raise, the actors are the individual workers, and they must determine how hard to work so that they can outperform their rivals. In the case of a worker and a firm cooperating to increase the surplus, the actors are the worker and the firm, and they must figure out a way of cooperating without allowing the other party to take advantage of them.

The purpose of this chapter is to develop a tool that is used later in the book. In this book we use three types of games, and since the different games call for different techniques, the chapter is organized around the three types of games.

1. WHAT IS A GAME?

In the language of economics, a **game** is a situation in which two or more parties interact to jointly determine their payoffs. This definition has several parts, but the one that distinguishes games from other types of economic interactions is the last part, jointly-determined payoffs. To see how games are different, it is helpful to first look at a situation which is not a game.

Think about a firm in a perfectly competitive industry. The assumptions of perfect competition say that each firm in the industry is so small that it has no effect on the market price. A firm's payoff is its profit, which is the market price times the amount

it produces, less production costs. Since no single firm can impact the market price, no firm can have any impact on any other firm's profit. Since payoffs are not jointly determined, we do not consider perfect competition to be a game.

Contrast this with a duopoly, which is a market with only two firms. Each firm is large enough to have an effect on the market price, and the more a firm produces, the lower the market price is. More to the point, if firm *A* increases its output, the market price falls, making firm *B*'s output less valuable and causing its profit to fall. Here firm *A*'s choice impacts firm *B*'s payoff, and so this is considered a game. Payoffs are jointly determined.

In fact, the piece rate scheme in Chapter 5 is the solution to a game. In that game the firm sets the worker's salary and piece rate, which of course have an impact on the worker's payoff. The worker decides how much to produce, which has an impact on the firm's payoff. The payoffs are jointly determined, and we have been analyzing games for the last four chapters. They were particularly simple games, though, and did not require any unusual techniques for solving them. The games in the next two chapters are different and require some new techniques to solve them.

Getting back to the definition of a game, the different parties in a game are called players, and they could be individual people, groups of people, individual firms, government organizations, or any other entity that makes decisions. In this book payoffs are monetary, providing additional profit to a firm or additional utility to a worker. The choices players can make are called **strategies**. The payoffs are determined by the combination of strategies chosen by all of the different players. This is what makes game theory different from other areas of economics. When one player changes his strategy, the payoffs change for all of the players, not just him. The purpose of game theory is finding a **solution** to a game, that is, a prediction of what strategies the different players will choose.

Before we can solve a game, we must first identify the players, their strategies, and how the payoffs are determined by the strategies. The best way to do this depends on the particulars of the game being studied. In some games players make their choices at the same time, such as when the offense and defense in a football game must choose their plays before they know what their opponents are going to do. In some games players make their choices sequentially, so that the second mover gets to see what the first mover did before making his own choice. The piece rate game had this feature, with the firm moving first, setting the salary and piece rate, and the worker moving second after he learns the compensation scheme. Some games give players only a small set of options, such as when two parties have the choice of either cooperating with each other or not. Other games give players a wide range of choices, such as in a duopoly when a firm can choose any level of output.

The next section expands on what is meant by a solution to a game. The remainder of the chapter is divided into three sections. We first study simultaneous games in which players have only a small number of strategies from which they can choose. We then move on to simultaneous games with a large number of possible strategies, and conclude with the study of sequential games. Each game has a different way of relating payoffs to strategies, and each has a different method for finding a solution.

2. THE CONCEPT OF EQUILIBRIUM

One "solves" a game by making a prediction about which strategies the players will choose. But how exactly does one do this? There must be some basis for making the prediction. To find such a basis, let's look at another area of economics in which interactions occur, namely the market.

In a market economy, consumers observe the prices of goods and determine the quantities of the goods that they would like to buy. At the same time, producers observe the prices and determine the quantities of the goods that they would like to sell. The market for a particular good is in equilibrium if the quantity demanded by consumers exactly equals the quantity supplied by producers, and the equilibrium price is the price that makes quantity demanded equal quantity supplied. This is the entire basis of supply and demand.

Let's look a bit closer at what is meant by an equilibrium here. An **equilibrium** is a situation in which there is no pressure for anything to change. If the market is in equilibrium, all consumers can buy their desired amounts of the good at the market price, and so there is no pressure for them to bid up the price so that they can buy more goods. Furthermore, all producers can sell their desired amounts of the good at the market price, and so there is no pressure for producers to bid down the price in order to sell more goods. There is no pressure for the price to change, and there is no pressure for consumers and producers to change their behavior in any way. This is what we mean when we say that the market is in equilibrium.

We can use the same concept to solve games. An equilibrium in a game is a situation in which neither player wants to change his strategy. Think about a game with two players. If player 1 does not want to change his strategy, it must be the case that his strategy is a best response to the strategy chosen by his opponent. After all, if it were not a best response, player 1 would have an incentive to change his strategy. At the same time, in equilibrium player 2's strategy must be a best response to player 1's strategy, otherwise player 2 would want to change. In equilibrium, then, both players must choose strategies that are **mutual best responses**, that is, the strategies must be best responses to each other. *An equilibrium of a game is a combination of strategies that are mutual best responses to each other.*

A combination of strategies that have the mutual best response property is called a **Nash equilibrium** of the game. The concept is named after John Nash, the Princeton mathematician who devised it. Nash received a Nobel Prize for the contribution, and he is also may be familiar from the book and movie *A Beautiful Mind*.

3. SIMULTANEOUS GAMES

In this section we look at games in which the players choose between a small number of strategies and they must do so all at the same time. Let's begin with an example. There are two players, call them 1 and 2. They each have two choices. Player 1 chooses between *A* and *B*, and player 2 chooses between *X* and *Y*. If 1 chooses *A* and 2 chooses *X*, they both receive payoffs of $20. If 1 chooses *B* and 2 chooses *Y*, they both receive $10. If 1 chooses *A* and 2 chooses *Y*, player 1 gets $30 and player 2 gets $5. Finally, if 1 chooses *B* and 2 chooses *X*, player 1 gets $5 and player 2 gets $30. What will happen in this game?

This is an example of a **simultaneous game**, that is, a game in which the players make their choices at the same time. Because they move at the same time, neither player gets to see what the other player is doing before making his own choice. In Section 5 we look at games where one player moves first and the other player gets to observe the move before making his own choice.

The first step in solving the game is to find a simple way to present the information in the first paragraph. We do this using a **payoff matrix**, as shown in Game 8.1. The game has four possible outcomes, corresponding to four possible combinations of strategies chosen by players 1 and 2, and the numbers in the table are the payoffs to the two players. Player 1 chooses the row of the table and his payoff is the first number in each cell, while player 2 chooses the column and his payoff is the second number in each cell. If player 1 chooses *A* and player 2 chooses *Y*, the payoffs are found in the first row (corresponding to 1 playing *A*) and the right column (corresponding to 2 playing *Y*), in which case player 1 receives a payoff of $30 and player 2 receives a payoff of $5.

GAME 8.1

		Player 2	
		X	Y
Player 1	A	20, 20	30, 5
	B	5, 30	10, 10

To solve this game we look for a Nash equilibrium, that is, a pair of strategies that are mutual best responses. Given that player 1 can only choose the row and player 2 can only choose the column, finding a Nash equilibrium boils down to two things occurring simultaneously: the row chosen by 1 must be a best response to the column chosen by 2, and the column chosen by 2 must be a best response to the row chosen by 1.

We can find the Nash equilibrium of the game using Table 8.1. The first column of the table lists each of player 1's possible strategies. The second column is player 2's best response to each of those strategies. If player 1 plays *A*, 2 gets 20 for playing *X* and 5 for playing *Y*, so *X* is his best response to *A*. If 1 plays *B*, 2 can get 30 from playing *X* or 10 from playing *Y*, so *X* is his best response to *B*.

TABLE 8.1

Best Responses for Game 8.1

Strategy played by player 1	Player 2's best response	Player 1's best response
A	X	A
B	X	A

The third column of Table 8.1 is player 1's best response to the strategy in the second column. In other words, it is 1's best response to 2's best response. In the first row, when player 1 plays *A*, player 2's best response is *X*. Player 1's best response to that is *A*, since when 2 plays *X* player 1 can get 20 from playing *A* or 5 from playing *B*. Playing *A* generates a higher payoff, so it is the best response. In the second row of Table 8.1, when player 1 plays *B*, player 2's best response is *X*. Once again, player 1's best response to *X* is *A*.

If the first and last columns of the table match, the strategy combination is a Nash equilibrium. This occurs in the first row of the table. When player 1 plays *A*, player 2's best response is *X*, and player 1's best response to that is *A*. So *X* is a best response to *A* and *A* is a best response to *X*. We have a Nash equilibrium in which player 1 plays *A*, player 2 plays *X*, and both players receive payoffs of $20. Notice that there is not a Nash equilibrium when player 1 plays *B*. The best response to *B* is *X*, but the best response to *X* is *A*, so *B* and *X* are not mutual best responses.

Now look back at the original game. Is there any way to tell that the combination of *A* and *X* is a Nash equilibrium there? Recall that in a Nash equilibrium neither player wants to change his strategy given what the other player is doing. When player 2 plays *X*, player 1 does not want to change from playing *A* to playing *B* because his payoff is 20 when he plays *A* but only 5 when he plays *B*. When player 1 plays *A*, player 2 does not

want to change from playing *X* to playing *Y* because *X* pays 20 but *Y* only pays 5. So, we really do have an equilibrium.

The combination of *B* and *Y* is not a Nash equilibrium. If player 2 plays *Y*, player 1 would like to change from playing *B* to playing *A* because *A* pays 30 but *B* pays only 10. This is enough to tell that the combination of *B* and *Y* does not constitute a Nash equilibrium, because one of the players wants to change. It turns out that player 2 would also want to change from *Y* to *X*, because when player 1 plays *B*, playing *X* pays 30 while playing *Y* pays only 10.

Game 8.2 is more complicated. The two players are named "Row" and "Column." Row can choose among the three strategies *A*, *B*, and *C*, while Column can choose among the strategies *X*, *Y*, and *Z*. Just as before, when Row chooses a strategy he chooses the row that determines the payoffs, and Column chooses the column that determines the payoffs. The payoff matrix shows the payoffs that correspond to the nine possible strategy combinations, with the first number in each pair representing Row's payoff and the second number representing Column's payoff. So, for example, if Row plays *B* and Column plays *X*, Row's payoff is 7 and Column's payoff is 0.

GAME 8.2

		Column		
		X	Y	Z
	A	12, 12	6, 14	19, 8
Row	B	7, 0	13, 2	6, 6
	C	15, 6	8, 2	4, 4

Once again we wish to find a Nash equilibrium. The best responses are shown in Table 8.2. Notice from the table that *X* is a best response to *C* and that *C* is a best response to *X*, so that there is a Nash equilibrium in which Row plays *C* and Column plays *X*. In equilibrium Row receives a payoff of 15 while Column receives a payoff of 6.

TABLE 8.2
Best responses for Game 8.2

Strategy played by Row	Column's best response	Row's best response
A	Y	B
B	Z	A
C	X	C

The Nash equilibrium in this game is not Pareto efficient. Remember that an allocation is Pareto efficient if there is no other allocation that makes one party better off and no one worse off. In the Nash equilibrium Row receives a payoff of 15 and Column receives 6. But, if Row plays *A* and Column plays *Z*, Row gets 19 and Column gets 8. Both players would be better off than they are in equilibrium, and so the equilibrium is not Pareto efficient. Why can't the two players get the higher payoffs? If Row plays *A* Column's best response is *Y*, not *Z*, so if Row played the strategy that leads to the higher payoffs, Column would play *Y* and Row would end up with only 6.

A game can have more than one Nash equilibrium. Look at Game 8.3. The best responses are given in Table 8.3. According to the table, all three of Row's strategies lead to Nash equilibria. When Row plays *A*, Column's best response is *Z*, and Row's best response to that is *A*. *A* and *Z* are mutual best responses, so they constitute a Nash equilibria. *B* and *X* are also mutual best responses, as are *C* and *Y*, and so there are three Nash equilibria.

GAME 8.3

		Column		
		X	Y	Z
	A	5, -1	4, 1	10, 2
Row	B	8, 14	2, 10	9, 9
	C	7, 1	6, 3	8, 2

TABLE 8.3
Best responses for Game 8.3

Strategy played by Row	Column's best response	Row' best response
A	Z	A
B	X	B
C	Y	C

In Game 8.3 it is difficult to predict exactly what will actually happen, since there is more than one Nash equilibrium. Any of the Nash equilibria could occur. Still, the analysis provides some information. The game has nine possible outcomes corresponding to the nine different cells of the payoff matrix, and the analysis points to only three of them as solutions. In these three cells the players would be satisfied with their performance and would not want to change from their chosen strategies if they were given the opportunity. Of course, some of the Nash equilibria pay better than the others. Row likes best the equilibrium in which he plays *A* and Column plays *Z*, while Column most likes the one in which Row plays *B* and Column plays *X*. Our theory does not tell us how to decide between equilibria, but it does tell us that equilibrium strategy combinations are the ones to look at.

APPLICATION: ASSIGNING DUTIES IN A TEAM

Now that we have seen how to solve games, the next step is to show that games can be useful. To do this, consider the following problem. A firm has two workers and two tasks that need to be performed. One of the tasks is more valuable to the firm than the other, but rather than paying more to the worker who performs that task, the firm pays both workers the same amount conditional on both tasks being completed. The effort costs are as follows. It costs worker 1 \$40 to complete task *A* and \$20 to complete task *B*. It costs worker 2 \$30 to complete task *A* and \$15 to complete task *B*. If both tasks are completed, the firm pays each worker \$35. Each worker can complete only one task. They can also choose to do nothing at all. What will the workers do?

We can present the information from the above paragraph in a payoff matrix, as in Game 8.4. If both workers perform task *A*, task *B* is left uncompleted and so the firm pays them nothing. Even so, worker 1 exerts \$40 in effort and worker 2 exerts \$30, and so they lose these amounts. If both workers perform task *B*, ignoring task *A*, they again are paid nothing, and worker 1 loses \$20 in effort costs and worker 2 loses \$15. If worker 1 performs task *A* and worker 2 performs task *B*, the firm pays them both \$35. Worker 1's payoff is then \$35 − 40 = −\$5 and worker 2's payoff is \$35 − 15 = \$20. If worker 1 performs task *B* and worker 1 performs task *A*, worker 1's payoff is \$35 − 20 = \$15 and worker 2's is \$35 − 30 = \$5.

If one worker does nothing, neither worker gets paid, and the worker who does nothing gets $0. If the one worker completes a task but the other worker does nothing, the worker who completes a task loses his effort costs.

GAME 8.4

		Column		
		A	B	Nothing
	A	-40, -30	-5, 20	-40, 0
Row	B	15, 5	-20, -15	-20, 0
	Nothing	0, -30	0, -15	0, 0

We want to find the Nash equilibria of the game. There are two of them. If worker 1 performs task *B*, worker 2's best response is to perform task *A*, and worker 1's best response to that is to perform task *B*. Worker 1 performing task *B* and worker 2 performing task *A* are mutual best responses, and so they constitute a Nash equilibrium. If worker 1 does nothing, worker 2's best response is also to do nothing, and worker 1's best response to that is to do nothing. So, there is also a Nash equilibrium in which both workers do nothing.

There is no Nash equilibrium in which worker 1 performs task *A*. If he performs task *A*, worker 2's best response is to perform task *B*, but worker 1's best response to that is to do nothing. Worker 1 performing task *A* and worker *B* performing task *B* are not mutual best responses, and so worker 1 cannot perform task *A* in equilibrium. The reason for this is that when worker 1 performs task *A* he fails to satisfy his participation constraint, since doing nothing pays better.

In the only equilibrium in which workers work, worker 1 performs task *B* and worker 2 performs task *A*. Worker 2 has an absolute advantage in both tasks, since he is able to perform task *A* for $10 less than worker 1 could and task *B* for $5 less than worker 1 could. He has a comparative advantage in task *A*, and that is the task he performs. So, the prediction of the game is that worker 2 performs the task in which he has a comparative advantage.

LESSONS ABOUT SIMULTANEOUS GAMES

This section led to several general lessons.

1. Nash equilibrium consists of a combination of strategies that are best responses to each other. We use the concept of Nash equilibrium to solve games, and it is the condition that neither player wants to change his strategy given what his opponent is doing. It is important to remember that a Nash equilibrium is a combination of *strategies*, not a combination of payoffs. It is entirely possible that two different strategy combinations can lead to the same payoffs, and so when solving a game we specify strategies, not payoffs.

2. *The Nash equilibrium may or may not be Pareto efficient.* The Nash equilibrium was Pareto efficient in Game 8.1, but not in Game 8.2. This means that one cannot find the Nash equilibrium by finding the cell in the payoff matrix with the highest payoffs, because Nash equilibria may not be Pareto efficient.

3. *There may be more than one Nash equilibrium.* An example is provided by Game 8.3. Because there can be more than one Nash equilibrium, one cannot stop looking after finding a single Nash equilibrium. Instead, one must check all of the possibilities.

4. SIMULTANEOUS GAMES WITH INFINITELY MANY POSSIBLE STRATEGIES

In Chapter 9 we will analyze a game in which workers compete against each other by exerting effort, and the one who exerts the most effort wins a prize, like a raise, a bonus, or a promotion. Workers do not just have a few effort levels from which to choose, though. They can choose any amount of effort they want, which means that they have an infinite number of possible strategies. Having so many possible strategies requires us to find a slightly new way of finding Nash equilibria.

To see why, think about how we solved games in the last section. For each of player 1's strategies we first found player 2's best response, and then we found player 1's best response to that. We found a Nash equilibrium whenever player 1's best response matched his original strategy. This approach was possible because player 1 had only two or three possible strategies to choose from, and so it did not take too many steps to find the Nash equilibria. When player 1 has an infinite number of strategies, though, this method would take and infinite number of steps. We need a way to streamline the process.

There are other areas of economics in which variables can take infinite numbers of values. One example is supply and demand analysis. The supply function tells how much output firms produce at each price level, and the demand function tells how much consumers want to buy at each price level. The equilibrium price level is the one at which quantity demanded equals quantity supplied. In supply and demand analysis, though, we do not make infinitely long tables of how much firms want to produce and how much consumers want to consume at each price level, and then search the table for

where the two quantities are equal. Instead, we graph the supply and demand *functions* and look for where the two intersect. We will use a similar approach here.

A strategy combination is a Nash equilibrium if player 1's strategy is a best response to player 2's and, at the same time, player 2's strategy is a best response to player 1's. We can find the Nash equilibria by identifying **best-response functions**, which report a player's best responses to each of his opponent's possible strategies. We can then graph the best-response functions, and wherever the two players' best-response functions intersect we have a Nash equilibrium.

The best way to see how this works is through an example. The one we use here discusses a very common problem in economics, but not one from personnel economics. Instead, it is the problem of identifying how much output is produced by a duopoly, which comes from the field of industrial organization.

APPLICATION: OUTPUT IN A DUOPOLY

Consider a market with two firms. Firm 1 chooses output q_1 to maximize its profit, and firm 2 simultaneously chooses output q_2 to maximize its profit. Total industry output is $Q = q_1 + q_2$. Market demand is given by the function $Q = 120 - p$, where p is the market price. Both firms can produce as much as they want to at zero cost, an assumption we make in order to simplify the problem. How much does each firm produce?

To answer this question we take the following steps. First, we write each firm's profit as a function of its own and its rival's output. Next we find how much output each firm produces as a function of how much its rival produces. These are the firms' best-response functions. Finally, we use the best-response functions to find the Nash equilibrium.

Since demand is given by $Q = 120 - p$, the market price is given by $p = 120 - Q = 120 - (q_1 + q_2)$. As usual, firm 1's profit is revenue minus cost, or

$$\pi_1 = pq_1 - c(q_1).$$

Since costs are zero, this simplifies to

$$\pi_1 = (120 - q_1 - q_2)q_1$$

which can be multiplied out to get

$$\pi_1 = 120q_1 - q_1^2 - q_1q_2.$$

The next step is to find the value of q_1 that maximizes π_1. We can do this in two ways. One is by using calculus. Differentiate π_1 with respect to q_1 and set it equal to zero. This yields

$$120 - 2q_1 - q_2 = 0.$$

Now solve the above equation for q_1 to get

$$q_1 = 60 - q_2/2.$$

This is firm 1's best-response function, and it tells the profit-maximizing level of q_1 for each possible value of q_2.

Calculus is only one way to get to the best-response function. The other way is to use monopoly theory, and it is a more graphical approach. The demand curve faced by firm 1 is $q_1 = 120 - q_2 - p$. Rewrite this with p on the left-hand side of the equation so that it is easier to graph:

$$p = 120 - q_2 - q_1.$$

Now graph the demand curve for firm 1, as in Figure 8.1. This is a **residual demand curve**, since it shows how much demand is left over for firm 1 after firm 2 sells q_2 units. Monopoly theory tells us that the firm's marginal revenue curve can be derived from its demand curve by drawing a line through the same vertical intercept but with twice the slope, as in the figure. Double the slope by doubling the coefficient on q_1, and the equation for the marginal revenue curve is

$$MR_1 = 120 - q_2 - 2q_1.$$

The firm maximizes profit by producing where marginal revenue equals marginal cost. Since marginal cost is zero, by assumption, firm 1 maximizes profit by producing the level of q_1 that satisfies

$$120 - q_2 - 2q_1 = 0,$$

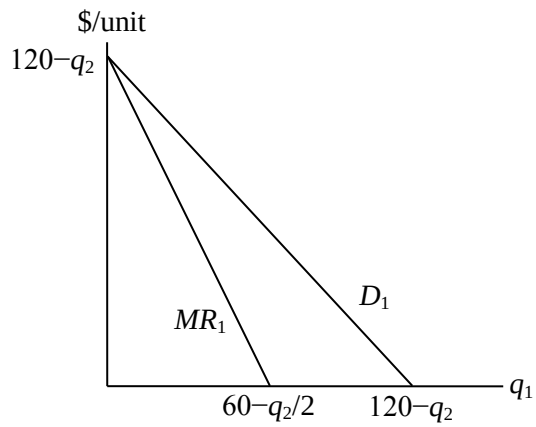
or

$$q_1 = 60 - q_2/2.$$

This approach leads us to the same best-response function for firm 1.

FIGURE 8.1

When firm 2 produces q_2, firm 1's residual demand curve is D_1. Its marginal revenue curve, MR_1, has the same intercept but is twice as steep. Firm 1's marginal cost curve coincides with the horizontal axis since its costs are zero, and its profit maximizing output level is where the marginal revenue curve crosses the horizontal axis.



We can go through the same steps to find firm 2's best-response function. Firm 2's profit function is

$$\pi_2 = (120 - q_1 - q_2)q_2 = 120q_2 - q_2^2 - q_1q_2,$$

which is just like firm 1's profit function but with the 1s and the 2s switched. Firm 2's best-response function is also just like firm 1's but with the 1s and the 2s switched:

$$q_2 = 60 - q_1/2.$$

The final step is to find a Nash equilibrium, that is, a pair of values of q_1 and q_2 such that q_1 is firm 1's best response to q_2, which in turn is firm 2's best response to q_1. In other words, we want to solve the system of equations

$$q_1 = 60 - q_2/2$$
$$q_2 = 60 - q_1/2$$

for q_1 and q_2. To do this, substitute the second equation into the first one:

$$q_1 = 60 - \frac{60 - q_1/2}{2},$$

and solve it for q_1 to get

$$q_1 = 60 - 30 + q_1/4$$
$$3q_1/4 = 30$$
$$q_1 = 40.$$

In the Nash equilibrium, firm 1 produces 40 units of output. Firm 2's output can be found by plugging $q_1 = 40$ into firm 2's best-response function:

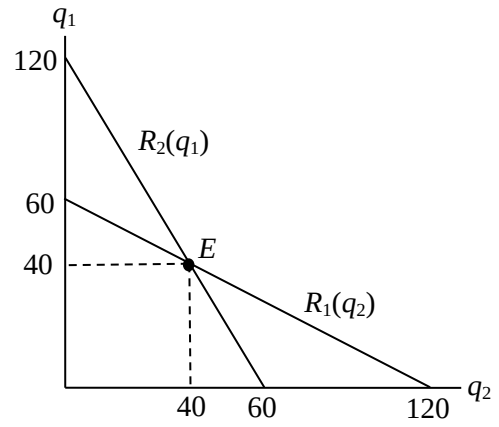
$$q_2 = 60 - q_1/2 = 60 - 40/2 = 40.$$

In Nash equilibrium, both firms produce 40.

Figure 8.2 shows what we have done graphically. Firm 1's output is measured on the vertical axis and firm 2's is on the horizontal axis. Firm 1's best-response function is given by $q_1 = 60 - q_2/2$, and it is labeled $R_1(q_2)$ in the figure. Firm 2's best-response function is given by $q_2 = 60 - q_1/2$, and it is labeled $R_2(q_1)$ in the figure. Nash equilibrium requires that the output level chosen by firm 1 is a best response to the output level chosen by firm 2, which means that the Nash equilibrium must lie somewhere on $R_1(q_2)$, firm 1's best-response curve. It also requires that firm 2 best-respond to firm 1, which means that the Nash equilibrium must also lie on $R_2(q_1)$, firm 2's best-response curve. Consequently, the Nash equilibrium is found where the two best-response curves meet, and it is point E in the figure.

FIGURE 8.2

$R_1(q_2)$ is firm 1's best-response curve, showing the optimal response to firm 2's output choice. $R_2(q_1)$ is firm 2's best-response curve, showing the optimal response to firm 1's output choice. They intersect at point E, where both firms are responding optimally to each other's output choices, which makes E a Nash equilibrium.



5. SEQUENTIAL GAMES

Consider the following game. A small town has a single auto repair shop and, since it has a monopoly in the town, it charges high prices and earns monopoly profit. Another mechanic is considering moving to the town and opening up a competing auto repair shop. If he does move in, the original repair shop has two choices – either it can cut its prices a little, consistent with being in a duopoly, or it can cut its prices a lot, starting a price war and hoping to drive the newcomer out of business. Let's make the payoffs concrete. If the newcomer stays away from the town, the original firm earns $100,000 and the newcomer earns nothing. If the newcomer opens a new shop and the original firm decides to coexist with it as a duopoly, the original firm earns $60,000 and the newcomer earns $30,000. Finally, if the newcomer opens a new shop and the original firm decides to start a price war, the original firm earns $10,000 and the newcomer loses $20,000. What will happen in the game? In particular, is the threat of a price war enough to keep the newcomer away?

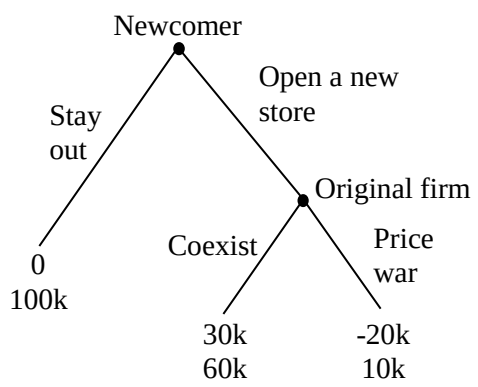
The first step in answering these questions is to find a better way to represent all of the information in the preceding paragraph. For simultaneous games we used a payoff matrix, but payoff matrices miss an important piece of information, namely who moves first and who moves second. In the game we are considering now, the newcomer moves first, deciding whether to open a new shop or not. The original firm moves second, deciding whether to behave as a duopoly or start a price war. The purpose of the payoff

matrix was to show the choices available to the players and the payoffs that ensue from the different strategy combinations. For sequential games we want to present all this information plus the order of moves.

We can do al this with a **game tree**, as shown in Figure 8.3. The straight lines on the tree are called *branches*, and the points where they connect are called *nodes*. At the top node the first mover, in this case the newcomer, gets to move. He can either choose the left branch and stay out of the market or choose the right branch and open a new store. If he stays out of the market the game is over, since there is nothing left for the original firm to do. If he opens a new store, though, the original firm gets to make a decision at the node at the end of the first branch on the right. The original firm can either choose the left branch and coexist as a duopoly or it can choose the right branch and start a price war. The payoffs are at the end of each set of branches, with the payoff to the first-mover on top and the payoff to the second-mover below. So, in this case, the newcomer's payoff is on top, and the original firm's payoff is on the bottom.

FIGURE 8.3

A newcomer moves first, deciding whether to open a new store or not. If he opens a new store, the original firm can either coexist with him as a duopoly or start a price war. The top payoff at the end of each branch is for the first-mover, in this case the newcomer, and the bottom payoff is for the second-mover, the original firm.



Following the branches, we see that if the newcomer stays out he gets a payoff of zero and the original firm gets $100,000. If the newcomer opens a new store and the original firm chooses to coexist as a duopoly, the newcomer makes $30,000 and the original firm makes $60,000. If the newcomer enters and the original firm starts a price war, the newcomer loses $20,000 while the original firm makes $10,000.

We solve sequential games using a concept that is a bit different from Nash equilibrium, and we get to it through the process of **backward induction**. Backward

induction means that we begin our analysis of the game at the last nodes of the game tree and then work our way back toward the beginning. In Figure 8.3, the last node is the one where the newcomer has already opened a new store and the original firm must decide whether to coexist or start a price war. If it coexists it earns $60,000, but if it starts a price war it only makes $10,000. Clearly it is better to coexist, and so this is what the original firm will do if it is given the choice. Now move back to the node at the beginning, where the newcomer must decide whether or open a new store or stay out of the market. If he stays out of the market he earns $0. If he opens a new store, from what we have just figured out he knows that the original firm will choose to coexist, in which case the newcomer makes $30,000. $30,000 is better than $0, so the newcomer will choose to open a new store, and the original firm will choose to coexist as a duopoly.

It turns out that the original firm cannot keep the newcomer away by threatening a price war. To fully understand why, we must look at the strategies used by the players. *In a sequential game, strategies are complete contingent plans that tell what move the player will make at every node at which it could possibly make a decision*. In the simple game of Figure 8.3, the newcomer has two possible strategies: open a new store or stay out. The original firm also has two strategies: coexist if the newcomer opens a new store or start a price war if the newcomer opens a new store. The equilibrium we found through backward induction has the newcomer choosing the strategy to open a new store and the original firm choosing the strategy to coexist if the newcomer opens a new store.

The original firm would like to adopt the strategy of starting a price war if the newcomer opens a new store. The newcomer's best response to that would be to stay out of the market, and the original firm would earn $100,000. There is a problem with that strategy, though. Once the newcomer opens a new store, the original firm would not want to follow that strategy because doing so would reduce his payoff by $50,000. The newcomer knows this, and therefore does not believe the original firm when it threatens to start a price war. In other words, the original firm's threat to start a price war is not credible, and backward induction rules out the use of non-credible threats.

Let's move on to another game. This one has two players, a father and his six-year-old son. The father has two tickets to the circus and would like to take his son. There is a problem, though. The son likes to whine, and the father has threatened the son that if he whines the circus trip is off. The game tree and the payoffs are shown in Figure 8.4. The payoffs reflect the order in which the son and the father prefer the various outcomes. The son's favorite outcome is where he gets to whine and he gets to go to the circus anyway, so that outcome is given a 4. His least favorite outcome is where he neither whines nor goes to the circus, and that outcome is given a 1. He would rather go to the circus than whine, so his payoff is 3 when he does not whine and goes to the circus, and 2 when he whines but does not go to the circus. The father's favorite outcome is the one where the son behaves and they go to the circus, so that one gets a 4 for the father.

His least favorite outcome is the one where the son whines and they stay home because then he is stuck at home with a whiny kid, so that one is assigned a payoff of 1. He would rather go to the circus with a whining boy than stay home when his son behaves.

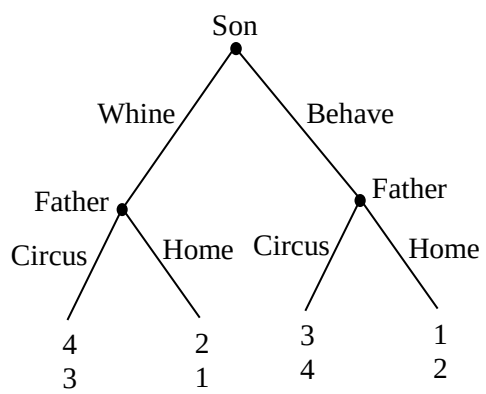
What strategies will the two choose? We can find them using backward induction. Begin with the father's decision when the son has already whined. He can either go to the circus for a payoff of 3 or stay home with a payoff of 1, and he would choose to go to the circus if the kid whines. Now look at the father's decision when the son is behaving. He can either go to the circus for a payoff of 4 or stay home for a payoff of 2, and he would rather go to the circus when the kid behaves. So, the father's strategy is:

Go to the circus if the son whines,
Go to the circus if he behaves.

We can now move to the son's decision at the beginning of the game. If he whines, his father still takes him to the circus, and the son's payoff is 4. If he behaves, his father takes him to the circus, and his payoff is 3. He chooses to whine, and his father still takes him to the circus.

FIGURE 8.4

A father has threatened his son that if he whines, he will not get to go to the circus. The game tree at the right shows the ensuing possibilities. The son gets to move first, deciding whether to whine or not. The father must then decide whether or not to take the son to the circus. The son's payoffs are in the top row, and the father's are in the bottom row. The payoffs reflect the order of preference among the outcomes for the father and son.



The father wanted to follow the strategy

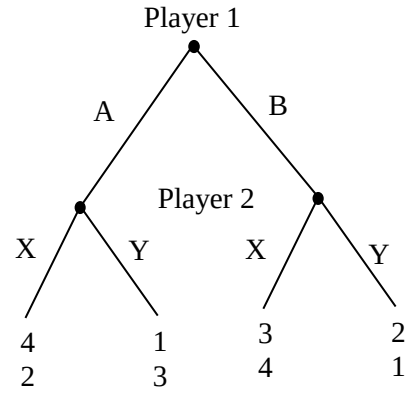
Stay home if the son whines,
Go to the circus if he behaves.

What is wrong with this strategy? If the father would actually follow this strategy, the son would receive 2 from whining but 3 from behaving, and his best response would be to behave. This is exactly what the father had in mind when he made the threat. But, being an accomplished game theorist, as all children innately are, the son knows that if he whines the father will not follow through with the threat and will still take him to the circus. In other words, the father's threat is non-credible.

In both of the sequential games we have examined so far, the first mover has had an advantage, able to get his favorite outcome. That is not always the case, as can be seen in the game in Figure 8.5. In the equilibrium of this game player 2 plays *Y* if player 1 chooses *A*, and plays *X* if player 1 chooses *B*. Because of this, if player 1 chooses *A* his payoff is 2, but if he chooses *B* his payoff is 3. He will choose *B*, even though his highest payoff of 4 is only possible from playing *A*. In this case player 2 threatens to play *Y* if player 1 plays *A*, and since that is what player 2 would do if player 1 actually did play *Y*, the threat is credible. Player 1 chooses *B*.

FIGURE 8.5

This is an example of a sequential game in which player 2 gets a higher payoff than player 1 in equilibrium.



Let's look at one more game, as depicted in Figure 8.6. In this game player 1 moves first, choosing between *A* and *B*, then player 2 moves, choosing between *L* and *R*,

and then player 1 moves again, choosing between *X* and *Y*. It is possible to find the equilibrium strategies using backward induction. During his second turn player 1's equilibrium strategy is

X if *AL*, *X* if *AR*, *Y* if *BL*, and *X* if *BR*,

where *X* if *AL* means that player 1 plays *X* if he first played *A* and then player 2 played *L*. Remember that since player 1 is also the first mover, his payoff is the top one at the end of each branch. During player 2's turn the equilibrium strategy is

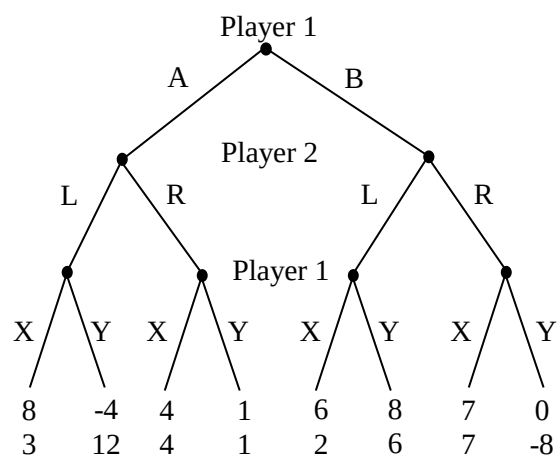
R if *A*, and *R* if *B*.

Finally, we move to the beginning of the game where player 1 plays *B*. The outcome of the game is that player 1 plays *B*, player 2 plays *R*, and player 1 plays *X*. Player 1's payoff is 7 and player 2's is also 7.

Backward induction is straightforward to use, but it may seem strange that even though player 1 plays *B*, it is still necessary to specify what player 1 would do if he had played *A* in the first stage. The reason is that we must specify what will happen if player 1 had chosen *A* in order to see whether it is better for him to play *A* or *B*. Remember, a strategy is a complete contingent plan, and it includes specifying what will happen at nodes that are not reached.

FIGURE 8.6

In this game player 1 moves first, choosing either *A* or *B*. Player 2 moves second, choosing either *L* or *R*. Player 1 then moves again, playing either *X* or *Y*.



LESSONS ABOUT SEQUENTIAL GAMES

Sequential games differ from simultaneous games in that time passes and players have to consider what will happen in the future. There are three general rules that should be followed when analyzing sequential games.

1. *Sequential games are solved using backward induction*. To solve the games, look at the actions taken by the player moving last. Then work your way back to the beginning of the game, finding the optimal move for each player at each decision node.

2. *In sequential games, strategies are complete contingent plans*. A strategy must say what the player will do at every node where he could possibly make a decision. The best way to think about a strategy is that it is a set of written instructions that the player could hand to someone else and have them play the game for them. The strategy handles every possible contingency, even contingencies that the instruction-writer would not expect to occur.

The reason that one needs complete contingent plans is that one needs to be able to check that strategies are equilibria, or best responses to each other. If one does not specify what will happen at some decision nodes, it is impossible to tell whether one strategy is better than another.

3. *Threats must be credible.* In sequential games a player can threaten to take an action in the future that will punish an opponent for making an undesirable choice. In equilibrium, though, the only threats that work are the ones that are believable. To be credible, a threat must be consistent with the action that the player would take should he eventually reach that decision node. If the player making the threat would be better off by not fulfilling the threat when the time comes, the threat is non-credible.

Backward induction automatically eliminates all non-credible threats. It does this by making each player choose a best response at every decision node, and players will not choose non-credible threats because they make the player worse off than doing something else.

PROBLEMS

1. What is the difference between a strategy in a simultaneous game and a strategy in a sequential game?

2. Find the Nash equilibria of the following games:

(a)

		Column		
		X	Y	Z
	A	2, 8	2, 0	2, 2
Row	B	5, 3	3, 4	1, 1
	C	7, 4	0, 8	3, 3

(b)

		Column		
		X	Y	Z
	A	7, 5	4, 2	9, 1
Row	B	6, 2	3, 4	8, 7
	C	1, 6	8, 7	2, 2

(c)

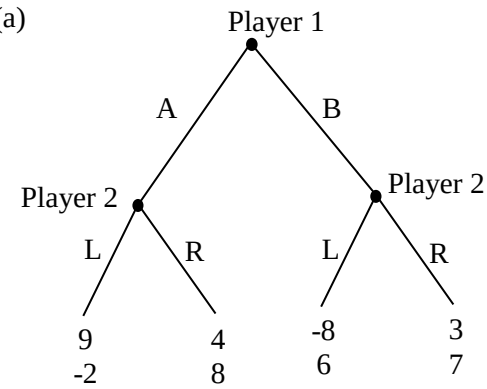
		Column		
		X	Y	Z
	A	8, 8	2, 10	0, 1
Row	B	10, 2	5, 5	0, 1
	C	1, 0	1, 0	1, 1

3. Construct a payoff matrix for the following game and then find the Nash equilibria.

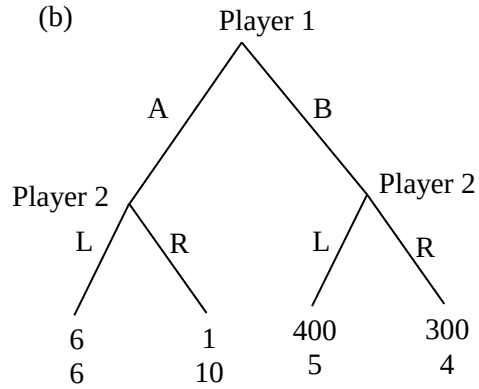
There are two players, Ann and Bob, and they are trying to meet at the same place. They have not talked to each other about where to meet, they are just hoping to bump into each other. Fortunately, they live in a small town, and the only two possible places to meet are the coffee shop and the bowling alley. Ann likes to bowl, but Bob does not. Bob drinks coffee, but Ann does not. If they both end up at the bowling alley, Ann gets a payoff of 5 and Bob gets a payoff of 3. If they meet at the coffee shop Bob gets a payoff of 5 and Ann gets 3. If Ann goes to the bowling alley and Bob goes to the coffee shop, Ann and Bob both get 2. If Ann goes to the coffee shop and Bob goes to the bowling alley, Ann and Bob both get payoffs of zero.

4. Solve the following games being sure to write down the strategies for the two players.

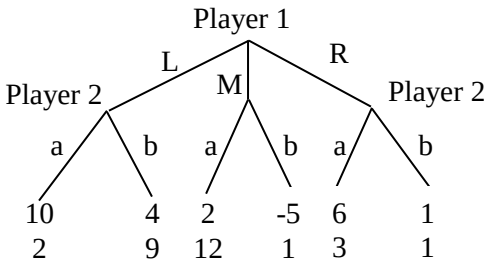
(a)



(b)



(c)



5. A student who is about to graduate has a job offer with firm A that will provide him with a net benefit of 7000. Firm B has also made him an offer that will provide him net benefit of 8000, and will provide firm B with profit of 4000. Firm B also knows the details of firm A's offer. The student tells firm B that he will accept the job with B if B sweetens the offer a little, giving the student net benefit of 9000 and providing only 3000 in profit to the firm. He also tells firm B that if it does not sweeten the offer he will take the job with firm A, in which case firm B gets no profit.

(a) Draw a game tree starting with firm B's decision of whether to sweeten the offer or not.

(b) Solve the game.

(c) Is the student's threat to work for firm A credible?

6. Two firms in a duopoly have cost functions given by $C(q) = 60q$, in which case marginal cost is constant and equal to 60. The market demand curve is $Q = 360 - p$. Find the Nash equilibrium output levels.

CHAPTER 9
TOURNAMENTS

So far we have only examined compensation schemes in which pay is directly tied to output. While there are many types of jobs in which this type of incentive pay is used, it is far from the only way that workers are motivated to perform. For many workers, especially white collar workers, "output" is an ill-defined notion, since their jobs entail many different tasks, few of which can be measured as "output." If output cannot be measured, some other means of motivation must be found. One common method is the tournament, where workers work hard to compete for raises, bonuses, or promotions. In this chapter we analyze tournaments, determining how they motivate workers, what facets of the tournament are important for motivating workers, and whether tournaments provide incentives for undesirable behavior in the same way that piece rates do.

1. SOME EXAMPLES

Tournaments and contests are very common in society, and are the basis for all sporting events and TV game shows. They are also used in the workplace to motivate workers. Tournaments and contests are different, but related, things. For an example of a tournament, think about the NCAA basketball tournament which starts with 64 teams and goes through six rounds to determine a national champion. The winners in the first round go on to compete in the second round, the winners there proceed to the third round, and so on. A tournament usually has several rounds, or levels, that one must go through to get to the top. A contest, on the other hand, has only one round. So each game in the NCAA tournament is a contest. In this chapter we study both tournaments and contests, but we will call them all "tournaments." This is okay because contests, after all, are just single-round tournaments.

Tournaments also occur in major league baseball, with teams competing during the regular season for a spot in the playoffs, and then competing in the playoffs for a spot in the World Series, and finally competing for the championship. For our purposes, though, baseball has a more important tournament. Players compete in high school and college to get drafted by a major league team. After they are drafted they must work their way up through the minor leagues before finally making it to the majors. So, a player

must compete with others in Class A ball in order to get promoted to a Class AA teaml, and those players compete with each other to get promoted to a Class AAA team. The players in Class AAA compete with each other for a chance at playing in the major leagues. Minor league salaries tend to be low, with league minimums set at $1050 per month for Class A players and $2150 per month for Class AAA players in 2005. Players in the majors make much more, with minimum annual salaries set at $316,000 in 2005.

One can also consider employment in the military as a tournament. An officer enters the army as a second lieutenant making about $2300 per month in 2005. Officers compete with each other to move up through the ranks, getting pay increases at each stage. So, for example, a major with ten years of experience earns $5300 per month, but a promotion by one grade to lieutenant colonel would increase pay to $5600 per month. A full colonel with twelve years of experience earns $6100 per month, but a promotion by one grade to brigadier general would increase that pay to $8100 per month. The salary increases tend to get larger as one moves up through the ranks. The number of officers in each rank, though, gets smaller. For example, in 2004 there were only about 65% as many lieutenant colonels as majors, and only about 40% as many full colonels as lieutenant colonels.

Many corporations employ the same sort of tournament structure. Executives enter at low ranks with minimal responsibilities, and those who perform well get promoted to the next level. The number of executives becomes smaller and salaries rise substantially as one moves up the ladder. Workers exert effort so that they can move up through the corporate hierarchy and earn these large raises. Many firms also use contests to motivate workers. Whenever you go into a store and see a plaque with the name of the employee of the month, you are looking at the winner of a contest. The prize can range from simple recognition to a cash bonus or some sort of merchandise. Workers compete for the prize by exerting more effort and producing more for the firm.

2. A MODEL OF A TOURNAMENT

To keep things simple, suppose that only two workers compete for a prize in a tournament. The prize is of size A, and can be thought of as a bonus or the raise that comes with a promotion. The supervisor deciding who wins wants to reward the worker who exerts more effort. Accordingly, worker 1 exerts effort e_1, and worker 2 exerts effort e_2. Effort is costly for the workers, and the cost function is $C(e)$, with $C(0) = MC(0) = 0$, as usual.

The supervisor observes the difference between the two effort levels, $e_1 - e_2$, and wants to reward worker 1 if the difference is positive and wants to reward worker 2 if the difference is negative. But, the supervisor does not watch everything the two competitors do, so she does not observe $e_1 - e_2$ perfectly. Instead, she observes the difference with some error, so she observes $e_1 - e_2 + \tilde{\varepsilon}$, where $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ is a random noise variable. She

rewards worker 1 if she observes $e_1 - e_2 + \tilde{\varepsilon} > 0$, and she rewards worker 2 if she observes $e_1 - e_2 + \tilde{\varepsilon} < 0$.

Because the supervisor does not observe the effort difference perfectly, it is entirely possible that worker 1 exerts more effort than worker 2, but worker 2 gets rewarded. This is obviously unfair to worker 1. It is also realistic. Workers often feel that they were unjustly passed up for a promotion, while at the same time the supervisor feels that she promoted the right person. The model allows for this by adding noise to the supervisor's observations.

Suppose that worker 1 exerts effort e_1, and that worker 2 exerts effort e_2. Worker 2 wins the tournament if $e_1 - e_2 + \tilde{\varepsilon} < 0$, which reduces to $\tilde{\varepsilon} < e_2 - e_1$. So, any draw of $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ below $e_2 - e_1$ makes worker 2 a winner. Worker 1 wins if worker 2 does not, so any draw of $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ above $e_2 - e_1$ makes worker 1 the winner.

Now look at Figure 9.1. It is the probability distribution $P(\varepsilon)$ of the noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}$, and it has the following interpretation: the height of the curve at value x is the probability of drawing a value of $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ no higher than x. So, $P(x)$ is the probability that $\tilde{\varepsilon} \leq x$. We can use this function P to determine the probability that each worker wins, given their effort choices. As argued above, worker 2 wins if $\tilde{\varepsilon} < e_2 - e_1$, and so worker 2 wins with probability $P(e_2 - e_1)$. Worker 1 wins the rest of the time, so worker 1 wins with probability $1 - P(e_2 - e_1)$.

The marginal probability distribution, also known as a density function, turns out to be crucial to our analysis. As typical with the marginal version of a function, its height is the slope of the original function. Looking at the probability distribution function P in Figure 9.1, we see that it starts out fairly flat, then becomes steeper until it reaches $\varepsilon = 0$, then it becomes flatter again. Accordingly, the marginal probability distribution MP shown in Figure 9.2 is low for the lowest levels of ε, climbs as ε grows until $\varepsilon = 0$, and then falls again.

FIGURE 9.1

$P(\varepsilon)$ is the probability distribution function for the random noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon}$. Its height at point x is the probability of drawing a value of ε that is no greater than x. Accordingly, it starts off at zero for low values of ε and increases as ε increases, finally reaching a value of one for the highest possible value of ε.

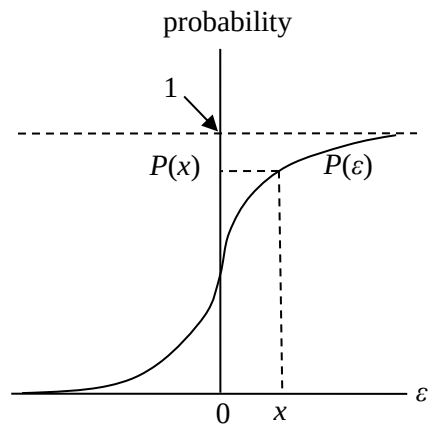
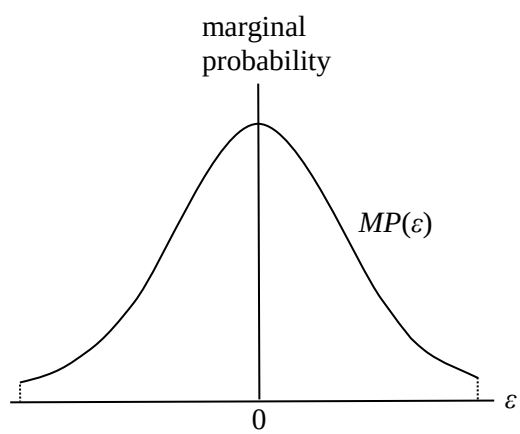


FIGURE 9.2

$MP(\varepsilon)$ is the marginal probability of drawing the value ε from the probability distribution $P(\varepsilon)$. Its height is the slope of the probability distribution in Figure 9.1, and it can be interpreted as the increase in probability per unit increase in ε.



The marginal probability distribution shown in Figure 9.2 has two key features that will be exploited in our analysis of tournaments. The first is that it is symmetric about the vertical axis. This means that the probability of drawing a value of ε above some number x is the same as the probability of drawing a value below $-x$, so that, on average, the errors cancel out. In other words, the expected value of the error is zero. This has the interpretation that the errors are "fair." The supervisor's observations are not

perfect, but at least they do not unfairly favor one worker or the other. To see why we make this assumption, suppose that $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ was positive more often than not. This would mean that the supervisor would tend to observe more of worker 1's effort than worker 2's, and so would tend to unfairly favor worker 1 in the award decision. But if the supervisor knew that she observed more of worker 1's effort than worker 2's, she could compensate for this in her decision by subtracting the average size of the error from her observation. This would leave an effective average error of zero, so we might as well begin by assuming that the errors average out to zero.

The second key feature of the marginal probability distribution is that the curve peaks when $\varepsilon = 0$ and falls as ε moves away from zero in either direction. This is the familiar "bell" shape that is common in statistical analysis, and we use it here. Its interpretation is that values near zero are relatively common, and extreme values that are far from zero are relatively rare. So, the supervisor is more likely to make errors that are small, in the sense of being close to zero, than she is to make errors that are large, in the sense of being far from zero.

With these tools in place, we can now go on to analyze how workers respond to the incentives provided by the tournament.

3. OPTIMAL EFFORT FOR AN INDIVIDUAL WORKER

In this section we look specifically at the effort decision of worker 1, assuming that he knows exactly how much effort worker 2 will exert. In reality, both workers choose their effort levels without the other one knowing what the choice will be, but what we do here is an intermediate step for addressing the more realistic setting. In the language of game theory, we find worker 1's best response function. The key issues for this section are to determine how worker 1's effort changes when (1) worker 2 exerts more effort, and (2) the size of the prize for winning the tournament changes.

Suppose that worker 2 exerts effort e_2, and that the prize for winning the tournament is A. How much effort should worker 1 exert? As usual, the answer comes from marginal analysis, that is, equating expected marginal benefit and marginal cost. His expected benefit from exerting effort is the probability of winning the tournament times the size of the prize. Recall that the probability that player 1 wins is the probability that the noise variable $\tilde{\varepsilon} > e_2 - e_1$, which we found to be $1 - P(e_2 - e_1)$. Consequently, expected benefit is given by the formula

$$EB(e_1) = [1 - P(e_2 - e_1)]\cdot A.$$

The cost is simply the effort cost, $C(e_1)$.

The benefit expression, $[1 - P(e_2 - e_1)]\cdot A$, has two parts, the probability of winning and the size of the prize, but only the probability of winning depends on the

amount of effort exerted by worker 1. Also, the probability of winning increases when worker 1 exerts more effort. This can be seen by noting that when e_1 increases, $e_2 - e_1$ decreases, and by Figure 9.1, $P(e_2 - e_1)$ decreases since P is an increasing function. Marginal expected benefit is given by the formula

$$MEB(e_1) = MP(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A.$$

The marginal expected benefit of effort is the marginal probability of winning times the size of the prize. The marginal condition is

$$MP(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A = MC(e_1). \qquad (*)$$

The left-hand side is the marginal expected benefit of effort, which comes from increasing the probability of winning, and the right-hand side is the marginal cost. Worker 1 chooses an effort level that equates the two.

The goal of this section is to determine how the optimal effort level changes when worker 2 exerts more effort and when the prize is made larger. The key to this is the equation (*) above. Equation (*) states that worker 1 exerts effort until the marginal expected benefit of further effort is exactly offset by the marginal cost. If something happens to make the marginal expected benefit rise, then he will exert more effort before marginal expected benefit equals marginal cost. Since marginal expected benefit is given by

$$MEB = MP(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A,$$

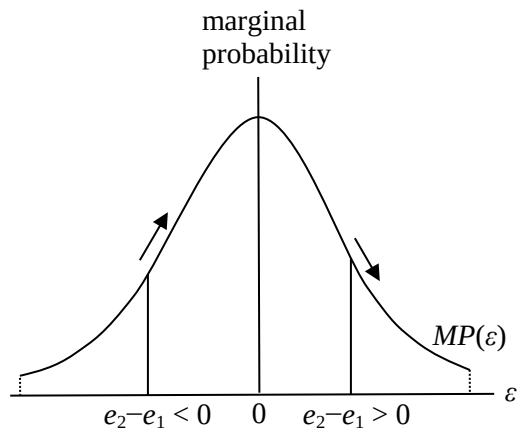
there are two ways that marginal expected benefit could increase. One is to increase the marginal probability, $MP(e_2 - e_1)$, and the other is to increase the size of the award for winning the tournament, A. If either the marginal probability increases or the size of the award increases or both, the worker exerts more effort.

We begin by exploring how worker 1's optimal effort level changes when worker 2 exerts more effort. When e_2 increases, $e_2 - e_1$ also increases. The impact on $MP(e_2 - e_1)$, and consequently on worker 1's marginal expected benefit of effort, depends on the relative values of e_2 and e_1. When $e_2 > e_1$, so that worker 2 is exerting more effort than worker 1, an increase in e_2 moves worker 2 farther ahead. It also means that $e_2 - e_1$ is to the right of zero in Figure 9.3, and the increase in e_2 means a movement farther to the right. As can be seen in the figure, the marginal probability falls as a result of this move, reducing player 1's marginal expected benefit of effort. As usual, when his marginal expected benefit falls, he reduces his effort level. This yields the result that when worker 2 exerts more effort than worker 1, further increases in e_2 induce decreases in e_1.

FIGURE 9.3

When worker 2 exerts more effort than worker 1, $e_2 - e_1 > 0$. An increase in e_2 is a movement to the right, which causes a movement down the *MP* curve, as shown by the downward-sloping arrow.

When worker 2 exerts less effort than worker 1, $e_2 - e_1 < 0$, and an increase in e_2 causes a movement up the *MP* curve, as shown by the upward-sloping arrow.



Now look at the opposite situation, where $e_2 < e_1$, so that worker 1 is ahead. An increase in e_2 means that worker 2 is catching up. Graphically, it means that $e_2 - e_1$ is to the left of zero in Figure 9.3, and the increase in e_2 translates in a movement to the right. But, in this portion of the graph, *MP* increases with movements to the right, so worker 1's marginal expected benefit increases when worker 2's effort level increases. The increase in worker 1's marginal expected benefit of effort means that he will exert more effort, yielding the result that when worker 2 exerts less effort than worker 1, increases in e_2 induce increases in e_1.

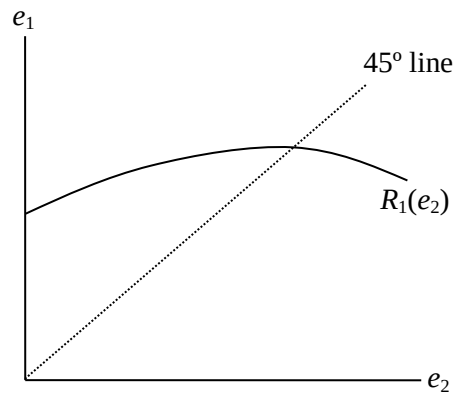
Figure 9.4 summarizes these results in a graph that plots worker 1's optimal effort level against worker 2's chosen effort level. At points above the 45° line, $e_2 < e_1$, and so worker 1's optimal effort level increases when worker 2 exerts more effort. At points below the 45° line, $e_2 > e_1$, and worker 1's optimal effort level decreases when worker 2 exerts more effort. The only thing left to explain in the graph is why worker 1 exerts a positive amount of effort when worker 2 exerts no effort at all.

To that end, suppose that $e_2 = 0$. We can narrow worker 1's decision down to two basic choices: either he exerts $e_1 = 0$ or he exerts $e_1 > 0$. Choosing $e_1 = 0$ cannot be optimal. If he chooses $e_1 = 0$, then $e_2 - e_1 = 0$, and *MP* is at its peak in Figure 9.3. Consequently, worker 1's marginal expected benefit of effort is positive when $e_1 = 0$. But, his marginal cost is zero by the assumption that $MC(0) = 0$. So, when e_1 and e_2 are both zero, worker 1's marginal expected benefit exceeds his marginal cost, and he should

exert more effort. This establishes that when worker 2 does nothing, worker 1 should still exert *some* effort.

FIGURE 9.4

$R_1(e_2)$ is worker 1's best-response curve, showing his optimal effort level for each effort level chosen by worker 2. It starts off with a positive value of e_1 when $e_2 = 0$, increases until it reaches the 45º line where both workers exert the same amount of effort, and then decreases.

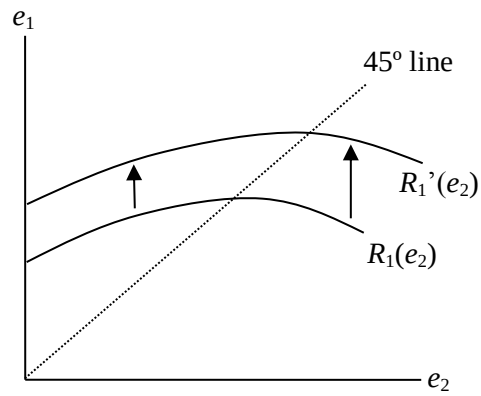


The curve in Figure 9.4 is worker 1's **best-response curve.** It shows worker 1's optimal effort level for every possible effort level chosen by worker 2, which can be thought of as worker 1's reaction to worker 2's choice of effort level. The curve shows that worker 1 exerts positive effort when worker 2 does nothing, he increases his effort as e_2 rises until the two are equal, and then he decreases his effort.

Worker 2's effort level is just one of the factors that affects worker 1's optimal effort level. The size of the award that comes with winning the tournament also affects worker 1's decision. To see how, recall that marginal expected benefit equals $MP(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A$, so increasing A also increases marginal expected benefit. When *MEB* rises, effort must also increase to equate it to marginal cost. But, what is important here is that an increase in A increases *MEB* for *every* value of e_2 chosen by worker 2. Consequently, an increase in A shifts the entire best-response curve upward, as in Figure 9.5.

FIGURE 9.5

When A increases, worker 1 exerts more effort for every possible effort level chosen by worker 2, and his best-response curve shifts upward from $R_1(e_2)$ to $R_1'(e_2)$. The best-response curve also shifts upward when effort becomes less costly.



Worker 1's optimal effort level also changes when his cost of effort changes. When the marginal cost of effort rises, the worker reduces his effort level to equate the marginal expected benefit and the marginal cost. This is true for every possible effort choice made by worker 2, so when worker 1's marginal cost curve rises, his best-response curve falls.

4. COMPETITION BETWEEN WORKERS

The best-response curve constructed in the preceding section assumes that worker 1 can respond to worker 2's effort choice, implicitly assuming that worker 2 chooses before worker 1. This is not very realistic, though. In many cases, workers competing for a promotion are in different divisions of the firm or in different geographic areas, so they would have difficulty observing how hard their competitors are working. Also, many workplace contests pit workers in one location against workers in another, making observation difficult. But, even if the two competitors work together, they may not be able to see everything that the other worker does, and they cannot know how much effort their competitors will exert during the time before the prize is awarded. For all of these reasons, it makes sense to model the competition as if both workers make their effort choices simultaneously, without being able to see how hard the other one is working.

In situations like this we look for a Nash equilibrium, as discussed in Chapter 8. In a Nash equilibrium, both workers choose effort levels that are best responses to each others' effort choices. Put another way, worker 1 responds optimally to worker 2's

equilibrium effort choice, and worker 2 responds optimally to worker 1's equilibrium effort choice. This is where the best-response curves discussed in Section 3 come in. Worker 1's best-response curve shows his optimal effort choice for every possible effort level chosen by worker 2. Worker 2 also has a best-response curve showing his optimal effort choice for every possible effort level chosen by worker 1.

Figure 9.6 shows both workers' best-response curves in the same graph. $R_1(e_2)$ is worker 1's best-response curve, and $R_2(e_1)$ is worker 2's best-response curve. It looks just like worker 1's best-response curve except transposed to account for the fact that the axes are reversed from worker 2's perspective. The two best-response curves intersect at point E, where worker 1 exerts effort level e_1^* and worker 2 exerts effort level e_2^*. Let's see if point E is an equilibrium. There are two things to check. First, given worker 2's choice, is worker 1 behaving optimally? When worker 2 exerts effort level e_2^*, worker 1's optimal response is found on his best-response curve at $R_1(e_2^*)$, which, from the graph, is seen to be e_1^*. So, e_1^* is the optimal response to e_2^*. Second, given worker 1's effort choice, is worker 2's effort choice optimal? Given that worker 1 exerts effort level e_1^*, worker 2's best response is e_2^* since it is on his best-response curve. So, at point E, both workers are making best responses to the other's effort choice, and E is a Nash equilibrium.

FIGURE 9.6

$R_1(e_2)$ is worker 1's best-response curve, showing the optimal response to worker 2's effort choice. $R_2(e_1)$ is worker 2's best-response curve, showing the optimal response to worker 1's effort choice. They intersect at point E, where both workers are responding optimally to each other's effort choices, which makes E a Nash equilibrium.

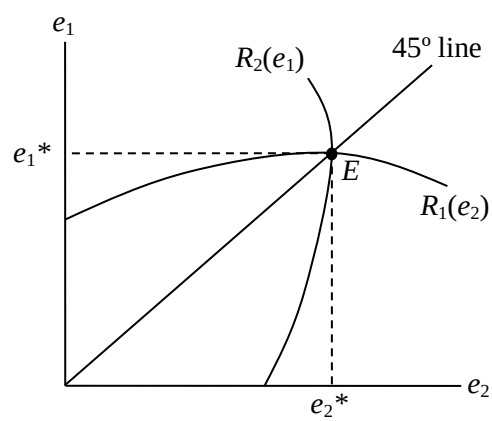
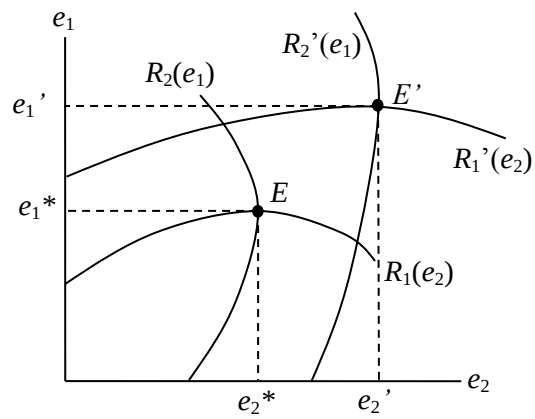


Figure 9.6 shows how the equilibrium effort levels are determined. The employer has control over the parameters of the tournament, though, and can adjust them to get the desired amount of effort. One obvious parameter is the size of the prize the

winner receives, *A*. As shown in the preceding section, an increase in *A* causes worker 1's best-response curve to shift upward. It would also shift worker 2's best-response curve to the right, as in Figure 9.7. The new equilibrium is at point *E'*, and both workers exert more effort when the prize is made larger.

FIGURE 9.7

When the prize for winning the tournament increases, both best-response curves shift outward. This causes both workers to exert more effort in the new equilibrium, *E'*.



DO LARGER PRIZES REALLY INDUCE MORE EFFORT?

Data on individual performance in promotion tournaments in actual businesses are hard to come by. Data are much easier to obtain for sporting events, and many of them, such as golf, bowling, and various races, have tournament structures. Michael Maloney and Robert McCormick of Clemson University explore whether runners run faster in races with larger prizes.* Virtually all competitive runners who regularly finish in the money at these races claim that they run all out, at their physical limits, in every race. This would mean that there would be no prize effect, because runners could not possibly run any faster.

Maloney and McCormick find three reasons that there are faster times in races with higher stakes. The first is that the higher stakes attract faster runners who might otherwise go elsewhere. The second is that the higher stakes attract *more* runners, and so chance alone predicts that the fastest times decrease (i.e. get faster) when the number of runners increases. The third, and the one that is of interest here, is that the individual runners try harder when the prizes are larger, contrary to the runners' own claims.

To uncover this result, they examined the results of 115 races in the southeastern U.S. over a five-year period. In these 115 races, there were 136 individual runners who won monetary prizes at least three times. Maloney and McCormick look at the effect of an increase in the gap between the individual runner's prize in one of these races and the prize for the next-best runner in that same race. According to our tournament model, when the gap gets bigger, the individual runner has a greater incentive to run faster. They find that the bigger prize gaps do induce runners to go faster. In fact, their result holds for both sexes and all age classes, although they find, interestingly, that women are more responsive to the prize incentives than men.

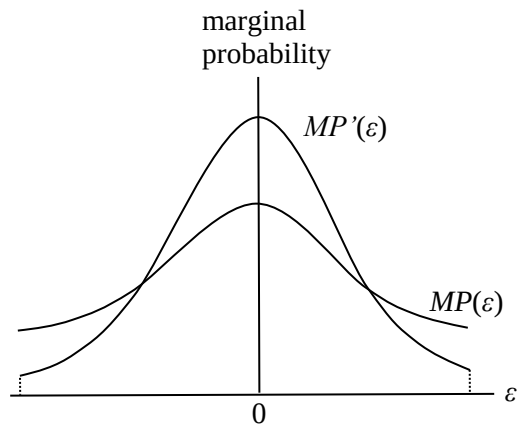
*Maloney, M. and R. McCormick, "The Response of Workers to Wages in Tournaments: Evidence from Foot Races," *Journal of Sports Economics* 1, May 2000, 99-123.

A second factor under the firm's control is how accurately it measures the workers' performance. The firm can spend more resources on monitoring the workers, in which case the supervisor will have a more accurate assessment of which worker exerts more effort. In terms of the model, this increased precision changes the marginal probability distribution by shifting probability away from the tails and toward the center, as shown in Figure 9.8. Essentially, there is a new, taller, skinnier bell-shaped marginal probability distribution. This increases the amount of effort a worker exerts when his competitor exerts no effort, and it makes the best-response curve steeper. Essentially, the best-response curves shift outward, just as in Figure 9.7, and the workers respond to the increased marginal expected benefit by exerting more effort. This yields the result that when there is less noise in the evaluation system and workers are identical and treated fairly, they exert more effort.

This result has some intuitive appeal. The more noise in the evaluation system, the less likely it is that increased effort will lead to a promotion, and so the less willing the worker is to exert that additional effort. By making the evaluation system more precise, the worker's reward is tied more closely to his performance, increasing his incentive to perform.

FIGURE 9.8

When the evaluation process becomes more precise (less noisy), the marginal probability distribution becomes tighter, shifting from $MP(\varepsilon)$ to $MP'(\varepsilon)$.



The firm has two ways to control the amount of effort exerted by the workers in a tournament. First, it can adjust the size of the prize until it gets the workers to exert the optimal amount of effort. Increasing the prize induces workers to exert more effort, and decreasing the prize induces them to exert less. Second, it can adjust how much it monitors the workers. Increased monitoring also leads to increased effort.

A NUMERICAL EXAMPLE

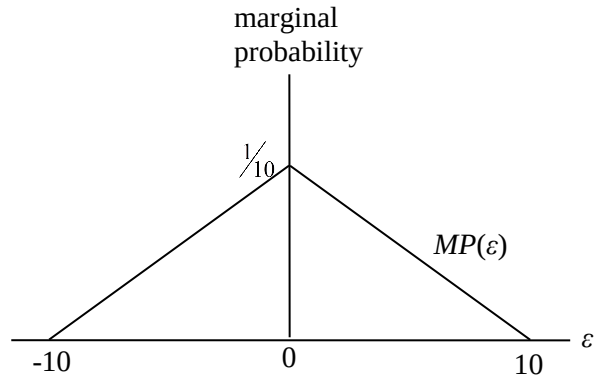
To better understand the mechanics underlying the tournament model, consider the following numerical example. Two workers compete for a prize worth 800. Their marginal effort cost functions are given by $MC(e) = 12e$. The supervisor does not observe effort perfectly, though, and the marginal probability of the noise variable is given by

$$MP(\varepsilon) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{100}\varepsilon & \varepsilon < 0 \\ & \text{if} \\ \frac{1}{10} - \frac{1}{100}\varepsilon & \varepsilon \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

This function is graphed in Figure 9.9. To make sure that it is a marginal probability function, compute the area under the curve in the figure. The area should be one. There are two triangles, each with a height of 1/10 and a base of 10. Using the formula for the area of a triangle, each triangle has area ½, and so the total area is 1, which is as it should be for a marginal probability function.

FIGURE 9.9

This figure shows the marginal probability function for the numerical example. The area under the curve is 1, which is consistent with probabilities summing to 1.



From equation (*) worker 1's marginal condition is

$$MP(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A = MC(e_1).$$

First look at the case in which $e_1 > e_2$ (so that $e_2 - e_1 < 0$). Substituting in the values of the marginal probability and marginal cost functions and the size of the prize, and then solving for e_1 as a function of e_2 yields part of worker 1's best-response function:

$$\begin{aligned}\left[\tfrac{1}{10} + \tfrac{1}{100}(e_2 - e_1)\right]\cdot 800 &= 12e_1\\ 80 + 8(e_2 - e_1) &= 12e_1\\ 80 + 8e_2 &= 20e_1\\ e_1 &= 4 + \frac{2e_2}{5}\end{aligned}$$

Now repeat the analysis for the case of $e_1 < e_2$ (so that $e_2 - e_1 > 0$):

$$\begin{aligned}\left[\tfrac{1}{10} - \tfrac{1}{100}(e_2 - e_1)\right]\cdot 800 &= 12e_1\\ 80 - 8(e_2 - e_1) &= 12e_1\\ 80 - 8e_2 &= 4e_1\\ e_1 &= 20 - 2e_2\end{aligned}$$

The best-response function is

$$R_1(e_2) = \begin{cases} 4 + \tfrac{2}{5} e_2 & \\ & \text{if} \\ 20 - 2e_2 & \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} e_2 < e_1 \\ \\ e_2 \geq e_1 \end{matrix}$$

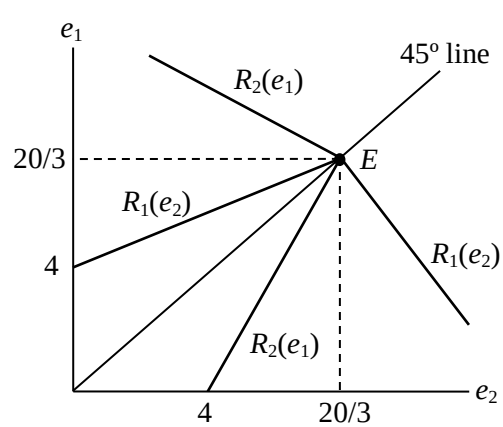
and it is graphed in Figure 9.10. Since the workers are identical, we can find worker 2's best-response curve in exactly the same way, and the equilibrium is where the two curves intersect, which is also where they cross the 45º line. We can find it algebraically by noticing that along the 45º line the two segments of the best-response curve meet, and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} 4 + \tfrac{2}{5} e_2 &= 20 - 2e_2 \\ \frac{12e_2}{5} &= 16 \\ e_2 &= \tfrac{20}{3} \end{aligned}$$

In the Nash equilibrium both workers exert effort equal to 20/3.

FIGURE 9.10

In the numerical example, the workers exert 4 units of effort if their opponents exert no effort. The best-response functions then slope upward until they cross the 45º line, and then turn backward. The Nash equilibrium is where the two best-response curves intersect, which is where both workers exert 20/3 units of effort.



5. GENERAL IMPLICATIONS FOR MOTIVATING WORKERS

The last three sections presented a general model of tournaments, not just promotion tournaments. In this section we turn specifically to promotion tournaments, and highlight some implications of the model for motivating workers using promotion tournaments.

PAY FOR PERFORMANCE?

As we learned in the last section, workers exert more effort when the prize is made larger. In a promotion tournament, the prize is the raise the worker gets when he is promoted. This gives rise to some strange notions of pay for performance.

The strangeness arises because the promotion tournament induces workers to exert a lot of effort before they are promoted, when their pay is low. After the tournament ends, one worker is promoted, and he is paid more. This means that salaries are set to provide incentives to the workers at the next level down, not the workers who are actually receiving that salary. So, a worker's current pay is unrelated to his current activities. When promotion tournaments are used to motivate workers, pay is not based on current performance, but on past performance, and workers are motivated by future pay, not by current pay.

PAY STRUCTURES IN HIERARCHIES

Many firms, as well as the federal and state governments and the military, have a hierarchy of positions. A worker can move up through the ranks by getting promoted to successively higher positions. What does the model say about how the salaries should rise as one moves up through the hierarchy?

In most hierarchies, salaries increase more rapidly the higher up one moves. This is also true of most sports tournaments, as illustrated in the box below. The pattern that getting promoted to the top position carries with it a much higher pay raise than getting promoted to the second-highest position is a sensible way to structure the pay schedule. The reason is that pay for a given rank motivates everyone below that rank. So, for example, workers in the second-highest position exert effort trying to win the promotion to the highest position so that they can get the biggest raise. And, workers in the third-highest position exert effort in an attempt to win a promotion to the second-highest position, thereby garnering the second-largest raise. But, there is an additional reward for getting promoted to the second-highest position – the right to compete for a promotion to the highest position. The size of this additional reward, known as the **option value** of the promotion, depends in part on the size of the reward for being promoted to the highest

position. In a similar way, the workers in the fourth-highest position exert effort to win a promotion to the third-highest position. The winner gets a raise, plus the option value of being in the third-highest position and being able to compete for the second-highest position, plus the possibility of eventually making it to the highest position. In general, the option value of a promotion is the expected benefit of all further promotions.

The existence of the option value means that the raise that comes with the highest promotion should be the largest of all the raises. The possibility of a promotion to the highest position motivates all workers, while promotions to lower levels only motivate workers who have not yet reached that level. Since the pay raise that accompanies a promotion to the highest level motivates everyone, it should be large for the firm to get the most bang for its buck.

THE PRIZE STRUCTURE IN GOLF TOURNAMENTS

The PGA Championship is one of the four major worldwide golf tournaments. In 2004, prize money for the tournament totaled $6.25 million. The winner received $1.125 million, or 18% of the total. This is typical of golf tournaments. The gap between first and second was $450,000, so the second-place winner got only 60% of the amount the winner got. This, too, is typical. The third-place winner earned $425,000, which is 63% of the second-place winner's prize of $675,000. As one moves down the ranks, the prizes become increasingly larger shares of the next-highest prize with the 6th-place winner receiving 90% of the 5th-place winner's prize, and the 55th-place winner receiving 99% of the 54th-place winner's prize.

THE PETER PRINCIPLE

The **Peter Principle**, first introduced by the sociologist Laurence J. Peter, states that in every hierarchy, each employee tends to rise to his own level of incompetence.[1] The Peter Principle sounds pessimistic, but it is a necessary byproduct of using a promotion tournament. As long as workers do their jobs well, they continue to be promoted to the next level of the hierarchy. If they reach a level where they cannot perform well, they do not get promoted anymore. So, workers stop when they reach a level at which they are incompetent – the Peter Principle.

Just as with Murphy's Law (anything that can go wrong will go wrong), the Peter Principle has led to a number of related statements. The book *The Official Rules* lists two corollaries to the Peter Principle.[2] The first states, "Every post tends to be filled by an

[1] Peter, L.J. and P. Hull, *The Peter Principle*, William Morrow & Co., 1969.

[2] Dickson, P., *The Official Rules*, Dell Publishing, 1978.

employee incompetent to execute its duties." The promotion tournament model suggests that this is not strictly true. Some of the workers in a particular job at any given time will be good at the job. But, some will also be bad. The good ones get promoted to the next level, while the bad ones remain for the rest of their careers. So, every job slowly accumulates workers who are incompetent at that job, but were competent at the prior job.

The second corollary states, "Work is accomplished by those employees who have not yet reached their level of incompetence." Employees who have reached their level of incompetence are, well, incompetent, so they are not terribly productive. But, they could still do some work if they were properly motivated. The problem, according to the promotion tournament model, is that they are no longer motivated by the promotion tournament. Competent workers always win the promotion tournament, so an incompetent worker's marginal expected benefit from effort is zero. To equate marginal expected benefit and marginal expected cost, he will exert no effort. So, there are two reasons why workers who have reached their level of incompetence do no work: incompetence and lack of motivation. These mean that any work that is done is accomplished by employees who still have a chance to advance in the hierarchy.

The final Peter Principle-like statement we mention here comes from Charles Vail, a former vice president of Southern Methodist University. He said, "In any human enterprise, work seeks the lowest hierarchical level." This could be because bosses delegate tasks to their underlings. It could also be that workers at the lowest level have the most motivation from a promotion tournament.

PROMOTIONS FROM WITHIN VS. HIRING FROM OUTSIDE

Sometimes firms promote workers from within, and sometimes they hire workers from outside the company. For example, in 2001 American Express promoted Kenneth Chenault to CEO. He had previously worked at American Express for 20 years. In contrast, in 2001 Home Depot named Robert Nardelli to the CEO post. He was new to Home Depot, having worked for General Electric for 30 years.

Hiring from outside has obvious advantages. By expanding the pool from which workers are chosen, a better candidate can be found. But, hiring from outside has serious negative implications for the firm's promotion tournament. Hiring the top executive from outside removes the motivation for the next lower level of executives because it lowers their marginal expected benefit of effort. If the firm has passed one of them over for an outsider once, it is likely to do so again, and the marginal probability of a promotion is low, no matter how hard the executive tries. Since working hard is unlikely to have much positive impact on future promotion chances, the second-tier executives are unmotivated.

Because of option values, this effect bleeds down to lower levels in the hierarchy as well. Executives lower down in the firm see that the top prize is most likely

unattainable, and, since the marginal probability of eventually reaching the top level is diminished, the marginal expected benefit from effort is also diminished. Consequently, an outside hire must add a great deal of expertise to the company to make it worthwhile to bear the costs of diminishing the incentive effects of the promotion tournament. Airline companies and most Japanese firms have systematically promoted workers from within and have avoided hiring highly-placed workers from outside, enabling the promotion system to more effectively motivate employees. Whenever an airline hires a pilot, for example, it starts that pilot on the least desirable routes, and the pilot must work his way up through the system in order to obtain better routes and more favorable schedules.

6. TOURNAMENTS WHEN ONE WORKER HAS AN ADVANTAGE

In the analysis we have done so far, neither worker had an advantage over the other. They both had the same effort cost, so neither worker could produce output more easily than the other. Also, the supervisor was fair, so neither worker was the favorite. Neither of these is a terribly realistic assumption, since supervisors often have favorites whom they are more likely to promote, and workers often have different abilities. In this section we look at how we can model favoritism and ability differences and determine their effects on the equilibrium of the tournament model.

ABILITY DIFFERENCES

The way to capture ability differences within the model is to assume that the high-ability worker has lower effort costs than the low-ability worker. This is what we did in Chapter 7 to analyze piece rate compensation schemes when workers have different abilities. The low-effort-cost worker can produce the same amount of output at lower cost than the high-effort-cost worker can, which leads the low-effort-cost worker to produce more than the high-effort cost worker when they face the same incentives.

Assume that worker 1 has lower effort costs than worker 2. Let C_1 denote worker 1's cost function and let C_2 denote worker 2's cost function. We assume that $C_1(e) < C_2(e)$, so that worker 1's cost of exerting e units of effort is lower than 2's, and also that $MC_1(e) < MC_2(e)$, so that it costs worker 1 less to exert one more unit of effort than it does worker 2. We also assume each worker knows the other's effort cost function.

To find the impact of worker 1 having lower cost than worker 2, fix the amount of effort exerted by worker 2 and look at worker 1's marginal condition:

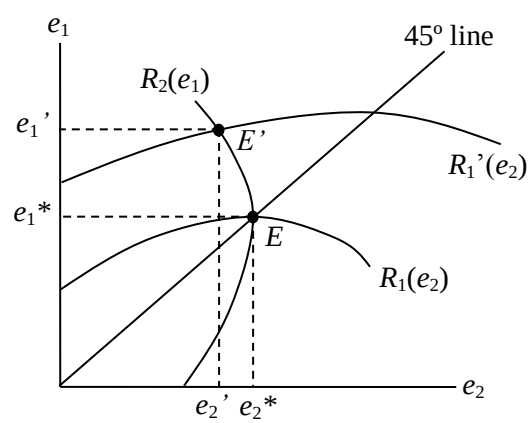
$$MP(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A = MC_1(e_1).$$

When worker 1's costs fall, the right-hand side of the marginal condition falls and now marginal expected benefit is higher than marginal cost. When the marginal expected benefit of an activity exceeds its marginal cost, it is worthwhile to engage in more of that activity, so worker 1 increases his effort.

Figure 9.11 shows what happens to the best-response curves. A decrease in effort costs shifts worker 1's best-response curve upward, since he exerts more effort for every level of effort exerted by worker 2. The point *E* is the equilibrium when the two workers have the same effort costs, and point *E'* is the equilibrium when worker 1's effort costs fall. The new equilibrium is above the 45º line, so worker 1 exerts more effort than worker 2. In fact, worker 1 exerts more effort when his cost is low than when his cost is high, and worker 2 exerts *less* effort when 1's cost is low than when 1's cost is high. Since the supervisor is more likely to reward the worker that exerts more effort, the higher-ability worker, in this case worker 1, is more likely to be promoted than the lower-ability worker.

FIGURE 9.11

When worker 1's effort costs fall, his best-response curve shifts upward from $R_1(e_2)$ to $R_1'(e_2)$. Then new equilibrium is *E'*, which gets more effort from worker 1 and less effort from worker 2. Since worker 1 exerts more effort than worker 2, he is more likely to be promoted than worker 2.



FAVORITISM

Favoritism occurs when the supervisor selects one worker over the other even though all evidence suggests that the other worker should have been selected. This can be captured in the model by changing the way the marginal probability curve looks. The original marginal probability curve was symmetric about the vertical axis, which meant that the supervisor was fair. Let's see what we have to do to it so that the supervisor favors worker 1. Worker 1 wins the prize if $e_1 - e_2 + \tilde{\varepsilon} > 0$. Worker 1 is more likely to

win if $\tilde{\varepsilon}$ is likely to be larger, which would occur if the marginal probability curve shifted to the right, as in Figure 9.12.

To determine how worker 1 reacts to the favoritism, look at his marginal condition:

$$MP_1(e_2 - e_1)\cdot A = MC(e_1).$$

If $e_2 - e_1 < \varepsilon_0$, his marginal probability of winning falls as a result of favoritism, and if $e_2 - e_1 > \varepsilon_0$, his marginal probability rises. An increase in the marginal probability of winning makes his marginal expected benefit exceed his marginal cost, and he exerts more effort. On the other hand, a drop in the marginal probability of winning leads him to exert less effort.

The new best-response curve is drawn in Figure 9.13. To get it, first draw the line corresponding to the equation $e_1 = e_2 - \varepsilon_0$. At every point on this line, $e_2 - e_1 = \varepsilon_0$, and by Figure 9.10, the marginal probability is unchanged when $e_2 - e_1 = \varepsilon_0$. Since the 45º line graphs the equation $e_1 = e_2$, the new line is parallel to and slightly below the 45º line. Above the new line $e_2 - e_1 < \varepsilon_0$, so worker 1 exerts less effort. Below the new line $e_2 - e_1 > \varepsilon_0$ and worker 1 exerts more effort. The new best-response curve is below the old one for low levels of e_2 and above it for high levels of e_2.

FIGURE 9.12

When the supervisor is biased in favor of player 1, the marginal probability of player 1 winning shifts to the right. Since a high value of ε is good for player 1, the new marginal probability curve, $MP_1(\varepsilon)$, makes higher values of ε more likely.

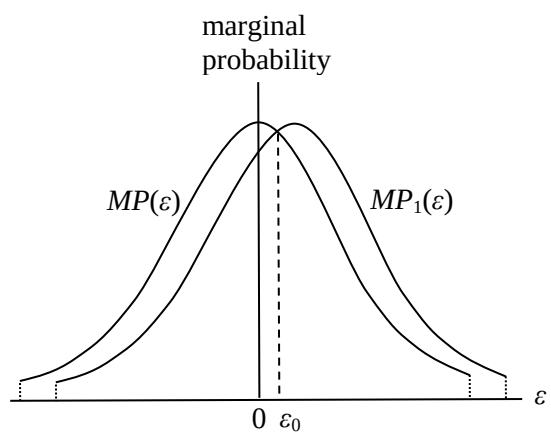
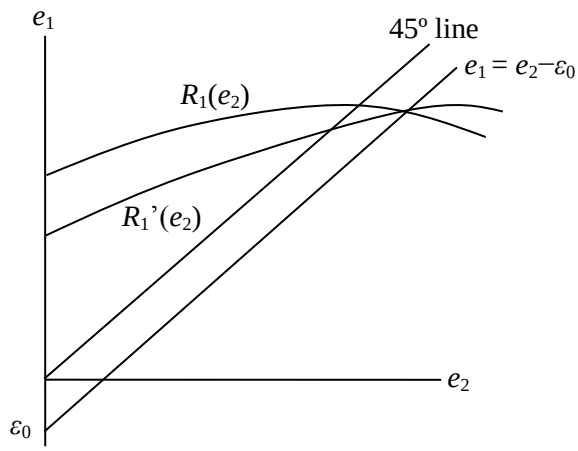


FIGURE 9.13

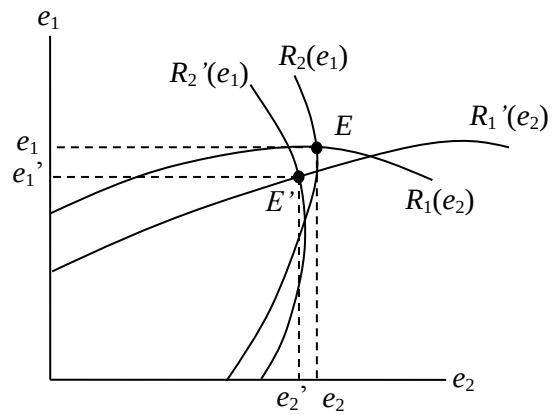
When the supervisor favors worker 1, his best-response curve shifts so that he works less for low levels of e_2 and works more for high levels of e_2.



The opposite pattern occurs for worker 2. When the supervisor favors worker 1, she acts against worker 2, and so worker 2's marginal probabilities move in the opposite direction of worker 1's. Consequently, worker 2's best-response curve shifts outward for low levels of e_1 and inward for high values of e_1. Figure 9.14 shows the new equilibrium. In the new equilibrium in which the supervisor favors worker 1, both workers end up exerting less effort. Favoritism is costly for the firm since it gets less effort from both workers with the same prize money.

FIGURE 9.14

When the supervisor is fair, the equilibrium is *E*. When she favors worker 1, worker 1's best-response curve shifts so that it is lower for low levels of e_2 and higher for high levels of e_2. Worker 2's best-response curve shifts the opposite way, so that it is higher for low levels of e_1 and lower for high levels of e_1. The new equilibrium is *E'*, and both workers exert less effort.



The results of this analysis make some sense. If the supervisor favors worker 1, he no longer needs to work as hard to win the prize. Since the deck is stacked against worker 2, he has to work harder to win the prize, but his incentives are diluted somewhat since he is less likely to win. Consequently, he reduces his effort as well.

7. INFLUENCE ACTIVITIES

Promotion tournaments are designed to encourage workers to undertake productive activities that have value for the firm. The worker's reward for engaging in these activities is an increased chance of getting promoted and getting a raise. One problem with promotion tournaments is that they give workers the incentive to undertake *any* activity that improves their chances of getting promoted, whether the activity is valuable for the firm or not. So, for example, a worker trying to get promoted not only has an incentive to work harder, which makes him look better, but he has an incentive to make his competitors look bad. He also has an incentive to take actions that benefit the supervisor making the promotion decision, whether these actions benefit the firm or not.

Influence activities are activities that improve a worker's probability of promotion without adding to the profitability of the firm. More familiar names for the same concept are corporate politics, industrial politics, and organizational politics. Influence activities can take many forms, but, by definition, they are all harmful to the organization since, at the very least, they take time away from productive tasks.

The promotion tournament model can be easily adapted to explain why workers engage in influence activities. Suppose that a worker can either exert costly effort, *e*, or engage in an influence activity, *a*, which is also costly. Both activities increase the worker's probability of promotion. We have already seen that the worker should exert effort until the marginal expected benefit of doing so equals the marginal cost. The same goes for influence activities: the worker should engage in influence activities until the marginal expected benefit of doing so equals the marginal cost. So, unless the worker is in an organization in which influence activities are completely ignored in the promotion decision, influence activities are a fact of life. And, given the number of different forms that influence activities can take, at least some of them are likely to matter in the promotion decision. A few of the many forms that influence activities can take are listed below.

SUCKING UP

Workers have long recognized that one way to get ahead is to ingratiate themselves to the decision-makers who control the promotion, otherwise known as sucking up to the boss. This could entail simple things such as laughing at the boss's jokes or expensive things like taking her to lunch. Everyone has their own stories of (usually others) sucking up to get what they want. For example, Andrew DuBrin's popular-press book *Winning Office Politics* tells of an investment banker whose co-workers "would sit on the edge of their chairs and nod with approval at almost anything a principal said" in order to get on their bosses' good sides. They would also "compete with each other to see who could stay latest at the office. Of course they would all exit quickly as soon as the last partner left the office."[3] These activities are not without costs. Their spouses or partners would complain that they were poor companions because they always missed dates. But, to the extent that these activities help the workers get promoted, they are worthwhile, at least to the worker.

BACKSTABBING

A more problematic influence activity is backstabbing, in which workers undertake activities that make their co-workers look bad. Backstabbing can take many forms, from making sure that supervisors know of a co-worker's failures, to undermining a co-worker's relationships with a client, thereby making a deal fall through. This latter example increases the backstabber's probability of a promotion, but it is bad for the firm because it hurts productivity. Yet, it is in the best interest of the backstabber, so it will occur.

[3]DuBrin, A., *Winning Office Politics: DuBrin's Guide for the 90s*, Prentice-Hall, p. 3.

WITHHOLDING INFORMATION

Firms rely on information to make decisions. Occasionally workers learn information that makes them look bad, but is valuable to the firm because it would help others avoid the same problem. Workers in promotion tournaments have disincentives to provide this type of information, because even though it is valuable to the firm, it could hurt their chances of getting a promotion and a raise if it benefited their opponents more.

Similarly, on occasion workers are in a unique position to pass on information that would make a co-worker look good or information that would enable his co-workers to increase their productivity. The worker has a disincentive to pass on such information because doing so could only hurt his chances of promotion.

MISREPRESENTING INFORMATION

Employees can misrepresent information in a number of ways. For example, they can say that they have completed tasks when they really have not, or they can embellish reports to make themselves look better, perhaps by minimizing their own contributions and emphasizing factors beyond their control when a project ends in failure. Accurate information is valuable to the firm, because without accurate information the firm cannot decide correctly which projects to continue and which to terminate.

In all of these cases the influence activities are costly to the firm. They have a number of costs. (1) Employees waste time pursuing influence activities, time that could have been spent exerting productive effort. (2) Backstabbing could lead to reductions in productivity as workers undermine other employees' projects. (3) Information that is important for the firm's decisions is withheld or misrepresented. (4) The wrong worker is promoted. (5) When promotions are related to influence activities, rather than productive effort, the workers' marginal expected benefit of productive effort is reduced, and workers do not work as hard in areas that are profitable to the firm.

PROBLEMS

Consider a tournament with two workers who both have the same marginal cost function:

$$MC(e) = 8e.$$

The award for winner is 100, and the marginal probability function for the noise variable is given by:

$$MP(\varepsilon) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{25}\varepsilon & \varepsilon < 0 \\ & \text{if} \\ \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{25}\varepsilon & \varepsilon \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

1. Graph the marginal probability function.

2. Verify that the area under the function is 1.

3. Write down worker 1's marginal condition when $e_1 > e_2$.

4. Solve the marginal condition in problem 3 for e_1 to get part of worker 1's reaction function, $R_1(e_2)$.

5. Write down worker 1's marginal condition when $e_1 < e_2$.

6. Solve the marginal condition in problem 5 for e_1 to get the rest of worker 1's reaction function, $R_1(e_2)$.

7. Graph the reaction function.

8. Find the equilibrium effort level for the two workers.

CHAPTER 10
EFFICIENCY WAGES

So far we have considered two ways of motivating workers to perform. The first was to tie current pay directly to current performance, through either piece rate compensation schemes or commission schemes. In both of these the worker exerts extra effort in order to earn extra pay. The second was to tie future pay to current performance through promotion tournaments. In that setting workers exert extra effort in order to receive a promotion, and with it an increase in pay. In this chapter we explore a completely different method of motivating workers. Can a firm, simply by paying a high salary or hourly rate, motivate workers to exert extra effort?

In light of Chapters 4 and 5, the answer should be no. According to those chapters, if a worker is paid a flat rate per unit of time, he should exert zero effort. Even so, one may question this particular result from Chapters 4 and 5 because even if he is paid a flat rate, a worker will still work enough not to get fired. Working so as to not get fired is the whole idea behind this chapter. Basically, if a firm sets its pay high, workers will exert extra effort so that they can keep their jobs and continue to earn the high pay.

The U.S. Bureau of Engraving and Printing, which is responsible for printing all of the currency in the U.S., uses an idea like this to keep their employees from stealing. According to their claims, the reason their employees do not steal is because they are paid much more than they could make elsewhere, so they refrain from stealing so that they do not risk their high-paying jobs. This claim has some merit. It may be possible for an employee to steal a small amount of currency, but probably not a large amount. The payoffs from doing this would be temporary and relatively small, though, and hardly worth jeopardizing future pay (along with the punishment that comes with getting caught and convicted).

The approach we will take in this chapter is a bit different from the approach in previous chapters. We start with an idea, that workers exert extra effort when firms pay them above-normal wages, and try to find a model in which this behavior occurs. By finding the model, we isolate the conditions that must be in place for this combination of high pay and high effort, and we can then use these findings to discuss real-world situations.

1. A MODEL OF EFFICIENCY WAGES

Before we can construct a model of efficiency wages, it is important to make precise exactly what we mean by efficiency wages. The term does not refer to a specific level of pay; instead, it refers to a compensation scheme, or a way of compensating workers. This entails specifying both what the firm pays the workers and what the workers do for their money. We say that a firm and a worker participate in an **efficiency wage scheme** if the firm pays the worker an above-normal wage and the worker exerts extra effort.

To make the model as simple as possible, consider Game 10.1 in which the worker and the firm each have two choices. The worker can choose to exert either the normal effort level or extra effort, and the firm can pay either the normal wage or a high wage, and they make their choices simultaneously without knowing what the other one will choose. The firm and the worker participate in an efficiency wage scheme if they choose the strategies corresponding to the upper left cell, that is, if the worker chooses extra effort and the firm chooses high wage. The task is to find a game in which the upper left cell is an equilibrium.

GAME 10.1

		Firm	
		High wage	Normal wage
Worker	Extra effort	20, 20	13, 24
	Normal effort	24, 13	15, 15

The payoffs are important. If the firm pays a normal wage and the worker exerts normal effort, both parties receive net benefits of 15 from the employment relationship. The idea is that by exerting normal effort, the worker generates surplus for the worker and the firm to share. To make the analysis simpler, we assume that the two share this surplus equally. If the firm pays the high wage and the worker exerts extra effort, the amount of surplus available for sharing increases, and they both get payoffs of 20. If, however, the firm only pays the normal wage when the worker exerts extra effort, the firm gets additional profit, for a total of 24, while the worker is hurt and gets a payoff of only 13. By paying the normal wage when the worker exerts extra effort, the firm keeps

more of the surplus for itself. Similarly, when the firm pays the high wage but the worker exerts only normal effort, the worker gets additional surplus at the expense of the firm.

The central question is, does an equilibrium exist in which the firm pays the high wage and the worker exerts extra effort? This would be an efficiency wage scheme. The answer is no, and the analysis can be found in Table 10.1 which uses Chapter 8's technique for finding Nash equilibria. If the worker exerts extra effort, the firm's best response is to pay the normal wage since that generates profit of 24 while paying the high wage generates profit of only 15. High effort and the high wage are not mutual best responses, so the efficiency wage scheme is not a Nash equilibrium. However, if the worker exerts normal effort the firm's best response is to pay the normal wage, and the worker's best response to that is to exert normal effort. The only Nash equilibrium is the one in which the worker exerts normal effort and the firm pays the normal wage.

TABLE 10.1

Best Responses for Game 10.1

Strategy played by the worker	The firm's best response	The worker's best response
Extra effort	Normal wage	Normal effort
Normal effort	Normal wage	Normal effort

In order to get efficiency wages, it is necessary to change something about this game. One candidate for change is the payoffs, but that would lack realism, because it would require, for example, that the firm would earn more from paying the high wage when the worker exerts extra effort than it would from paying the normal wage when the worker exerts extra effort. Since the wage is just a payment from the firm to the worker, paying more cannot make the firm better off unless the worker changes his behavior at the same time. So, we need to change the game in other ways.

Before doing so, it is worth examining whether or not Game 10.1 accurately describes what happens in the work environment. In particular, is the game really simultaneous? In a simultaneous game the players need take their actions at exactly the same instant in time; rather, the key to a simultaneous game is that neither player knows what action his opponent will choose at the time he makes his own choice. There are certainly circumstances under which the firm must pay the employee without knowing what the employee has done during the pay period, either because the firm's bureaucracy requires that pay requests go in early in month or because the firm cannot measure the employee's output until after the employee has been paid. Many employees are paid at the end of a pay period for work that has already been done, so that the employee cannot know for certain how much the firm will pay. More importantly, though, the

simultaneity assumption is merely a convenience here, and the same results hold if one of the players moves first and the other moves second.

For example, suppose that the worker moves first, deciding whether to exert normal or extra effort. The firm then observes how much effort the worker exerted and decides whether to pay him a normal wage or a high wage. In this case the high pay can be considered normal pay plus a bonus. To find the equilibrium of this sequential game, start at the end and work back toward the beginning. When it is time for the firm to make a decision, the firm will choose normal pay, and therefore no bonus, no matter how much effort the worker exerted because the firm's payoff is higher when it chooses normal pay. Since the worker knows that the firm will choose normal pay in equilibrium, the worker will choose normal effort. So, even when moves are sequential instead of simultaneous there is no equilibrium in which the firm pays efficiency wages.

REPETITION

To come up with a way to modify the game, think back to the example of the workers at the Bureau of Engraving and Printing. The reason that they do not steal a small amount of currency today is so that they can come back to work tomorrow and continue earning a high wage. The game analyzed above had no "tomorrow," so there was no reason to exert extra effort today in the hopes of something good tomorrow. So, let's add some "tomorrows." More specifically, change the game so that Game 10.1 is repeated T times, where T is some finite number larger than one.

Repeating the game makes it a sequential game and, as discussed in Chapter 8, the appropriate way to analyze a sequential game is to start at the end and work back to the beginning, the process known as backward induction. In this case the end is the last period, in which the worker and the firm make their decisions simultaneously for the last time.

Suppose that Game 10.1 is repeated twice, so that $T = 2$. What choices will the worker and the firm make in period 2? The game in the last period is just like the one-shot game analyzed above, because there is no future after period 2. The worker's optimal choice is to exert normal effort no matter what the firm does, and the firm's optimal choice is to pay the normal wage no matter what the worker does. So, in period 2, both players earn 15.

Now go back to period 1. Both players determine that they will earn 15 in period 2, no matter what happens in period 1. Combining the period 2 payoffs with the possible period 1 payoffs yields Game 10.2. Every payoff in Game 10.2 is obtained from adding 15 to the corresponding payoff in Game 10.1. The labels for the players' actions also change, because now they specify what the player will do in period 1 *and* what he will do in period 2. By first figuring out what will happen in period 2, we can collapse the entire 2-period game down to one simultaneous-move game, the one depicted in Game 10.2.

GAME 10.2

		Firm	
		High wage now, normal wage in period 2	Normal wage now, normal wage in period 2
Worker	Extra effort now, normal effort in period 2	35, 35	28, 39
	Normal effort now, normal effort in period 2	39, 28	30, 30

What is the equilibrium of Game 10.2? Look at Table 10.2, where the notation "extra, normal" means that the worker exerts extra effort in the first period and normal effort in period 2. The only row where the first and third columns match is the bottom one, and therefore the only equilibrium is for the worker to exert normal effort in both periods and the firm to pay the normal wage in both periods. We cannot obtain an efficiency wage scheme by repeating the original game twice.

TABLE 10.2

Best Responses for Game 10.2

Strategy played by the worker	The firm's best response	The worker's best response
Extra, normal	Normal, normal	Normal, normal
Normal, normal	Normal, normal	Normal, normal

Repeating the game a third time does not help. In the third period the worker exerts normal effort and the firm pays the normal wage for exactly the same reason they did at the end of the two-period game. The game played in the second period of the three-period game is the same as the one shown in Game 10.2, except with "period 2" changed to "period 3" in the descriptions of the actions, and for the same reasons as given above, the worker exerts normal effort in period 2 and the firm pays the normal wage in period 2. Since both players earn 15 in period 2 and 15 in period 3, the entire three-

period game can be collapsed to a simultaneous-move game, Game 10.3, which is obtained from Game 10.1 by adding 30 to each payoff and re-labeling the actions appropriately.

GAME 10.3

		Firm	
		High wage now, normal wage in remainder	Normal wage now, normal wage in remainder
Worker	Extra effort now, normal effort in remainder	50, 50	43, 54
	Normal effort now, normal effort in remainder	54, 43	45, 45

Once again, the only equilibrium of the game has the worker exerting normal effort every period and the firm paying the normal wage every period. As you can probably guess, this is true for any finite number of repetitions. The worker exerts normal effort and the firm pays the normal wage in the last period, they do the same things in the next-to-last period, they do the same things in the period before that, and so on all the way back to the beginning of the game. It is impossible to obtain an efficiency wage scheme by repeating Game 10.1 a finite number of times. Just having a future is not enough.

HARSH PUNISHMENT

An alternative idea that comes from thinking about what happens at the Bureau of Engraving and Printing is that the workers behave themselves so that they do not get fired. What happens if we change the original game so that the firm can fire the workers? Will this be enough to obtain an efficiency wage scheme? Firing a worker can be considered harsh punishment for bad behavior. It is certainly much harsher than just reducing his pay to the normal wage. Maybe the possibility of harsh punishment is enough to induce the worker to exert extra effort. But, in the equilibrium of the original

game the firm did not pay the high wage, either, so we should also provide a means for the worker to punish the firm harshly.

Game 10.4 differs from Game 10.1 by adding one more choice for each player. The firm can fire the worker. If it does so, the worker generates no profit for the firm, so the firm's payoff is zero. If the worker is fired unexpectedly, though, he does not have time to find alternative employment, and his payoff is −5. The worker can also quit. If he does so, he exerts no effort but gets no pay, so his payoff is zero. The firm, though, is caught unawares, and its payoff is −5. If the worker quits and the firm fires him at the same time, both parties get payoffs of zero.

GAME 10.4

		Firm		
		High wage	Normal wage	Fire
Worker	Extra effort	20, 20	13, 24	−5, 0
	Normal effort	24, 13	15, 15	−5, 0
	Quit	0, −5	0, −5	0, 0

This game has two equilibria that satisfy the mutual best response criterion of Chapter 8, as can be seen in Table 10.3. If the worker exerts normal effort, the firm's best response is to pay the normal wage, since 15 is the firm's highest payoff in the middle row. If the firm pays the normal wage, the worker's best response is to exert normal effort, since 15 is the highest payoff for the worker in the middle column. So, in one equilibrium the worker exerts normal effort and the firm pays the normal wage. The second equilibrium is where the worker quits and the firm fires him at the same time. If the worker quits, the firm can either earn 0 or −5, and so firing is the best response. If the firm fires the worker, the worker's best response is to quit.

TABLE 10.3
Best Responses for Game 10.4

Strategy played by the worker	The firm's best response	The worker's best response
Extra effort	Normal wage	Normal effort
Normal effort	Normal wage	Normal effort
Quit	Fire	Quit

Neither of these equilibria generate an efficiency wage scheme. If the worker exerts extra effort, the firm's best response is to pay the normal wage. Likewise, if the firm pays the high wage, the worker's best response is to exert normal effort. The addition of a harsh punishment option, by itself, is not enough to generate efficiency wages.

REPETITION AND HARSH PUNISHMENT TOGETHER

At the Bureau of Engraving and Printing, workers refrain from walking off with small amounts of currency because they are worried about getting fired, which keeps them from earning high pay in the future. It seems that harsh punishment and repetition work together to keep them from stealing. We can capture both effects by repeating Game 10.4.

To keep things as simple as possible, let's keep the future short and only repeat Game 10.4 twice. This is the minimum number of periods for which we have a future. To find an equilibrium of the two-period game we must specify strategies for the two players and determine whether or not they have the mutual best response property. Remember, though, that in sequential games strategies are *complete contingent plans*, as discussed in Chapter 8. Think about a strategy this way. Suppose that you are one of the players in the two-period game, but you cannot be there to make your moves. Instead, you must write down directions for a friend who is going to make the moves on your behalf. The directions would have to tell your friend what to do in every possible contingency, so that he could always do exactly what you want him to do. This set of directions would be a strategy.

Consider the following strategy for the worker: He exerts extra effort in the first period. His choice in the second period depends on what happened in the first period. If he exerted extra effort in the first period, *and* if the firm paid the high wage in the first period, the worker exerts normal effort in the second period. If either he failed to exert extra effort in the first period or the firm failed to pay the high wage, he quits in the second period.

We need a strategy for the firm, too. The firm pays the high wage in the first period. If it paid the high wage in the first period and if the worker exerted extra effort in the first period, the firm pays the normal wage in the second period; otherwise it fires the worker in the second period.

These strategies are summarized in Table 10.4. Note that the description of the strategies changes a bit in the table. In the first period, the worker is supposed to exert extra effort and the firm is supposed to pay the high wage. If both of these happen, then both of them follow the designated strategy in the first period, and there are *no defections* in the first period. If one or both of them fails to follow the designated strategies in the first period, though, one or both of them defects in the first period. There are two possible contingencies, then, for which the second-period strategies must specify an action: the contingency in which there were no defections in the first period and the contingency in which there was a defection in the first period. If there were no defections in the prior period, the worker is supposed to exert normal effort and the firm is supposed to pay the normal wage. If there was a prior defection, the worker is supposed to quit and the firm is supposed to fire the worker.

TABLE 10.4

Strategies for two-period version of Game 10.4

Period/Contingency	*Worker*	*Firm*
Period 1	Extra effort	High wage
Period 2		
No prior defections	Normal effort	Normal wage
Prior defections	Quit	Fire

We need to check to see if these are equilibrium strategies, that is, we need to see if they have the mutual best response property using the process of backward induction. Begin in period 2, which is the last period. If there were no prior defections, the worker is supposed to exert normal effort and the firm is supposed to pay the normal wage. Looking at Game 10.4, we see that these are best responses to each other. If there were prior defections, the worker is supposed to quit and the firm is supposed to fire the worker. Again from Game 10.4 these are best responses to each other. In fact, these are the two equilibria we found in the one-shot version of the game. The strategies are mutual best responses in period 2.

Now consider period 1. The worker is supposed to exert extra effort. Assuming that the firm follows the designated strategy, if the worker exerts extra effort in period 1

he earns 20 in period 1, and since there would be no defections in period 1, he goes on to earn an additional 15 in period 2, for a total of 35. On the other hand, if he exerts normal effort in period 1, still assuming that the firm follows the designated strategy and pays the high wage in period 1, the worker earns 24 in that period. But, since this constitutes a defection, he earns zero in period 2, for a total of 24. So, the worker can either exert extra effort and earn a total of 35 over the two periods, or he can exert normal effort and earn a total of 24 over the two periods. Obviously, it is better to exert extra effort and earn 35.

The firm's situation in period 1 is almost exactly the same. Assuming that the worker follows the designated strategy, the firm can pay the high wage in period 1 and earn 20 in that period and another 15 in period 2, or it can pay the normal wage in period 1 and earn 24 in that period but nothing in period 2. Paying the high wage yields the higher total payoff, so the firm pays the high wage in period 1. We have now established that the designated strategies are best responses to each other, and they constitute an equilibrium of the two-period game.

Look what happens in the first period. The worker exerts extra effort and the firm pays the high wage. This is an efficiency wage scheme. Why do they do this? Let's consider the reasoning for the worker, and the reasoning for the firm is essentially the same. The worker exerts extra effort in the first period because doing so generates higher payoffs in the future period than exerting normal effort does. If he exerts extra effort in the first period, he can continue to get the normal pay in the second period. If, instead, he exerts normal effort in the first period, he gets fired and gets no payoff in the last period. The existence of a future plays an important role, because the incentive for working hard now is continued pay in the future. Harsh punishment pays an important role, too, because the threat of being fired and earning nothing in the future is what keeps him from defecting and exerting normal effort in the first period.

One might wonder why the strategies did not specify extra effort and high pay for the second period if there were no prior defections. The reason is that these are not best responses to each other. If the firm is going to pay the high wage in the last period, the worker's best response is to exert normal effort. Likewise, if the worker is going to exert extra effort in the last period, the firm's best response is to pay the normal wage. Since these are not mutual best responses, we cannot have an equilibrium with extra effort and high pay in the last period. Efficiency wage schemes break down at the end of the game.

2. GENERAL LESSONS

The lessons from the preceding section are simple and require little elaboration. Efficiency wage schemes entail the firm paying a higher-than-normal wage and the worker exerting higher-than-normal effort, and it is possible for such schemes to arise in equilibrium. Two crucial factors must be in place for efficiency wage schemes to occur,

though. First, there must be a future, so that defections from the efficiency wage scheme can be punished. Second, the punishment must be harsh, so that it deters defections from the efficiency wage scheme. As we saw, threatening a worker with a reduction in pay from the high wage to the normal wage was not enough to induce the efficiency wage scheme in the repeated version of the original game. Harsh punishment was needed to keep the worker exerting normal effort and the firm from paying the normal wage in the beginning of the game.

Efficiency wage schemes can be thought of as a carrot-and-stick method of motivation. High future wages act as the "carrot" the firm uses to reward extra effort, while firing is the "stick" used to punish reductions in effort. At the same time, the worker uses the possibility of extra future effort as the carrot that rewards the firm for paying the high wage, while quitting is the stick used to punish the firm for wage reductions. So, our ability to construct a model in which efficiency wage schemes arise means that, in general, systems of future rewards and punishments can be used to motivate extra effort.

3. RESTRICTIONS ON THE FIRM'S BEHAVIOR

The firm's equilibrium strategy summarized in Table 10.4 allows for efficiency wage schemes, but it requires the firm to take some actions that may be difficult or illegal, depending on the industry and the laws under which the firm operates. In particular, according to its strategy the firm is supposed to fire the worker if the worker fails to exert high effort in the first period, but in many cases it is difficult to fire an employee. For an immediate example, your professor may have tenure, which makes it difficult to fire him. It is also difficult to fire state employees who have been in the same job for a sufficiently long time. In addition, the strategy requires the firm to reduce the worker's pay from the high wage in period 1 to the normal wage in period 2. There may be laws or other rules stating that the firm cannot reduce a worker's pay unless the worker agrees to the reduction, as when the airlines negotiate for salary reductions with unionized employees. How do these restrictions in wage reductions and firing affect the ability of a firm to use an efficiency wage scheme to motivate its employees?

RESTRICTIONS ON WAGE REDUCTIONS

Suppose that the firm is unable to reduce a worker's wage. This means that once the firm has paid the high wage in period 1 it is no longer able to pay the normal wage in period 2, as the strategy in Table 10.4 requires. This creates two possibilities for a firm that has already paid the high wage: either it can pay the high wage in period 2, or it can fire the worker in period 2. Do either of these allow for an efficiency wage scheme?

First suppose that the firm adopts a strategy in which it pays the high wage in period 2, as shown in Table 10.5. The worker, who faces no restriction on reducing his

effort, still exerts the normal level of effort in period 2. We must check to see if these strategies are mutual best responses according to backward induction. For the usual reasons, the worker quitting and the firm firing the worker in the same period is an equilibrium, so we need not check the contingency in which there were prior defections. Accordingly, suppose that there were no defections in period 1. If the firm pays the high wage in period 2, the worker's optimal response is to exert normal effort, because 24 is the highest payoff the worker can get in period 2. If the worker exerts normal effort in period 2, the firm can either pay the high wage or fire the worker, since paying the normal wage is against the law. From Game 10.4, paying the high wage yields the firm a profit of 13, while firing the worker yields a profit of zero, so paying the high wage is a best response. The two second-period strategies are mutual best responses, and compatible with an equilibrium.

TABLE 10.5

Strategies when the firm cannot reduce wages in period 2

Period/Contingency	*Worker*	*Firm*
Period 1	Extra effort	High wage
Period 2		
No prior defections	Normal effort	High wage
Prior defections	Quit	Fire

Now look at the first period. Assuming the firm follows the proposed strategy, by exerting extra effort in period 1 the worker earns 20 in period 1 and 24 in period 2, for a total of 44. If he defects and exerts normal effort in period 1 he earns 24 in period 1 but nothing in period 2. Clearly it is better for the worker to follow the proposed strategy in period 1. Turning attention to the firm, under the assumption that the worker follows the proposed strategy, paying the high wage in period 1 generates 20 in profit for the firm in period 1 and an additional 13 in period 2, for a total of 33. If the firm defects and pays the normal wage in period 1, it earns 24 in period 1 but nothing in period 2 since the worker quits after the defection. Paying the high wage in period 2 is obviously better. We still get an efficiency wage scheme in the first period.

The other possible way to change the firm's strategy from the one in Table 10.4 is to have the firm fire the worker in the second period, since it cannot pay the normal wage. If the worker knows he is going to get fired, his best option is to quit at the same time, which yields the strategies in Table 10.6. In contrast with the strategies in Table 10.5, these strategies do not constitute an equilibrium.

To see why, consider the worker's first-period decision. Assuming that the firm follows the assigned strategy, if the worker exerts extra effort he earns 20 in period 1 and nothing in period 2, but if he exerts normal effort he earns 24 in the first period and nothing in the second. Clearly this defection is profitable, and the worker's strategy is not a best response to the firm's strategy. The firm does much better obtaining an efficiency wage scheme if it pays the high wage in the last period than if it fires the worker in the last period.

TABLE 10.6

Strategies when the firm fires the worker in Period 2 since it cannot reduce the worker's pay

Period/Contingency	*Worker*	*Firm*
Period 1	Extra effort	High wage
Period 2		
No prior defections	Quit	Fire
Prior defections	Quit	Fire

RESTRICTIONS ON FIRING

Now suppose that the firm cannot fire the workers. This changes the game in a fundamental way, removing the firm's only method of harsh punishment. The intuition we gained in Section 1 suggests that it will be impossible to sustain an efficiency wage scheme in this setting. Let's make sure that it is true.

Game 10.4 gets changed to Game 10.5 in which the column corresponding to the firm firing the worker is deleted from the game. Note that the worker will never quit in this situation, since no matter what the firm does, he is better off exerting normal effort than quitting. Since quitting is never played, the game is essentially the same as Game 10.1, and we found in Section 1 that repeating that game led to the worker exerting normal effort and the firm paying the normal wage every period. Our intuition holds: efficiency wage schemes are impossible when one party loses its ability to punish harshly.

GAME 10.5

		Firm	
		High wage	Normal wage
	Extra effort	20, 20	13, 24
Worker	Normal effort	24, 13	15, 15
	Quit	0, −5	0, −5

We have found that an inability to reduce wages does not preclude the use of an efficiency wage scheme to motivate workers, but an inability to fire workers does. Both of these restrictions were placed on the firm's choice set: when the firm cannot reduce wages the middle column of Game 10.4 is removed in the last period, and when the firm cannot fire its workers the last column of the game is removed.

UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE

There is another policy that, although it does not change the set of actions available in the game, does change the payoffs to the worker, and this policy can also have detrimental effects on the ability to use efficiency wages. Suppose that the worker has unemployment insurance that will provide him with an income if he finds himself without work for any reason. In many countries employers are required by the government to provide unemployment insurance, and in other countries the government provides the insurance itself. In some countries, such as Sweden, the unemployment benefits can be quite lucrative. We analyze the effects of such lucrative unemployment benefits here.

The payoffs in the game tables are the worker's share of the surplus generated by the employment relationship. To get this surplus, the worker exerts costly effort and gets a paycheck from the firm. If the paycheck is greater than the cost of the effort exerted, he receives a positive net benefit, and the payoff in the table is positive. If the worker does not work, then under normal circumstances he exerts no effort and receives no pay, for a net benefit of zero. With unemployment insurance, however, he exerts no effort and still receives some pay. The net benefit enjoyed by the worker could be anything, and it could even be larger than the benefit from the efficiency wage scheme if the unemployment insurance payments are large enough and effort is sufficiently costly. This would make the worker want to lose his job, and obviously efficiency wages cannot work then.

Efficiency wage schemes can still break down when the worker's net benefit when unemployed is below the net benefit he receives when earning the normal wage and exerting normal effort, as long as the net benefit when unemployed is still pretty high. In Game 10.4 he receives a payoff of 15 from exerting normal effort and getting the normal wage. Suppose that if he is unemployed, whether it is because he quit or because he was fired, he receives enough unemployment insurance to generate a net benefit of 12. The payoff table changes to the one in Game 10.6.

GAME 10.6

		Firm		
		High wage	Normal wage	Fire
Worker	Extra effort	20, 20	13, 24	12, 0
	Normal effort	24, 13	15, 15	12, 0
	Quit	12, −5	12, −5	12, 0

The strategies in Table 10.4 no longer constitute an equilibrium. Consider the first period. Assuming that the firm follows the assigned strategy, if the worker exerts extra effort he earns 20 in period 1 and 15 in period 2, for a total of 35. If he defects and exerts normal effort, he earns 24 in period 1, but then he is fired and receives unemployment benefits in period 2 for an additional 12. So, he gets 35 from exerting extra effort but 36 from exerting normal effort. Since unemployment pays so well, firing the worker is not harsh enough punishment, and the efficiency wage scheme breaks down.

PROBLEMS

1. What is an efficiency wage scheme?

2. What are the two key ingredients for achieving an efficiency wage scheme?

The remaining problems are based on the following game:

		Firm		
		High wage	Normal wage	Fire
	Extra effort	10, 10	3, 15	-2, 0
Worker	Normal effort	15, 3	4, 4	-2, 0
	Quit	0, -2	0, -2	0, 0

3. Suppose that the game is repeated 3 times. Are the strategies below consistent with an equilibrium? Why or why not?

Period/Contingency	*Worker*	*Firm*
Period 1	Extra effort	High wage
Period 2		
No prior defections	Extra effort	High wage
Prior defections	Quit	Fire
Period 3		
No prior defections	Normal effort	Normal wage
Prior defections	Quit	Fire

4. Suppose that the game is repeated 3 times. Are the strategies below consistent with an equilibrium? Why or why not?

Period/Contingency	*Worker*	*Firm*
Period 1	Extra effort	High wage
Period 2		
No prior defections	Normal effort	Normal wage
Prior defections	Quit	Fire
Period 3		
No prior defections	Normal effort	Normal wage
Prior defections	Quit	Fire

CHAPTER 11
TEAM INCENTIVES

Many students have been exposed to team compensation through group projects in their classes. In a typical group assignment, students are either assigned to a group by the professor or they are allowed to choose their own groups. Then, they must research a topic, write a paper, and present it to the class, with everyone in the group getting the same grade for the project. For many students, this turns out to be a bad experience. Usually they think that they did more work than the other members of the group, so that their hard work helped people who did not deserve it. Some students even go so far as avoiding classes that have group assignments.

In spite of these bad experiences, many firms use team incentives to compensate their employees. The most common team incentive is profit sharing, where all of the employees are rewarded when the firm's profit goals are met. There are also many instances in which a firm rewards a smaller unit on the basis of its performance. In this chapter we analyze how, and how well, team compensation works.

1. WHY TEAMS?

Why do firms choose to compensate workers based on team performance instead of individual performance? There are several reasons.

COMPLEMENTARITIES

One reason for considering teams as opposed to individuals is that the members of the team can produce more when they work together than they can when they work individually. If this is the case, the firm should encourage them to work together rather than pursue individual activities that are rewarded separately. This is best achieved by rewarding the workers as a team.

This begs the question of why workers might accomplish more together than separately. Consider the following examples. A person with an interesting public life might not have any skills in writing or storytelling, while an author with these skills might not have any worthwhile stories to write. Neither could write a bestseller on their own. Together, though, they could write an autobiography that sells more copies than both the books they would have written separately.

Success in hockey requires teammates working together. One of the NHL's minor leagues used to have an all-star game in which the previous year's champion would play the all-stars from the rest of the league. It is unlikely that the previous year's champion would have half of the league's best players, especially considering that in minor league hockey the best players get to move up to the next level. So, even though the all-star team had more talent, on average, than the previous year's champion, the previous year's champion would typically win the all-star game.

These two examples establish that complementarities exist and can be important, but they do not work that well for explaining why a firm might want to consider its employees as members of teams instead of as individuals. In a corporate setting there are three main reasons why complementarities arise. The first is that a task or project might simply be too big for one person to accomplish effectively. Think about moving a couch. While it is possible for one person to move a couch, given enough time and ingenuity, it is much easier for two people to move it together. The second reason, which is related, is specialization. By placing employees in teams, the firm can allow each employee to specialize in one subset of the production process. Through specialization the employee can become more adept at his own task, thereby reducing the time it takes to complete the task and reducing production costs. These benefits of specialization are exploited in assembly line production. Of course, in an assembly line, the rate at which one employee can complete his task depends on how fast his coworkers complete theirs, and the entire production line really is a team.

The third reason is that sometimes workers develop a relationship in which they work really well together. For example, two advertising executives might bounce ideas off of each other, with each one improving upon the ideas of the other, until the final product is much better than anything one of the individuals could have come up with on his own. All three of these reasons describe situations in which workers are able to accomplish more as part of a team than they could as individuals.

IDENTIFICATION OF CONTRIBUTIONS

In many cases it is nearly impossible to determine what a single worker has accomplished independent of his coworkers. The best example here is management. In many firms there is a group of workers that does the actual production and another group of workers that manages the first group. These managerial tasks include making assignments for workers, filling out paperwork, and reporting to upper management. The members of the management group do not actually produce anything themselves, but without them the workers they manage would not be so productive. So, what is the value of the members of the management group? Since these workers' contributions cannot be identified easily, it makes sense to reward them based on the performance of the workers they supervise.

The example in the preceding subsection with the two advertising executives also illustrates a situation in which the contributions of individual workers are difficult to identify. If the two executives come up with the advertising campaign together, then how can the firm tell how much one contributed and how much the other contributed? In the absence of this information, the two must be rewarded as a team.

KNOWLEDGE TRANSFER

When workers are placed in teams, they can learn from each other. So, for example, when a new worker joins a firm, he might be placed with a more experienced worker for a period of time while he learns his job. If the more experienced worker takes her training duties seriously, she produces less during the training period. If she is rewarded individually based on output, though, she would have an incentive to neglect her training duties. Consequently, treating the trainer and the trainee as a team can lead to more knowledge transfer.

Knowledge transfer does not just take place in a training situation, though. A team might bring together workers with different areas of expertise, and through team interactions they share their expertise with the other members of the team. This knowledge transfer can make everyone in the team more valuable to the firm, even after the team project ends.

FAIRNESS

When workers perform well, the entire firm benefits and profit increases. This increased profit goes to the owners of the firm. Some workers might find it discouraging that the owners reap the benefit of the workers' effort instead of the workers retaining that benefit themselves. If worker morale falls, the workers become less productive or leave the firm, and profit declines.

To combat this negative effect of high profits, the owners of the firm might choose to share the profit with the workers who earned it for them. This creates a team comprised of the workers and the owners, and provides part of the rationale behind profit sharing plans.

2. THREE APPROACHES TO ANALYZING TEAMS

In this section we want to treat team incentives analytically. To do this we take three separate approaches. First, we construct a game that captures all of the important aspects of team incentives. Second, we look at the provision of effort in a team environment as providing a public good. Finally, we examine the behavior of a worker mathematically. All three approaches give us the same answer: Team incentives are ineffective for inducing effort from workers.

A GAME-THEORETIC APPROACH

The goal of this subsection is to construct a game that captures all of the important aspects of the behavior of workers in teams. To keep things simple, assume that each worker must choose between exerting one unit of effort or two units of effort. Further, suppose that each unit of effort costs the worker who exerts it $20, but costs the other worker nothing. Each unit of effort generates $30 for the firm to use to pay the workers. Because the workers are in a team, all pay is split equally between the two workers.

This generates the payoffs in Game 11.1. If both workers exert one unit of effort, they generate a total of $60 in pay. The firm splits this $60 between the two workers, so they both get paid $30. The unit of effort costs $20, so each worker earns a net benefit of $10. Similarly, if both workers exert two units of effort, total pay is $120 and each worker gets paid $60. Effort costs $40 for each worker, so both workers earn net benefit of $20.

If worker A, who is represented by the row player, exerts 2 units of effort while worker B only exerts one unit, total effort is 3 units and total pay is $90. The firm splits this between the two workers, and each worker is paid $45. Worker A exerted $40 of effort to get paid $45, for a net benefit of $5. Worker B exerted only $20 of effort to get paid $45, for a net benefit of $25. Clearly worker B benefits from A's extra effort. The payoffs when worker B exerts 2 units of effort and worker A exerts only 1 can be calculated in the same way.

GAME 11.1

		Worker B	
		1 unit of effort	2 units of effort
Worker A	1 unit of effort	10, 10	25, 5
	2 units of effort	5, 25	20, 20

This game has only one Nash equilibrium, and in that equilibrium both workers exert the minimal amount of effort. No matter how much effort worker B exerts, worker A's net benefit is higher when he exerts one unit of effort than when he exerts two units of effort. Similarly, no matter what A does, B gets higher net benefit from exerting one unit of effort. Consequently, in equilibrium both workers exert one unit of effort. They

would both be strictly better off if they both exerted two units of effort instead of one, but the equilibrium of the game prescribes exerting one unit of effort.

The reason for workers exerting as little effort as possible should be clear once you think about it. For every $20 in effort the worker exerts, he gets paid an additional $15 (that is, $30 in total pay split between the two workers). Since his marginal benefit of effort is less than his marginal cost, he should exert as little effort as possible. In Game 11.1, that is one unit of effort.

The problem here is that each worker bears the costs of his own effort, but everyone shares the benefits. If the team has more workers, these benefits are even more diluted. Thus, the general lesson from this section is that because they dilute benefits, team incentives tend to lead to minimal amounts of team effort.

A PUBLIC GOODS APPROACH

When economists use the term "public good," they have something very specific in mind. A good is a **public good** if it satisfies the two criteria of being nonexclusionary and nonrival in consumption. Let's take these two criteria one at a time.

A good is **nonexclusionary** if there is no way to keep someone from consuming it. A radio broadcast over the airwaves is nonexclusionary because anyone in the area with a radio can tune in, and there is no way to keep any single person from tuning in. National defense is also nonexclusionary because the government cannot protect my neighbor's house from a missile attack without protecting mine as well. Cars, on the other hand, are exclusionary because there is a way to keep people from consuming a particular car. By not giving someone the key, that person is excluded from using the car.

A good is **nonrival in consumption** if the existence of someone consuming the good does not preclude someone else from consuming it, too. A radio broadcast is nonrival in consumption because one person tuning in does not suck the radio waves out of the atmosphere. The signal strength is not diminished in any way and anyone else can tune in to the same station. In contrast, an apple is rival in consumption. When one person eats the apple, no one else can.

When a firm pays team members equally based on team output, the pay generated by worker effort is a public good. It is nonexclusionary because the worker exerting the effort cannot keep any of his coworkers from receiving the benefits of it. It is nonrival in consumption because, when the pay is split equally among the team members, the decision of any worker to take or turn down the pay does not affect how much any other member is paid. If the worker turns down his share, the firm keeps it.

In general, public goods are not paid for directly by the people who consume them. For example, most radio broadcasts are paid for by advertisers, not by listeners. National defense is paid for by the federal government, which in turn receives its money

from taxpayers, but nobody makes a direct contribution to the government for national defense. There is a good reason why consumers do not pay for public goods – they do not have to. Since the good is nonexclusionary, people can consume it whether they helped pay for it or not. Since it is nonrival in consumption, a noncontributor's consumption does not affect a contributor's consumption,, and so there is no reason for contributors to care who else consumes the good. Essentially, the good is free to the consumers, and their benefit from consuming it is the same whether they contribute to paying its expense or not.

In a team production environment, the public good is the pay that comes from a member's effort, and the members can contribute to the public good by exerting costly effort. But, since people tend not to contribute to public goods, one would expect that team members would exert little effort toward projects that benefit the team.

A term that arises from economists' studies of public good provision is **free-riding**. When contributing to public goods, individuals tend to free ride by not contributing much themselves and then enjoying the benefits of the contributions made by others. In a team production setting, individual workers do not do much work but reap the benefits of any effort exerted by their fellow team members. This is free-riding.

Free-riding can be seen easily in a public good contribution game. Suppose that there are two players, each of whom starts with $10. Each player can either contribute $10 to the "pot" or contribute nothing. The amount in the pot is multiplied by 1.5 and then split between the two players. This leads to Game 11.2.

GAME 11.2

		Column	
		Contribute $10	Contribute $0
Row	Contribute $10	15, 15	7.50, 17.50
	Contribute $0	17.50, 7.50	10, 10

The formula for figuring out the payoffs is as follows. Suppose that the row player contributes R and the column player contributes C. The row player's payoff is then

$$(10 - R) + 1.5(R + C)/2.$$

The $(10 - R)$ term accounts for how much of the \$10 the row player has after the contribution. The pot is $(R + C)$, which is multiplied by 1.5 and then split, so that the row player's share of the pot is $1.5(R + C)/2$. For example, if the row player contributes \$10 and the column player contributes \$0, the row player's payoff is $(10 - 10) + 1.5(10 + 0)/2 = 7.50$. The column player's payoffs can be calculated in the same way after switching the R's and the C's in the formula.

The Nash equilibrium of Game 11.2 has both players contributing \$0. No matter what the column player does, the row player is better off contributing \$0. The reason becomes clear from the formula. Rearranging the formula so that there is just one R yields

$$10 - 0.25R + 7.5C.$$

Every dollar he contributes reduces the row-player's payoff by 25¢, and so the contribution should be made as small as possible. This is exactly what we found in the first approach to the problem.

A MATHEMATICAL APPROACH

The mathematical analysis used is similar to that used to analyze piece rates in Chapter 5. Suppose that a worker is part of an n-worker team. His pay consists of three components. First, he receives a salary component denoted by s. Second, he receives a share of the income generated by the other members of the team. The income generated by the other team members is denoted T, and his share is one n-th of that, or T/n. Finally, he generates income for the team by exerting effort, and denote that amount of income by $I(e)$. He keeps a share of this equal to $I(e)/n$. Effort is costly, and the cost of effort is denoted by $C(e)$. His net benefit, then, is given by

$$NB(e) = s + T/n + I(e)/n - C(e).$$

To find out how much effort the worker will exert, assuming that his participation constraint is satisfied, look at the marginal condition. Only two terms on the right-hand side of the above expression depend on effort, so the other two terms are absent from the marginal condition. The marginal condition is:

$$MI(e)/n = MC(e).$$

The term on the left is the worker's share of the income generated from one more unit of effort, and the term on the right is the cost of one more unit of effort. The marginal condition states that these two are equal at the optimum.

The key feature of the marginal condition that will be discussed here is that the left-hand side, which is the marginal benefit of effort, falls when the size of the team rises. Mathematically, when n rises, $MI(e)/n$ falls for any value of e. The reason for this is that any benefits from the worker exerting effort must be shared with his teammates, and so the bigger the team, the smaller his share. The right-hand side, which is the marginal cost of effort, does not change when the team gets bigger. So, when the team grows, the marginal benefits shrink, and the worker exerts less effort.

SPLITTING THE BILL IN A RESTAURANT

Consider two different ways for a group of unrelated people to deal with the payment at the end of a meal at a restaurant. One way is for the group to ask for separate checks, so that each member of the group pays for his own meal. A second way is to get one check and split the amount evenly among everyone at the table. Splitting the check leads to a situation that is the reverse of the team production problem. In team production one worker bears all of the costs but shares the benefits with his teammates. In the restaurant problem, each person receives all the benefits of his own meal but shares the costs with everyone else.

Three economists studied how people behaved in the two payment methods – separate checks or splitting the bill.[*] They found that people order higher-priced meals when they are splitting the bill, which is consistent with what the theory predicts. When they get separate checks the individual orders a meal to set $MB = MC$, and if they split the bill the individual orders a meal to set $MB = MC/n$, where n is the number of people at the table. Since $MC/n < MC$ when $n \geq 2$, the individual orders a larger meal when the table is splitting the bill equally. This is inefficient, because everyone orders larger meals and ends up spending more than they would if they were paying separately.

[*] Uri Gneezy, Ernan Haruvy, and Hadas Yafe, "The Inefficiency of Splitting the Bill," *Economic Journal* 114, April 2004, pp. 281-303.

GENERAL LESSONS

There are three general lessons from the first two sections of this chapter. There may be productive advantages from workers working together, but paying them as a team inhibits incentives and this effect gets worse as the team grows. In particular, the larger the team is, the more diluted the incentives are.

It appears that a firm could get more bang for its buck by paying workers individually, since then incentives are not diluted at all. But, as argued in Section 1, teamwork may make workers more productive than they would be individually. So, the firm faces a tradeoff between the increased productivity from teamwork, which arises

from complementarities and other effects, and the diluted incentives from team compensation.

3. WHEN CAN TEAM COMPENSATION WORK?

There are three keys to successful team compensation. First, there must be a valid reason for using team compensation. This means that there must be some productivity advantage to teams, as discussed in Section 1. The best reason to encourage teams is when there are complementarities between the workers.

The second key is a small group. Incentives are diluted more in large groups than in small ones, so by keeping teams small the incentives have more impact. When teams are very large, team incentives become virtually nonexistent.

Both of these keys involve both the firm and the team. The firm must benefit from the team members working together, and the team must benefit from the firm paying them. The third key concerns interactions of members within the team. Look back at Game 11.1. It looks a lot like Game 10.1 in the efficiency wage chapter. In Game 11.1 the best outcome for the team is when both workers exert two units of effort. The equilibrium of the game has both workers exerting only one unit of effort, though.

In Chapter 10, an efficiency wage scheme arises when workers exert extra effort and the firm pays an above-normal wage. It was impossible for an efficiency wage scheme to arise from Game 10.1. In order to get efficiency wages, it is necessary to augment the game to give both players harsh punishment strategies and to repeat the game so that the future would matter. Since Game 10.1 and Game 11.1 are so similar, perhaps we can use comparable methods to achieve higher team production in Game 11.1.

The employer is passive in Game 11.1; the game involves only the workers. Using the lessons from the efficiency wage chapter, the workers can cooperate by exerting more effort and earning higher payoffs if the game is augmented to allow for harsh punishment and if the augmented game is repeated. Since we worked through the mechanics of the game in Chapter 10, we will not do so here. Instead, we will focus attention on how harsh punishment could be added and whether or not repetition is sensible in this setting.

When a team is small enough and the members are located sufficiently closely together, they can be aware of what their fellow members are doing. If one member works especially hard the other members will know it and, conversely, if one member slacks off the other members will know it. In such cases the team will know when a member should be punished for deviating from the cooperative, high-effort outcome in which all members are better off (corresponding to both workers exerting two units of effort in Game 11.1). The question is, when they know that a member is slacking, can the rest of the team punish him for it? This depends on whether or not the team can make

the slacker's life sufficiently unpleasant that he would rather exert the extra effort than face the punishment. One way to make the slacker's life unpleasant is to refuse to help him with his individual tasks when he needs it, so that he has to work harder on his individual tasks. A more common method is to ostracize the slacker, that is, to shun him socially. If the slacker is stuck with a fixed set of coworkers, and spends most of his day with that set of coworkers, then ostracism can be a very harsh form of punishment. This can also be thought of as peer pressure: workers exert extra effort on behalf of the team in order to avoid the wrath of their peers.

Obtaining the efficient outcome also requires repetition so that team members exert high effort now in order to continue receiving high payoffs in the future. For this to work, teams must stay intact for extended periods of time. If management reshuffles teams often, the possibility of a profitable future relationship is diminished and members will not find it worthwhile to exert extra effort. Only when teams are stable over time can cooperative team effort arise.

4. PROFIT-SHARING AND GAIN-SHARING

Many companies have profit-sharing plans. All three of the major U.S. auto makers have had profit-sharing plans in place for decades. In 2000, before the economic downturn, Daimler-Chrysler employees received an average of $8100 each in profit-sharing payments and Ford employees received an average of $8000 each. In a typical profit-sharing plan, the company sets a target for profits. If that target is met, a portion of the profits are shared with the employees, with each individual employee's payment based on his or her salary or wages. Gain-sharing programs are very similar to profit-sharing programs, but are based on different targets. So, for example, a gain-sharing program could be based on a revenue target or a cost-reduction target, and if the target is reached the employees share in the gains.

Proponents of profit-sharing plans typically offer several reasons for adopting them, including getting employees to work together and helping employees to focus on the profitability of the firm. But do profit-sharing plans really provide incentives? Think about Daimler-Chrysler. The company has about 86,000 employees eligible for profit-sharing. This means that if an employee takes an action that generates $1000 additional profit for the company, that employee's share is, on average, 1¢. This does not provide much of an incentive, which should not be surprising based on Section 3, which suggested that for team incentives to work, the team should be small.

Why, then, do companies use profit-sharing plans? There are probably three good reasons. The first has to do with fairness and morale. High profits benefit the owners of the firm and, if they have stock-based incentives, the upper management of the firm. Without profit-sharing, the workers get nothing when profit is high. This could cause resentment, which in turn could reduce morale, thereby reducing profitability. To

maintain morale and sustain profitability, the firm might want to share high profits with its workers.

The second reason involves recruiting new workers. If workers find profit-sharing plans attractive, firms that offer them might be able to get better workers, which would increase profitability. The third reason is closely related. If workers find profit-sharing plans attractive, firms that offer them can pay lower wages, which also increases profitability. So, there are at least three reasons why profit-sharing plans can increase profitability, but none of them have anything to do with team incentives.

PROBLEMS

1. Give an example, different from those in the text, of a good that is nonrival in consumption and a good that is nonexclusionary.

2. Suppose that two workers are paid as a team, and that the total payment to the two for different total effort levels is given by the following table:

Total effort	Total pay (to be split)
0	500
10	800
20	1040
30	1240
40	1400

The firm splits pay evenly between the workers, regardless of how hard they have worked. Each worker has the choice of exerting either 0 units of effort, 10 units of effort, or 20 units of effort. It costs a worker nothing to exert no effort, 200 to exert 10 units of effort, and 360 to exert 20 units of effort.

Construct a payoff matrix that shows the payoffs to the team members for the different combinations of effort levels.

3. Find the Nash equilibrium of the game in Problem 2, and state its implications for team incentives.

4. A firm earns net revenue of $110 for each unit of effort that is exerted by its workers. The firm rewards the workers as a team, paying every worker some amount per unit of

team effort. The firm has 4 workers, all of whom share the same effort costs given by the table below.

Effort level	Effort cost
0	0
1	40
2	100
3	180
4	280
5	400
6	540
7	700
8	880

a. What is the optimal effort level for each worker?

b. If the firm pays $100 per unit of effort to the team, how much effort will each worker produce?

c. How much would the firm have to pay to the team for each unit of effort to get the optimal amount of effort from each worker?

CHAPTER 12
COMPARISON OF INCENTIVE SCHEMES

So far in this book we have looked at four ways to motivate workers – piece rates, tournaments, efficiency wages, and team incentives. Each of the schemes was introduced individually to determine how they were able to induce workers to exert the right amount of effort. Now it is time to compare them.

There are several good reasons for doing so. The most basic reason is to find out if there are circumstances under which it makes more sense to use one of the incentive schemes than the others. In particular, under what circumstances is it even possible to use a specific compensation scheme, and how does the scheme impact the firm's profit? These questions are of major concern to the employers, but not so much for the employees. The workers care more about which scheme gives them the highest net benefit, so we will also look at that issue. A third issue is cooperation between workers. Team incentives seem to be geared toward cooperation, but what about the others? Finally, each of the incentive schemes has its problems, and we can compare those, as well.

1. GETTING WORKERS TO WORK

When firms design a compensation scheme, the primary goal is to design one that allows them to maximize profit. They do this by inducing the workers to exert the optimal amount of effort and by paying them as little as they have to in order to get them to produce the optimal amount of effort. At the very least, then, a compensation scheme must induce workers to exert effort. However, the firm should also be able to fine-tune the compensation package so that it induces workers to exert the *right* amount of effort, too. In this section we review how the different compensation schemes induce workers to work and how the firm can fine-tune them to get the right amount of work.

In a piece rate compensation scheme the firm sets the piece rate, which is a payment to the worker for each unit of output produced. The worker responds to the piece rate by producing the level of output at which his marginal effort cost is equal to the piece rate. This is the worker's marginal condition. By increasing the piece rate the

firm can induce the worker to exert more effort, and the piece rate can be set optimally to maximize the firm's profit.

When the firm uses a tournament to motivate its workers, the workers exert effort in an attempt to win the prize. Since the firm awards the prize to the worker who exerts the most effort, a worker can improve his chances of winning by exerting more effort. The marginal condition states that the worker exerts effort until the marginal cost of effort equals the marginal probability of winning times the size of the prize, which is the expected marginal benefit of effort. The firm can induce workers to increase their effort by increasing the size of the prize, since that increases the expected marginal benefit of effort. When the prize is set correctly, the firm induces workers to exert the optimal amount of effort.

Efficiency wage schemes are different from the other two, because the way they were modeled in Chapter 10 they did not involve a marginal condition. Instead, the efficiency wage scheme arises as part of the equilibrium of a game between the firm and the worker. The worker exerts high effort so that he can continue to earn high wages in the future, and the firm pays high wages so that it can continue to earn high profits from the worker exerting high effort in the future. The firm can influence the amount of effort exerted by workers by adjusting the standard that distinguishes "high effort" from "normal effort." The higher the standard that workers must meet, the more effort they exert as part of the efficiency wage scheme.

Finally, team incentives are just like a piece rate scheme, except that now workers are rewarded as part of a team instead of individually. So, if a worker is a part of a team, any output that worker produces increases the payment to every member of the team. The worker's marginal condition states that he exerts effort until the marginal cost of effort equals his share of the team's payment per unit of effort. But, since the worker only gets a share of the total team payment for a unit of effort, the firm's payment for effort is diluted and workers exert less effort than they would if they were paid individually.

2. WHEN CAN THE DIFFERENT SCHEMES BE USED?

The different incentive schemes require different information for the employer to implement them. Workers are paid on the basis of some action, and therefore to implement the incentive scheme the firm must measure those actions. This is most obvious with piece rate schemes. In a piece rate scheme workers are paid for each unit of output, and so the firm must measure each employee's output. Sometimes this is straightforward. For example, at Safelite Glass Corporation windshield installers are paid a piece rate of $22 per installation. To implement this scheme Safelite just has to keep track of how many windshields each worker installs. At other places measuring each employee's output is more difficult. How would you pay a prison guard using a piece

rate? What "output" would pay be based upon? It would not be the number of prisoners guarded, since that number would tend to stay the same and it is beyond the guard's control anyway. It would not be the number of prisoners he has to punish for misbehavior, either, because the prison wants the inmates to behave, not misbehave. For prison guards, and many other occupations, there is no good notion of "output" that could be used as the basis of a piece rate incentive scheme.

A piece rate scheme is most plausible when the employee has one well-defined task that can be measured by the employer. Salespeople are often paid by commission which, as we saw in Chapter 5, is essentially a piece rate. Piece rates can also be used in manufacturing jobs where the worker has one task he is supposed to perform, and since many manufacturing plants are automated it is easy to keep track of what each worker does.

Tournaments require much less information than piece rate schemes, especially promotion tournaments. All a supervisor needs to do to decide whom to promote is decide which employee is better than all of the others. She does not even need to make a complete ranking of all of the employees, she just has to decide which one is best. A prison supervisor could determine which of the guards is best and most deserving of a promotion and name him the winner even without being able to measure (or define) what his output is.

Promotion schemes have the added advantage that the supervisor does not have to define one single task for which the employee will be rewarded. If the firm values several tasks the supervisor can promote the worker who does best at all of the tasks rather than a worker who does well on one task but ignores the others.

Efficiency wage schemes have an information requirement that is easier than piece rate schemes but harder than promotion schemes. In an efficiency wage scheme the worker is supposed to exert extra effort instead of normal effort, and the firm pays the worker the high wage as long as he exerts extra effort but fires him if he exerts normal effort instead. To implement this scheme, the firm must set a standard that marks the line between "extra" effort and "normal" effort. The worker then works to meet or exceed this standard. To implement the efficiency wage scheme, the firm must measure the worker's performance well enough to determine whether or not he meets the standard.

As with promotion schemes, this allows the firm to use multidimensional criteria to evaluate the worker's performance. For example, many parents pay babysitters using an efficiency wage scheme. They pay the sitters a high wage so that the sitters will be willing to sit again in the future. The sitters exert high effort by being available, being punctual, cleaning up, and so on. If the sitter fails to do something that the parents expect, such as by failing to pick up the toys or failing to get the kids to bed before the parents come home, the parents can try to find a new sitter next time. The sitter is not

paid separately for each task, but is paid an efficiency wage with the expectation that he or she will fulfill all of the parents' requests.

Team incentives are much like piece rate schemes, and in order to implement them the firm must be able to measure the team's performance. Often firms get around this difficulty by treating the entire firm, or perhaps an entire division of the firm, as a team. Firm performance is measured quarterly anyway, and so profit-sharing plans can be based on how quarterly profit compares to a target level, and workers are rewarded if profit exceeds the target.

With the exception of profit-sharing, tournaments are the easiest of the four schemes to implement. In a tournament the firm only needs to identify the winner, while with efficiency wages the firm must compare performance to a standard, with team incentive schemes the firm must be able to measure team output, and in piece rate schemes the firm must be able to measure individual output. Since output is either difficult or impossible to measure for many types of workers, piece rate schemes and team incentives based on the output of small groups of workers are simply not feasible in many instances. Profit-sharing, tournaments, and efficiency wages are feasible in the most circumstances.

There are other considerations that might inhibit a firm from using one of these last three schemes, though. Tournaments do not motivate workers well when effort comparisons between workers are subject to a large amount of random noise or when supervisors are biased, so tournaments should be avoided when supervisors cannot make an unbiased, fairly accurate judgment of who should win. Profit-sharing can only occur when the firm earns a profit, and many firms regularly suffer losses. Furthermore, many workers are employed in the government or not-for-profit sectors, and so they have no profits to share. Finally, efficiency wage schemes depend on the credibility of the firm's threat to fire a worker who underperforms. For this threat to be credible, there must be a stock of replacement workers to take the fired worker's place.

3. WHO GETS THE SURPLUS?

The reason why workers and firms enter into an employment relationship is that the relationship generates surplus that the two parties can share. When there is a surplus, the firm can afford to pay the worker enough to compensate him for his time and effort and still have enough left over to make a profit from the relationship. If there is no surplus, on the other hand, neither party gains from the relationship unless the other party loses, and the losing party would refuse to enter into the relationship. So, whenever a worker and firm voluntarily get together they generate a surplus, and both parties want as much of that surplus as possible.

The worker has two types of costs. One is his effort cost and the other is his opportunity cost, which is the net benefit he would receive from working at the next best

alternative employer. Using the notation from earlier chapters, the worker's costs are $C + u_0$, where C is the effort cost and u_0 is the net benefit he would earn at the next best alternative employer. When the worker exerts effort he generates net revenue for the firm of NR. The surplus is the difference between net revenue and the worker's costs, or

$$\text{Surplus} = NR - (C + u_0).$$

The worker's and firm's shares of the surplus are determined by how much the firm pays the worker. Letting W denote the worker's pay, the shares are:

$$\text{Firm's share} = NR - W$$
$$\text{Worker's share} = W - (C + u_0).$$

If W is close to NR, the firm's share of the surplus is small and the worker's share is large. If W is close to $C + u_0$, the worker's share is small and the firm's share is large.

The different compensation schemes lead to different ways of sharing the surplus. So far, though, we have only discussed how the surplus is shared for a piece rate scheme. In Chapter 5 we saw that when the firm sets the piece rate and the salary component optimally in order to maximize profit, the firm gets all of the surplus and the worker gets none of it. We need to see if the other incentive schemes also allow the firm to capture all of the surplus.

Team incentives are the same as piece rate schemes except that the piece rates are paid to the entire team instead of a single individual. Because of the similarity, the firm is also able to capture all of the surplus when it pays the team a piece rate.

With efficiency wages it must be the case that the worker and the firm share the surplus so that both get strictly positive surplus. This should be clear from looking at the games in Chapter 10. In the efficiency wage scheme the worker exerts extra effort and the firm pays an above-market wage. The alternative is that the worker exerts the normal amount of effort and the firm pays the market wage. In the games both the worker and the firm earn strictly higher payoffs in the efficiency wage scheme than in the normal effort/normal wage scheme.

Efficiency wages must generate strictly positive surplus for both parties. To see why, recall that if the worker quits he gets zero surplus. Exerting extra effort must be strictly more attractive to him than quitting, and so he must earn strictly positive surplus from the efficiency wage scheme. The same reasoning works for the firm. If the firm gets none of the surplus it can fire the worker and not be any worse off. To entice the firm to pay the high wage it must be the case that it gets some of the surplus. In efficiency wage schemes, then, both the worker and the firm get positive shares of the surplus.

In tournaments the worker's pay depends on whether he wins the prize or not. So, the formulas for the firm's and the worker's *expected* shares of the surplus must use *expected* pay *EW* instead of *W*. Since the employment relationship is voluntary, the firm's expected surplus must be positive and so must the worker's. Consequently, just as with the piece rate and team incentives, the firm and the worker share the expected surplus. The big difference is that in a tournament only one of the workers gets the prize and the other workers do not. Essentially, the winner takes surplus away from the losers, so that the winner's share of the total surplus is definitely positive but the losers' shares might be negative. All of the workers are willing to exert effort because their expected share of the surplus is positive, but after the tournament ends only the winner receives an actual positive share.

Tournaments are different from all of the other incentive schemes in terms of sharing the surplus. The firm gets a positive share of the surplus in all four schemes, but only in tournaments can a worker end up with a negative share. Efficiency wages guarantee the worker a positive share, while piece rates and team incentives can leave the worker with a zero share.

4. A COMPARISON OF PROBLEMS

As we saw in Chapters 5 and 6, many things can go wrong when the firm uses a piece rate system to motivate employees. If the system is set up improperly it can motivate the wrong behavior, as with the problem of Sears auto mechanics being paid by the repair job, or it can lead to employees focusing on one part of the job and ignoring the others, as with the problem of telephone operators focusing on speed at the expense of accuracy. There can be other problems, as well.

When workers are paid by a piece rate, their income depends directly on their own output. Any time spent helping out coworkers is time that could have been spent producing more output, and so piece rate systems provide a disincentive for worker cooperation. This does not mean that workers will never get together and try to manipulate the system, though. The optimal piece rate is determined in part by the workers' effort costs, which the firm has to infer from how workers respond to the piece rate. If workers get together and cut back their output, the firm will think that effort costs are higher than they really are. Based on this information, the firm sets a higher piece rate to compensate for these higher effort costs. By colluding and cutting back output workers end up not working very hard but being paid more than they were before, which increases their share of the surplus and decreases the firm's share.

Even though team compensation is very similar to a piece rate system, these last two issues – lack of cooperation and collusion to manipulate incentives – are not as problematic in a team setting. First, teams are often formed for the express purpose of fostering cooperation, and so lack of cooperation is not a problem. Second, collusion to

manipulate the incentive scheme works best if the people doing the colluding know each other well and can see what each other is doing. Teams might not fit these requirements. For example, suppose that a team is the sales staff at a particular store for a national chain, and their pay is a salary plus a percentage of the total sales made by that store. These sales clerks would not know sales clerks from all of the other stores around the country, and they would have a very hard time finding out how those other stores are performing. In that case, the workers at one store might not find it worthwhile to cut back their sales in the hopes of getting their commission rates raised because they would not know if the clerks at the other stores are also cutting back their own sales. Attempts at collusion to manipulate the incentive structure would probably fail, and collusion is not the problem for teams that it is for piece rates.

Team incentive plans still have the other two problems shared by piece rate schemes. If the plan is designed poorly, it motivates the wrong behavior. And, if the plan does not reward all valuable activities equally, team members only perform those duties that pay the highest. More importantly, though, team incentive plans have one problem that piece rate schemes do not – free-riding. As discussed in Chapter 11, incentives are diluted in teams and it is therefore in the best interest of team members to do as little work as possible, collecting their pay from the effort made by the rest of the team.

Tournaments have one problem in common with the other two incentive schemes and two new ones. The old problem is lack of cooperation. If one worker helps another it improves the second worker's chance of winning, and so there is a direct disincentive to cooperate with other workers. One of the new problems is the incentive for influence activities, which are activities that improve a worker's chance of winning without generating any benefit for the firm. The tournament provides workers with the incentive to do anything that increases the probability of winning, and this includes influence activities.

The second new problem is unique to tournaments, especially promotion tournaments. The firm promotes the best worker and gives him a new title. The new title is then a clear signal to anyone who cares that this worker was better than all of his colleagues. Other firms might value this information because they can use it to identify and then steal the best employees. So, when a firm uses promotion tournaments to motivate its workers, it also sets its best workers up for raiding by other firms.

The final incentive scheme to be considered is efficiency wages. Efficiency wages operate by comparing a worker's performance to a standard and, if that standard is met, paying the worker a high wage. This opens the door for collusion to manipulate the standard. If all workers act like effort is more costly than it really is, the firm could respond by reducing the standard, which would allow the workers to be paid highly for doing less work. The other problems suffered by efficiency wage schemes are similar to

those suffered by piece rate schemes. Worker A will not help worker B unless worker A is already passing the standard and additional output of his own will not matter to his pay, and so efficiency wage schemes do not foster cooperation. Also, if the standard is poorly designed so that it either rewards the wrong behavior or it fails to reward some valuable behavior, workers will not behave in a way that is optimal for the firm.

Table 12.1 summarizes the information in this and earlier sections.

5. CHOOSING THE RIGHT INCENTIVE SCHEME

The different incentive schemes have their own strengths and weaknesses. Which one should be used depends on the circumstances. Consequently, the only way to talk about the issue is through a series of examples.

TECHNICAL SUPPORT OPERATORS

Many firms, especially computer and software-related firms, employ technical support operators to answer calls from customers and help them with problems with their products. Which incentive scheme would work best for motivating these employees?

Piece rates might be problematic. It would be a simple matter to pay the operator per call, but that would provide the incentive to end calls quickly, possibly before the problem is solved. Team incentives are unlikely because there are no real team advantages in this setting. That leaves tournaments and efficiency wages. If supervisors know who the best employees are, a promotion tournament could work, as long as promotion opportunities come along sufficiently often to motivate the workers. Promotion tournaments cause problems with cooperation, but that is not an issue for this type of work. Two difficulties caused by promotion tournaments that matter here, though, are the subsequent influence activities and the problem caused by workers who know that they will never win the tournament and are therefore not motivated by the tournament.

Efficiency wages might be the best alternative. In an efficiency wage scheme the firm pays the operators an above-market wage but requires them to exceed a performance standard. Any operator falling below the performance standard would be fired, and the high pay makes them want to keep their jobs. The performance standard can incorporate everything that matters to the firm, including setting limits on how much time is spent not answering calls and standards regarding how well the operator is able to solve customers' problems.

COLLEGE FOOTBALL COACHING STAFFS

Every college football team has a large coaching staff. The top person is the head coach, followed by the offensive and defensive coordinators, followed by the

position coaches. What incentive scheme should a college use for everyone but the head coach?

Piece rates are possible, but impractical. The linebacker's coach could be paid per tackle, but that would provide an incentive to make lots of tackles, which only occurs if the other team's offense stays on the field. The quarterback's coach could be paid per completion and the running back's coach could be paid per rushing yard, but then how much they get paid depends on which plays are called, over which they have no control.

Team incentives are also possible. The entire coaching staff could be paid per win. This would give all the coaches the incentive to work together so that they win more games, but college football teams only play eleven or so games per year, and so an additional win or loss would mean a substantial variation in each coach's pay. Their income would be extremely risky, and the college would end up paying them a lot more to bear this risk. Also, there are possible collusion problems. If the team has a bad year and expects another one next year, to ensure that the coaches' wages are competitive with salaries at other schools, the pay per win would have to be very high the next year. This would give the coaching staff the incentive to have a bad season in order to vastly increase their pay the next season.

Efficiency wages could work here. The college could pay coaches an above-market wage and, if the team does poorly, fire them. This works best for schools with the very best teams. Schools with lower-ranked teams need not incur the expense because there the coaching staffs are motivated by tournaments. The best coaches at lower-ranked schools have the opportunity to move up to a higher-ranked, higher-paying school. Since the lower-ranked schools do not have to pay for the prizes when a coach moves to a higher-ranked program, the tournament structure runs itself very cheaply.

DENTAL HYGIENISTS

Dental hygienists clean patients' teeth. After the hygienist is done with a patient, the dentist comes in and examines the patient's teeth. Because of this, it is possible to pay hygienists using a piece rate. Since the dentist checks the quality of the job when it is done, the hygienist cannot ignore quality and only concentrate on speed. But, if one hygienist is faster than another, the dentist can schedule more patients for the faster one, so that speed is rewarded.

Team compensation and promotion tournaments make no sense in this setting. There are no team advantages in this type of work, and there is no job for a successful hygienist to be promoted to. They cannot get promoted to dentist, because that requires a degree from dental school and a license. Efficiency wages could also work so that hygienists perform well to avoid being fired.

PROBLEMS

1. Which incentive scheme tends to give the most surplus to the workers?

2. What is the difference between cooperation between workers and collusion among workers?

3. In your opinion, which incentive scheme is the most appropriate for motivating police officers in the homicide division? Explain your reasoning.

4. In your opinion, which incentive scheme is the most appropriate for motivating emergency room nurses? Explain your reasoning.

5. In your opinion, which incentive scheme is the most appropriate for motivating a receptionist at a dentist's office? Explain your reasoning.

TABLE 12.1
Comparison of different incentive pay systems

Criterion	**Piece rates**	**Tournaments**	**Efficiency wages**	**Teams**
Why workers work	To increase output which increases pay	To increase the probability of winning the prize	To keep their jobs so that they can continue earning high pay in the future	To increase team output which increases team pay
What firms must be able to measure	Each individual worker's output	Identify the best worker	Compare workers to a standard	Each team's output
Incorrect incentives	An incorrectly-designed system can motivate the wrong kinds of activities; workers ignore activities that are not rewarded	Influence activities	No problem	Same as piece rates
Cooperation among workers	Disincentive	Disincentive	No effect	Incentive
Collusion to manipulate the incentive scheme	Collude to get piece rate raised	Disincentive for collusion	Collude to get standard lowered	Difficult to collude across teams

CHAPTER 13
EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

Every year *Forbes* magazine provides information about the compensation packages of the 500 highest paid corporate executives in America. In 2003 the top 100 corporate executives averaged $18.5 million in total compensation. This pay came in various combinations of salary, bonuses, incentive clauses, shares of stock, and stock options. Chief executive officers make about 500 times more than the production workers at their companies, and this multiplier has been growing over time. These facts raise two obvious questions that will be the focus of this chapter. First, why are CEOs paid the way they are, especially in regards to stock and stock options? Second, why are they paid so much?

1. A FEW EXAMPLES

We begin this chapter with a few examples from the 2003 *Forbes* list of the 500 highest paid corporate executives. All of the examples come from prominent companies and all of the executives are highly paid, but not all in the same way.

James E. Cayne has been the CEO of Bear Stearns, a financial services company, for ten years. His cash compensation for the fiscal year ending in November 2003 was $33.9 million. $200,000 of this was salary, and $11 million was a bonus. The remaining $22.7 million was long-term compensation. He owned $500 million of the company's stock, and he had no stock options.

Vance D. Cofmann has been the Chairman of the Board of Lockheed Martin, an aerospace and defense company, since 1998 and the CEO since 1997. His cash compensation for the fiscal year ending December 2003 was $13.8 million, of which $1.7 million was salary and $3.3 million a bonus. He owned $17 million in stock and had $14 million in stock options.

John W. Thompson has been the Chairman of the Board and CEO of Symantec, a software company, for four years. In the fiscal year ending in March 2003 his cash compensation was $2.9 million, which was low for this group of CEOs. His salary was $750,000 and he received a $2 million bonus. He owned $10 million in stock and had $80 million in stock options. He exercised $11.9 million in options that year.

Robert J. Ulrich has been Chairman of the Board and CEO of Target, the retailer, for nine years. In the fiscal year ending in February 2003 his cash compensation was $7.0 million, including $1.4 million in salary and a $4.6 million bonus. He owned $33.6 million in company stock and $84.3 million in stock options. He exercised $12.2 million in options that year.

Finally, Jeffrey P. Bezos is the founder and head of Amazon.com. His total compensation reported in 2003 was $81,840, all of it salary. He had no stock options. Of course, he owned $2.8 *billion* in Amazon.com stock.

There is a pattern here that can inform our discussion: CEO salaries tend to be a relatively small portion of their total compensation. Most of their pay comes from bonuses, stock ownership, and stock options. How pay is divided between these three varies from corporation to corporation.

2. ALIGNING THE CEO'S AND THE OWNERS' INTERESTS

The first step in discussing how CEOs should be paid is determining what behavior should be rewarded. CEOs are different from production workers because they do not actually produce anything. Instead, they make decisions that determine the future course of the firm. To give him the incentive to make the right choices, the CEO's pay should reward him for good decisions.

The CEO is paid by the owners of the firm, or by the Board of Directors which represents the owners. The owners are the stockholders. So when we talk about a decision being "good" or "bad," we mean that it is good or bad from the perspective of the stockholders. What do the stockholders care about? They care about the value, or price, of their stock. Decisions that make the stock price rise are good from their perspective, while decisions that make the stock price fall are bad.

Since the owners of the firm care about the stock price, it makes sense to make the CEO's pay depend on the price of a share. One way to do this is through a system that pays a "piece rate" or "commission" for each $1 change in the price of the company's stock. Suppose that the board wants to increase the CEO's pay by $$x$ every time the share price increases by $1, and decrease his pay by $$x$ every time the share price falls by $1. This turns out to be very easy to do. Just give the CEO x shares of the company's stock with the restriction that he cannot sell it. Then every time the stock price rises by $1 the CEO's wealth increases by $$x$, and his wealth falls by $$x$ every time the share price falls by $1. As we saw in the preceding section, CEOs own a large amount of their firm's stock. For example, James Cayne, the CEO of Bear Stearns, owns 5.8 million shares of Bear Stearns stock and so he makes $5.8 million every time the share price rises by $1. However, he also loses $5.8 million every time the share price falls by $1.

By now we have raised several issues. First, because a CEO's income is determined largely by fluctuations in the price of a single stock, his income is very risky and may even be negative some years. In spite of this, his *wealth*, or accumulated assets, remains positive. Continuing to use James Cayne as an example, before any price changes he owns $500 million in Bear Stearns stock. If the share price falls by $10 he will still own $500 − 58 = $442 million in stock, and he would still be a very wealthy individual. Even so, his income fluctuates wildly.

The second issue is that the firm must give the CEO stock in order to align his interests with those of the shareholders. Compensating the CEO in this way is very expensive. In order to get Cayne 5.8 million shares of company stock so that his income would change by $5.8 million every time the share price changes by $1, the Bear Stearns firm had to give him $500 million in stock. They may not have done it all at once, and he may have purchased some of the shares on his own, but in order to give him a high-powered incentive to improve the stock price Bear Stearns had to give him a substantial amount of money.

The third issue arises from the fact that often CEOs are awarded stock in order to align their incentives with those of the shareholders, but they are restricted from selling those shares. This means that any income is just on paper, and it is not as real as cash. Does that reduce the incentives in any way? The answer is probably not. First, the CEOs can certainly borrow against the stockholdings. Second, many CEOs get that position near the ends of their careers, and they would be able to sell the shares after retirement. The fact that the income in only on paper is also advantageous to the CEO because he does not have to pay taxes on the gains or losses until he actually sells the shares.

3. STOCKS VS. STOCK OPTIONS

A stock option is the right to buy a share of the stock for a pre-specified price during a designated time period. The pre-specified price is called the **exercise price**, and an option of this form (the right to buy a share of stock) is commonly known as a **call option**. The opposite kind of option is a **put option**, and it is the right to *sell* a share of stock for a pre-specified price during a designated time period. We will only look at call options. To see how a call option works, suppose that the CEO of a company has the right to buy one million shares of stock for an exercise price of $40. If the current stock price is $45, he can exercise his options and buy one million shares for $40 dollars each and then turn around and sell the shares on the open market for $45 each. He makes a profit of $5 per share for a total of $5 million. So, call options allow the CEO to make a profit when the actual share price is higher than the exercise price.

What if the stock price falls below the exercise price? For example, suppose that the stock currently sells for $35 per share. It no longer makes sense for the CEO to exercise his options because doing so would entail buying shares of stock for $40 each,

which is $5 more than he could get them for on the open market. So, when the current share price is below the exercise price, there is no value to exercising options.

To see the difference between owning stock and having an option to buy the stock, suppose that the current stock price is $40 per share, and compare a CEO who owns one million shares to one who has options to buy a million shares at an exercise price of $40. If the stock price rises by $1 per share, the CEO with stock gains $1 million. Under the same circumstances, the CEO with the options can exercise them to buy a million shares at $40 each and then sell them for $41 each, earning a profit of $1 million. So, the CEO makes the same gain whether he owns stock initially worth $40 per share or owns options to buy the stock at a $40 per share exercise price.

Now look at what happens if, instead of rising by $1, the share price falls by $1 from $40 down to $39. The CEO who owns stock now has $39 million in stock instead of the original $40 million, so the drop in the share price causes him to lose $1 million. The CEO with the options, however, would choose not to exercise them because the share price is lower than the exercise price. So, the CEO with the call options loses nothing.

One of the primary differences between stock and stock options is that stock options limit the downside risk faced by the owner. When the CEO owned the stock valued at $40 per share, an increase in the stock price led to a gain but a decrease in the price led to a loss. When the CEO owned options with a $40 exercise price, an increase in the stock price led to a gain but a decrease in the price did not lead to a loss. So, stock options still provide a CEO with the incentive to take actions that make the share price rise, but they prevent the CEO's income from becoming negative.

How much the downside risk is limited depends on where the exercise price is relative to the current stock price. Suppose again that the current stock price is $40, but that the CEO has options to buy one million shares at an exercise price of $38. If he exercises these options he would be able to earn a $2 per share profit for a total of $2 million. But, if the share price falls by $1 from $40 down to $39, exercising the options would only result in a $1 per share profit, and the CEO's wealth would fall by $1 million relative to what it was before the price drop. If the share price fell by another dollar down to $38, the CEO's wealth would fall by another $1 million. From there, though, the CEO cannot suffer any additional losses. If the share price falls to $37, he would choose not to exercise his options. The most the CEO can lose is $2 million. In general, the most the CEO can lose is the difference between the current share price and the exercise price multiplied by the number of shares he can buy with his options.

One of the issues identified in Section 2 concerning giving the CEO shares of stock to align his interests with those of the shareholders was that giving him stock makes his income very risky. Giving him options instead reduces the risk, specifically the downside risk, and so options provide a solution to this problem. A second issue raised

in Section 2 was the expense involved in giving the CEO stock. Do options reduce this expense?

Suppose that the firm wants to construct the CEO's compensation package so that he makes $1 million every time the share price rises by one dollar. Further assume that the current share price is $40. If the firm wants to achieve its compensation goal by awarding the CEO a million shares of stock, the firm would end up paying the CEO $40 million. Now look at what happens if the firm instead achieves its compensation goal by awarding the CEO a million stock options with an exercise price of $40. Since there is no reason for the CEO to exercise the options, the firm pays nothing at the time it awards the option. It only has to make a payment to the CEO if the stock price actually rises.

To see why, suppose that the stock price rises by $2 and the CEO decides to cash out by exercising his options. The current stock price is $42, but the firm has to sell the stock to the CEO for $40 per share. This means that the firm loses $2 per option that the CEO exercises, for a total of $2 million. At the same time, the CEO makes $2 million by buying a million shares for $40 each and then selling them for $42 each. Essentially, then, when the CEO exercises his option the firm pays him $2 million. So, when the firm uses options to align the CEO's interests with the shareholders', the firm only makes a payment to the CEO when he exercises the options, and then only an amount equal to the CEO's profit on the transaction. Options are much cheaper for the firm than shares of stock.

Giving the CEO options solve both of the problems presented by giving him stock. It makes his income less risky and it is cheaper for the firm. It would seem, then, that awarding options is definitely better for the firm than awarding stock, but we have not yet considered all of the issues. Remember that the reason for awarding stock in the first place was to get the CEO to make decisions that would increase the firm's share price. It turns out that awarding options can lead the CEO to make decisions that hurt the share price instead of improving it.

Once again suppose that the current share price is $40, and this time the CEO has options to buy a million shares for $45 each. His options are currently "out of the money," and unless the share price rises above $45 exercising the options has no value. A vice president comes to him with a proposal for a new project, garlic cola. He reasons that since flavored colas are all the rage, garlic cola could be the next big thing. If the project succeeds, the share price will rise to $48. If it fails, though, the share price will fall to $30. The vice president assesses the probability that garlic cola succeeds at 20%.

What will the CEO do? Will he green light the garlic cola project or will he shut it down? The shareholders would hope that he would shut it down. To find the expected impact of the garlic cola project, look at the expected value of the share price if the project goes forward:

$$\text{Expected share price} = (0.2)(\$48) + (0.8)(\$30) = \$33.60.$$

If the garlic cola project goes forward the expected share price will drop by $6.40, from $40 down to $33.60.

Now look at the CEO's incentives. If the garlic cola project succeeds the share price rises to $48. The CEO's options have an exercise price of $45, so if the project succeeds his options are worth $3 million. If it fails his options are out of the money. But, if he does nothing his options are out of the money, too. The only way to get a payoff from his options is to green light the garlic cola project and hope it succeeds. From his perspective, the expected payoff from the garlic cola project is

$$\text{CEO's expected payoff} = (0.2)(\$3{,}000{,}000) = \$600{,}000.$$

Because of the options, it is in the CEO's best interest to adopt the garlic cola project even though it is not in the best interests of the shareholders.

Stock options do not perfectly align the CEO's and the shareholders' interests. The reason is that the CEO's losses are limited by the difference between the current price and the exercise price, while the shareholders can lose their entire investment in the company. In the above example, the CEO approved a project that had considerable downside risk for the shareholders but none for the CEO, because his exercise price was higher than the prevailing share price.

The higher the option's exercise price, the less downside risk the CEO faces. Conversely, the lower the exercise price, the more downside risk the CEO faces, and the more closely his interests are aligned with the shareholders'. But, the lower the exercise price, the more the firm must spend when the CEO exercises the options. And, since the lower exercise price makes the CEO's income riskier, the more the firm must pay the CEO to compensate him for this risk. At the limit, when the exercise price is zero the option is identical to a share of stock.

Obviously the firm faces some important tradeoffs when constructing the CEO's compensation package. The compensation packages for the five CEOs profiled in Section 1 showed that firms use a mixture of stock and options. In 1999, 94% of the companies listed in the S&P 500 granted stock options to their top executives. So, a large majority of the firms choose options either instead of or in addition to stock in their CEO's compensation plans. Of those options, 94% of them set the exercise price equal to the prevailing share price on the day the options were granted. So, almost all of the options left the CEO heavily shielded from downside risk. The options were also a substantial part of the compensation package, accounting for 47% of total CEO pay.

4. INSULATING CEOS FROM BROAD MARKET SWINGS

When a CEO is compensated using options or stock, his income can fluctuate for two reasons. First, when his firm performs better or worse its stock price goes up or down, and this in turn affects his pay. In fact, these fluctuations are what make the compensation package work, since his pay changes in the same direction as the value of the shareholders' stock. The second type of fluctuation is caused by the stock market. Stock prices often move together because of general economic conditions or because of important national or international events. For example, there have been several episodes in which the Dow Jones Industrial Average fell by 400 points or more in a single day, and virtually all stocks posted substantial losses on those days. Needless to say, individual CEOs have little control over such events, but their pay fell drastically because of those events. This source of income risk, since it is outside of the CEO's control, does neither the firm nor the CEO any good and, in fact, CEOs dislike this sort of risk.

When someone dislikes risk, they must be compensated for bearing income risk. Otherwise, they would take a job somewhere else where the pay is subject to less risk. We saw this in Chapter 6 in regard to piece rates. CEOs are risk averse just like (nearly) everyone else, and so if their pay is risky, it must also be higher on average to compensate them for bearing the income risk. In fact, it has been estimated that, on average, CEO pay is 40% higher than it would be if this risk could be avoided.

Downward movements in the stock market are not the only problem. When the stock market does well all CEOs are paid more. This leads to the often unpalatable circumstance in which a firm can do very poorly and be forced to lay off workers but, because of the strength of the market, the CEO gets paid more than ever before.

Firms do not take steps to insulate their CEOs from market-wide fluctuations, although they could. To see how, first note that when a CEO owns a substantial amount of firm stock, his pay is positively related to the performance of the stock market as a whole. To balance this out, his pay should have another component that is negatively related to the performance of the market. A way to do this would be to make his pay go down when the stock prices of competing firms goes up. Such a scheme would accomplish two things. First, if stocks rise as a whole, the firm's stock and its competitors' stocks rise together. The CEO's pay would rise because of the increase in his own stock's price, but it would decrease because of the increase in his competitors' stock prices. If the pay scheme was designed correctly, the increase and decrease would cancel each other out, and the CEO's pay would be insulated from the broad market increase.

The same thing would happen if the market went down. The firm's stock price would fall, but so would the competitors' stock prices. The drop in the firm's price would cause the CEO's pay to fall, but the drop in the competitors' prices would cause

his pay to rise. If the two cancel each other out, he is insulated from broad market downturns.

Making pay depend negatively on the price of the *competitors'* stock does something extra, though. Sometimes events occur which help or hurt all of the firms in a particular industry. For example, a war helps all defense industry firms, and oil companies are helped when OPEC cuts back production so that oil prices rise. Defense industry CEOs do not typically start wars, though, and oil company executives have little influence over OPEC ministers. Following the September 11 attacks the airline industry suffered a major drop in passengers, and their CEOs should not be punished for an event that was beyond their control. When something happens that affects the entire industry, it causes both the firm's stock price and its competitors' stock prices to change in the same direction. If the CEO's pay depends negatively on the competitors' stock prices, he is insulated from the stock fluctuations resulting from an event over which he has no control.

Finally, this scheme makes the CEO compete with the other firms in the industry more seriously. If the CEO does something positive for his firm that makes his competitors' stock prices fall, such as taking away market share, he is rewarded for that. Similarly, if a competitor takes away his market share, he is punished.

DO CEOS BENEFIT FROM LAYING OFF WORKERS?

A 2002 *Business Week* article touched off a public outcry when it reported that raises for the CEOs at the fifty companies with the most layoffs the previous year averaged 44%, while average CEO pay rose only 6% over the same period. It would seem that CEOs benefit at the expense of their workers. Does this really happen?

Kevin F. Hallock of the University of Illinois studied this problem.* Using data on the 550 largest firms from 1987 to 1995, he found that firms that laid off workers the previous year do pay their CEOs more and give larger raises. However, after controlling for firm size and 781 other firm characteristics, he found that CEO raises actually decline slightly following layoffs.

How do we reconcile what was reported in *Business Week* with Hallock's research findings? The 50 firms with the most layoffs also tend to be large firms, since large firms have more workers to lay off. Large firms also tend to pay their CEOs more. So, the raises reported in the *Business Week* report may be better explained by factors other than layoffs.

* Kevin F. Hallock, "Layoffs, Top Executive Pay, and Firm Performance," *American Economic Review* 88, September 1998, pp. 711-723.

5. WHY ARE CEOS PAID SO MUCH?

This chapter set out to address two questions. The first was why CEOs are paid the way they are, specifically using shares of stock and stock options. We have determined that both of these can be used to align the CEO's and the shareholders' interests, but that the two assets have different strengths and weaknesses that lead some firms to choose more of one and some to choose more of the other. Shares of stock are very expensive for the firm and make the CEO's income risky. Options reduce both the expense and the risk, but they can lead CEOs to take on risky projects that are not in the best interest of the firms.

The second question for this chapter is why CEOs are paid so much. There are several reasons. First, in order to align their interests with those of the shareholders, the CEO must have enough of a stake in the firm that changes in share prices significantly impact the CEO's wealth. Since CEOs tend to be wealthy and successful business people, this stake has to be large, which means that the firm has to give them a large amount of stock or a large number of options. That said, the amounts typically given to the CEOs at the largest U.S. firms tend to be much larger than needed to align their incentives with those of the stockholders.

The second reason that CEOs are paid so much is that the pay schemes make their incomes risky, and they must be compensated for bearing that risk. Studies have estimated that average CEO pay for Fortune 500 companies is 40% higher than it would be if all of the compensation came in the form of cash. In other words, CEOs get a 40% premium for bearing risk.

Third, every year *Forbes* identifies the 500 highest-paid corporate executives, and the names at the top change from year to year. The ones with the highest incomes for that year are the ones who exercised their stock options and cashed in on the prior successful performance of the company. These earnings were accumulated over time on paper, but they were realized by the CEO all at once. So, the incomes of the highest-paid CEOs tends to be exaggerated. On the other hand, the people at the bottom of the list are the ones who did not exercise their options, and so their compensation may be understated.

Fourth, the CEOs are at the top of the corporate ladder, and if the firm uses promotion tournaments to motivate workers, the CEO's pay motivates everyone else in the firm. Remember from Chapter 9 that because of the option value of a promotion, pay increases should get larger the higher up the promotion ladder you go. The CEO's high salary motivates people one level down to work hard in an effort to become CEO and earn that high salary. The people in the level below that work hard in part so that they can move up a level and then compete for the high-paying CEO position. This works far down the corporate ladder, and if CEO pay is sufficiently high, everyone works hard for the chance, however remote, to move all the way up the ladder and become CEO.

Finally, CEO pay is high because of labor market competition for CEOs. It is a simple matter to find out who runs a corporation, how that corporation has performed during that individual's tenure as CEO, and how much he is paid. So, it is a simple matter to determine whether or not a CEO is worth stealing. To keep their CEO's from being raided by other firms, corporations inflate their CEO's pay in order to make them too expensive to raid.

The labor market for CEOs is much like the labor market for baseball players, and players' compensation packages are also very large. Every player has a publicly-available performance record, just like CEOs do. Teams are able to find out how much a player is being paid, often because it is reported in the media, just like firms are able to find out how much other CEOs are paid. A player's salary can rise either because his current team raises his salary in order to preempt a bidding war, or because other teams enter into a bidding war for his salary. A CEO's salary can be high either because his current firm pays him a large amount to keep other firms from hiring him, or because another firm outbids his current firm.

PROBLEMS

1. What tradeoffs does a firm face when trying to decide whether to award its CEO stock or stock options?

2. Explain why a stock option to buy one share of stock at an exercise price of $0 is exactly the same as a share of stock.

3. An executive has 200 stock options with an exercise price of $25. He owns no stock in the company. The current share price is $30. The executive can choose whether or not to undertake a project which has a 60% chance of increasing the stock price by 7 and a 40% chance of decreasing it by 14.

   a. What is the expected change in the share price?
   b. What is the expected change in the value of the executive's options?
   c. Are the interests of the shareholders and the executive aligned in this case?

4. An executive has 500,000 stock options with an exercise price of $10. He owns no stock in the company. The current share price is $14. He can choose whether or not to undertake a project which has a 20% chance of increasing the stock price by $8, a 40% chance of decreasing it by $1, and a 40% chance of decreasing it by $7.

   a. What is the expected change in the share price?
   b. What is the expected change in the value of the executive's options?
   c. Are the interests of the shareholders and the executive aligned in this case?

CHAPTER 14
PERFORMANCE EVALUATION

The primary lesson of Chapter 4 was that if a firm wants its employees to perform, it must tie pay to performance. We then went on to investigate piece rates, tournaments, efficiency wages, and team compensation as ways to tie pay to performance. In order to pay for performance, though, it is necessary to measure performance. When the firm uses efficiency wages and tournaments, pay is not based strictly on output, and so managers have some discretion when evaluating performance. This chapter looks at the process by which managers evaluate the performance of their employees.

1. A TALE OF TWO FIRMS

In the 1970s two researchers, one at Harvard and one at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, were given access to personnel records for virtually all of the managers at two large manufacturing companies.[1] These records contained information about employees' positions, pay, performance evaluations, and history with the company along with demographic information. Company A provided records for 4,788 managers and Company B provided records for 2,841.

This chapter is about performance evaluation, so let's look at the performance evaluations at the two companies. Company A asked supervisors to place their workers into one of four categories: outstanding, good, acceptable, and not acceptable. Company B's rating system had six categories, and the supervisor's instructions are below:

> Now that you have completed your analysis of his strengths and opportunities for improvement, check the box opposite the paragraph that most nearly describes your evaluation of his overall performance:
>
> □ EXCELLENT: Consistently exceeds expected performance in accomplishing objectives and position requirements.
>
> □ SUPERIOR: Exceeds expectations and demonstrates high level performance in accomplishing objectives and position requirements.

[1] James T. Medoff and Katharine G. Abraham, "Experience, Performance, and Earnings," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 95, 1980, 703-736.

□ GOOD: Accomplishes objectives and position requirements as originally anticipated and in a manner resulting in expected performance.

□ SATISFACTORY: Acceptable performance of position requirements with indication of ability for improvement.

□ MINIMUM ACCEPTABLE: Probationary performance level for employees in same position for more than twelve months, requiring consultation with the employee and a specified plan for improvement within a designated period of time.

□ UNACCEPTABLE: Unsatisfactory. Does not perform at an acceptable level of accomplishment.

Table 14.1 shows the results of the ratings forms in the two companies. The first column lists the category, the second lists the percentage of employees rated in that category, and the third column shows the average pay differential between employees in the stated category and employees in the lowest category in which people were actually rated.

TABLE 14.1
Performance ratings at two large companies

Performance rating	Percent of employees receiving rating	Percentage salary premium relative to lowest nonempty rating
Company A (4,788 managers)		
Outstanding	20.2	7.8
Good	74.3	5.3
Acceptable	5.3	1.4
Not acceptable	0.2	–
Company B (2,841 managers)		
Excellent	3.8	6.2
Superior	58.4	3.6
Good	36.6	1.8
Satisfactory	1.2	–
Minimum acceptable	0	–
Unacceptable	0	–

Two important patterns emerge from Table 14.1. First, almost everyone is rated in the top half of the ranking categories. At Company A 94.5% of managers are rated either outstanding or good, and at Company B 98.8% of managers are rated in the top three categories. What is more, no one out of the 2,841 managers at Company B was rated either minimum acceptable or unacceptable. The second pattern is that higher ratings have little effect on pay. At Company A managers receiving the top rating of outstanding earned only 7.8% more on average than managers receiving the bottom

rating of not acceptable. At Company B no one received the bottom two ratings, but a manager rated excellent earned only 6.2% more on average than a manager rated satisfactory, the lowest rating any manager received.

This raises several questions that we will address in this chapter. Why are the ratings so high? Why don't ratings have much impact on pay? Is there a better way to evaluate performance?

2. THE SUPERVISOR'S PROBLEM

The task a supervisor faces when evaluating an employee's performance is determining what rating to give the employee. Another way to phrase the problem is how high a rating to give the employee. Since this is a "how much" question, the answer relies on marginal analysis. To explore the determinants of the optimal rating level for the supervisor, then, we must analyze the costs and benefits of the different rating levels.

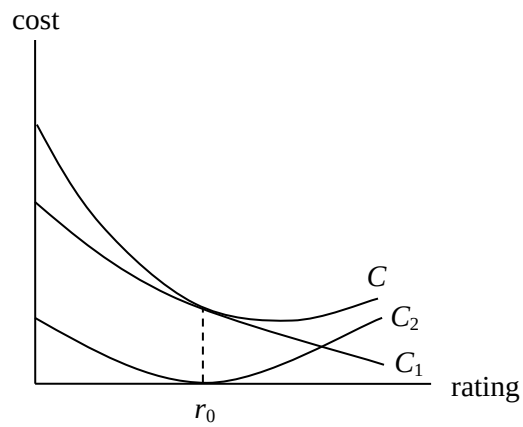
From the firm's perspective, this is a simple problem. The supervisor should assign the rating that most closely reflects the employee's performance, and the employee's pay should then be tied to this performance rating. From the supervisor's perspective, though, it is not nearly so simple. The supervisor faces costs and benefits that differ from those faced by the firm.

Look at costs first. From the supervisor's point of view, the biggest cost associated with a bad rating is psychic. Giving a bad rating makes the supervisor feel guilty, and it also makes her worry about how the employee will react. A second cost is the supervisor's time cost if the employee meets with her to complain about the bad rating. The worse the rating, the higher the costs. There may also be psychic costs associated with giving a rating that is too high, because the supervisor may feel guilty about shirking her responsibility to give a bad rating.

A cost curve is constructed in Figure 14.1. The horizontal axis shows the rating, with a higher rating being better from the employee's perspective. The vertical axis shows the supervisor's cost. The rating that most closely reflects the employee's performance is denoted r_0. The cost curve is constructed from two component curves. The first curve, labeled C_1, measures the cost from feeling guilty about giving a low rating and the costs associated with dealing with an unhappy or angry employee. It falls throughout the range because higher ratings make the employee happier. The second curve, labeled C_2, measures the cost from feeling guilty about giving the employee an inaccurate rating. That cost is zero when the rating is r_0, and it rises to both sides of r_0. The overall cost curve is labeled C, and it is the vertical sum of the two curves. Note that the minimum point of the cost curve C is to the right of the most accurate rating, r_0, so that if the supervisor is only interested in minimizing costs, she would give the employee a higher rating than he deserves.

FIGURE 14.1

An accurate rating of the employee would be r_0. The curve C_1 is the cost of giving the employee a low rating, and these costs arise because of employee complaints and the supervisor's feelings of guilt. The curve C_2 is the cost from giving the employee an inaccurate rating. This cost is zero when the rating is r_0. The curve C is the vertical sum of the two component curves, and it reaches a minimum to the right of r_0.



A benefit curve is constructed in Figure 14.2. The horizontal axis is the same as before, with movements to the right corresponding to higher ratings that the employee likes better, and the vertical axis measures the benefit to the supervisor. The benefit curve is upward sloping throughout. There are two reasons for this. First, the supervisor might be evaluated by her own supervisor on the basis of how well her employees do. Giving her own employees high ratings helps her get a high rating herself. Second, the supervisor has to compete for his budget with the other supervisors. Having poorly-performing employees hurts her in this budget competition, and so she benefits from giving high ratings to her employees.

Figure 14.2 also shows the cost and benefit curves together. The optimal rating is the point at which the benefit curve is farthest above the cost curve, and it is denoted r^*. It is no accident that $r^* > r_0$, so that the supervisor gives the employee a higher rating than he deserves. The supervisor's costs are high and her benefits are low when she gives a low rating, while her costs are low and her benefits are high when she gives a high rating. Of course she is going to give a high rating. We get **rating inflation** – all employees receive higher ratings than they deserve.

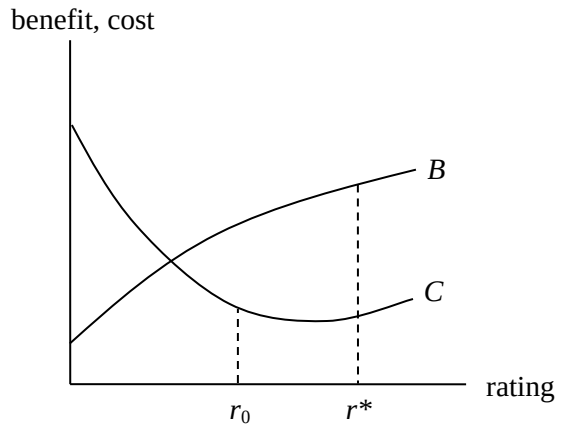
The high ratings in Table 14.1 reflect these considerations, that the supervisor bears the psychic and time costs of giving bad ratings and she benefits from giving high ratings because they both enable her to compete for her budget more effectively and it reflects well on her to have highly-rated employees. There is one more reason why ratings might be high and it has nothing to do with the supervisor's decision. Poor performers may not survive very long at the management level, so it may be that all of

the managers who survive the weeding-out process are good. All of these reasons together explain why all of the ratings are in the top half.

FIGURE 14.2

The supervisor benefits from giving an employee a higher rating because better employees reflect well on the supervisor.

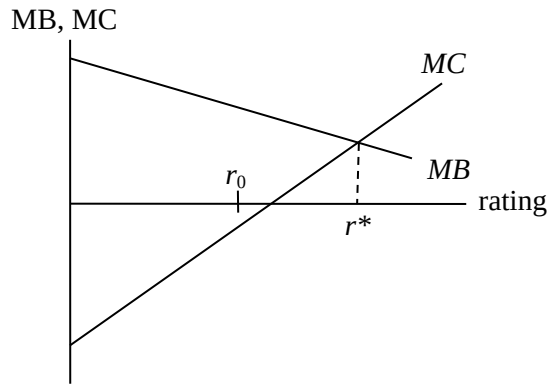
The supervisor chooses the rating where the benefit curve is the farthest above the cost curve, which is at point r^*. Since $r^* > r_0$, the supervisor gives the employee a higher rating than he deserves.



It is useful to draw the marginal benefit/marginal cost diagram that corresponds to Figure 14.2. The cost curve derived in Figure 14.1 is unusual in that it is downward sloping for much of the range. Since the marginal cost curve measures the slope of the cost curve, the marginal cost curve is negative when the cost curve is downward-sloping. The marginal cost curve is also upward-sloping since the cost curve becomes steeper (or less negatively steep) as the rating grow. The resulting curve is shown in Figure 14.3. The benefit curve flattens out as the rating grows, so the marginal benefit curve is downward-sloping.

FIGURE 14.3

The marginal cost curve starts off negative because the cost curve is downward-sloping. It becomes positive somewhere past r_0. The optimal point is at r^*, where *MB* and *MC* cross.



The optimal rating r^* is found where the marginal cost and marginal benefit curves cross. The diagram shows clearly why r^* must be greater than r_0, the most accurate rating. At r_0, the marginal cost curve is negative. Since the evaluator gets some positive benefit from increasing the rating, the marginal benefit is positive. The two curves cannot possibly cross where the MC curve is negative. The MC curve does not become positive until the rating is well above r_0, and we get rating inflation.

HOW MANY RATING CATEGORIES SHOULD THERE BE?

It is common for firms to use performance evaluation systems with either three, four, or five rating categories. Each system has its own advantages and disadvantages. Supervisors find it easier to categorize a worker into one of three categories than to categorize him into one of five categories, but a five-category system provides more information than a three-category system.

There is a subtler issue, however. In a three-category system, the middle category is likely to correspond to expected performance. In a five-category system, the middle category is likely to be thought of as a grade of "C," whereas everybody expects an "A" or a "B." So, the middle category is held in much lower regard in a five-category system than in a three-category system. A four-category system does not have a middle category, which tends to push more people into the top half.

3. THE WORKER'S PROBLEM

The supervisor benefits from giving workers high ratings because those high ratings both reflect well on her own performance and help her in budget competitions.

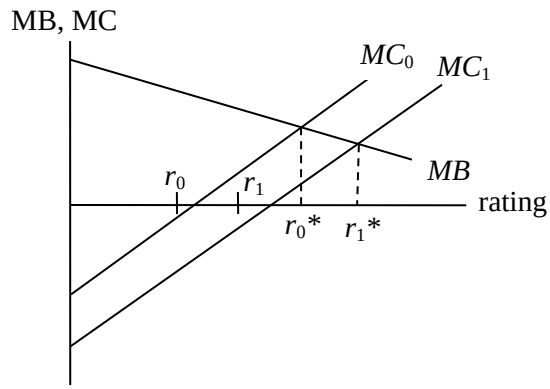
The supervisor's costs associated with ratings are determined by how far that rating is from what the worker really deserves, by how guilty she feels about the rating, and how costly it is to deal with the worker's complaints. The worker has no effect on the supervisor's benefits, but he can affect the costs.

The worker can affect the supervisor's costs in three ways. First, he can work harder so that he deserves a higher rating. Second, he can take actions to make the supervisor feel guiltier about a bad rating. Third, he can complain more. All three of these have the same effect on the marginal cost curve in Figure 14.4.

FIGURE 14.4

When the employee works harder, the deserved rating increases from r_0 to r_1 and the marginal cost curve shifts rightward from MC_0 to MC_1. The supervisor then gives a higher rating, r_1* instead of r_0*.

When the worker takes actions that makes the supervisor feel guiltier or when he complains more, the marginal cost curve shifts downward and the supervisor gives him a higher rating.



Working harder increases r_0, the rating the worker deserves. This shifts the MC curve to the right, as in Figure 14.4. The reason is that the guilt the supervisor experiences from giving too high a rating is determined by the difference between the rating actually given and the one that is deserved. When the deserved rating increases, shifting the MC curve to the right by that change preserves the difference between the actual and deserved ratings. For example, suppose that the supervisor's marginal cost is 20 if the difference between the actual and deserved ratings is 0.5, and her marginal cost is 30 if the difference between the actual and deserved ratings is 1.0. If the worker deserves a rating of 4 and the supervisor gives him a rating of 5, the difference between the actual and deserved ratings is 1.0, and the supervisor's marginal cost is 30. If the worker exerts more effort and his deserved rating rises to 4.5, then when the supervisor gives him a rating of 5 the difference between the actual and deserved ratings falls to 0.5, and the supervisor's marginal cost falls to 20. If the supervisor gives him a rating of 5.5,

the supervisor's marginal cost returns to 30. So, if the deserved rating increases by some amount, and the actual rating increases by that same amount, the supervisor's marginal cost stays the same. This is the idea behind shifting the MC curve to the right.

In the figure, when the deserved rating rises from r_0 to r_1, the supervisor's marginal cost curve shifts rightward from MC_0 to MC_1, which leads the supervisor to give the worker a higher rating. This is as it should be. Better performance should yield a higher performance evaluation, and the analysis shows that it does.

Working harder is not the only way to get a higher rating, though. The worker can affect how guilty the supervisor feels. For example, he can keep the supervisor apprised of all of his upcoming expenses, like telling the supervisor about badly needed braces for the kids or about impending college expenses. These increased feelings of guilt make it *less* costly for the supervisor to give the worker a *higher* rating, and the marginal cost curve shifts downward. We get exactly the case pictured in Figure 14.4, and making the supervisor feel guiltier leads to higher ratings.

Finally, the worker can complain about bad performance ratings. If the supervisor knows that he will complain, he can expect bad ratings to be more costly for him. This again makes it less costly for the supervisor to give the worker a higher rating, and again the marginal cost curve falls. Complaining pays off in the form of higher performance ratings.

This analysis helps to explain why employees with high ratings are not paid much more than employees with low ratings. First, rating inflation compacts the ratings into the top half, which does not provide much of a basis for pay differences. Second, ratings reflect not only the worker's performance but also his tendency to complain. Because of this ratings are not accurate reflections of performance, and we learned in earlier chapters that when performance cannot be measured accurately, only a small part of pay should be based on performance.

4. FORCED RATING DISTRIBUTIONS

Many companies use a performance rating system like those described above, but with one extra requirement: Supervisors must place a certain percentage of their employees in each rating category. The underlying idea is that worker performance should naturally approximate a bell-shaped curve, and so the supervisor should turn in a set of ratings that matches this natural tendency. In a five-category system, then, the supervisor might be forced to place 10% in the top category, 25% in the second category, 30% in the third, 25% in the fourth, and 10% in the bottom category. Some companies actually do much more than this. They rank all employees company-wide and use this ranking to fire the bottom employees.

These systems are easy to understand with a comparison to grading in a class. A forced rating system would require a professor to award A's to 10% of the class, B's to

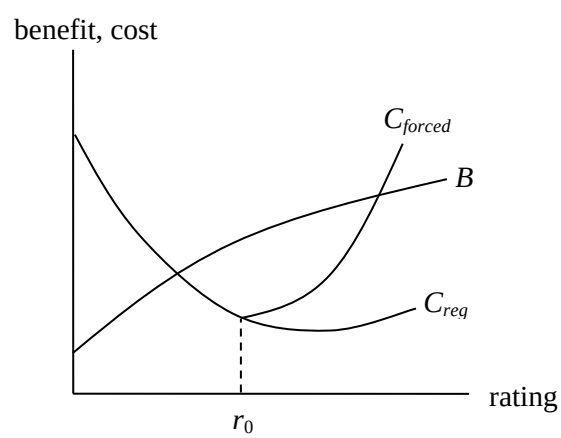
25% of the class, C's to 30%, D's to 25%, and F's to 10%. Students, of course, would not like this, especially since future employers are unlikely to view C's, D's, and F's as good grades. Why, then, would a department require its professors to use such a system? One reason would be to encourage students at the bottom to seek a different major. A better reason would be to get students to work harder so that they can earn those comparatively rare A's and B's.

Firms that use forced rating distributions do so in the belief that they will encourage workers to become more productive. Let's see whether or not the theory backs up this belief. From the supervisor's point of view, the biggest difference between a normal rating system and a forced rating system is that in the forced rating system there is an opportunity cost associated with giving a high rating. If she gives some worker a higher rating than he deserves, she must give some other worker a lower rating than deserved to make up for it. This changes the shape of the cost curves faced by the supervisor.

The cost curve generated by a forced rating system is no different for ratings below the deserved ranking, but it is steeper for ratings above the deserved rating, as shown by Figure 14.5. The higher cost reflects the increased opportunity cost of giving the high rating to the worker who deserves rating r_0. With the normal rating system, there is no opportunity cost to giving the high rating to this worker since no constraint is placed on the ratings given to other workers. With the forced system, though, giving this worker a high rating means giving a low rating to someone more deserving, and the supervisor would experience guilt about that and would also have to deal with hard-to-defend complaints from the other worker.

FIGURE 14.5

Under a normal rating system, the supervisor's cost function is given by C_{reg}, and under a forced rating system, the supervisor's cost function is given by C_{forced}. The two coincide when the rating is below the deserved rating r_0, but the costs are higher under the forced rating system when the rating is above r_0.



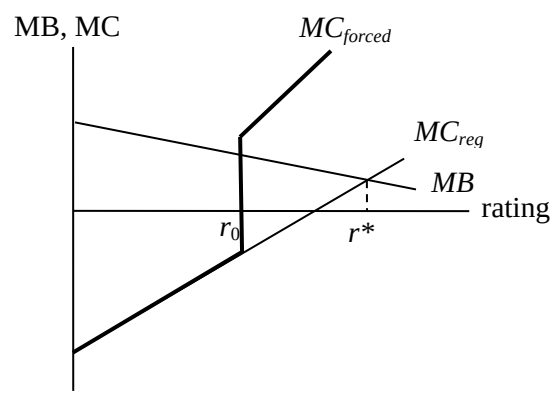
The marginal cost curve for a supervisor in a forced rating system is shown in Figure 14.6. Since the cost curve switches from being downward-sloping at ratings below r_0 to being upward-sloping at ratings above r_0, the marginal cost curve switches from being below zero to being above zero at r_0. The optimal rating, then, is r_0, and the forced rating system provides an incentive for the supervisor to rate the worker accurately.

Complaining or making the supervisor feel guilty are not as effective under a forced rating system. The reason is that if the supervisor decides to give someone a higher rating than they deserve, for whatever reason, she must give someone else a lower rating than they deserve, leading to more complaints and more guilty feelings. The most effective way for a worker to get a higher rating, then, is to work harder and deserve a higher rating. This justifies companies' rationale for using the forced rating system – they provide an incentive for workers to work harder.

FIGURE 14.6

The marginal cost curve is identical under both rating systems when $r < r_0$. Above r_0 the forced ranking system has positive marginal cost because the cost curve is upward-sloping. Consequently, at r_0 the marginal cost curve jumps from being negative to being positive.

The optimal rating under the regular system is r^*. Under the forced rating system, the optimal rating is r_0, the deserved rating, since that is where the marginal benefit and marginal cost curves intersect.



Why, then, don't all firms used the force rating system? Probably because neither the workers nor the supervisors like it. Workers do not like it for the same reasons students would not like taking a class where 10% of the students had to fail. This might affect worker morale and increase turnover, both of which are costly for the firm. Supervisors do not like it because it is very hard on them, since they must make very

close calls on all of the employees that are close to the borderline. There is a more subtle reason that may turn out to be even more important. In 2000, the Ford Motor Company instituted a forced rating system that led to two class-action lawsuits alleging discrimination on the basis of age, gender and race. Employees often disagree with their ratings, and members of protected classes can claim that their low ratings were the result of discrimination. Since ratings are necessarily subjective, it is difficult for a company to defend against these claims. In 2002, Ford settled the suits for $10.5 million and dropped the forced rating system. Ford is not alone in this predicament, as Conoco, Goodyear, and Microsoft have also faced suits based on forced rating systems.

5. GENERAL LESSONS

Performance evaluations tend to display rating inflation, the tendency for ratings to be higher than the workers deserve. There is one simple and basic cause for this. The supervisor giving the ratings bears the costs of giving low ratings, and the costs of giving bad ratings are higher than the costs of giving good ratings. Since there are no benefits to giving bad ratings, a simple cost-benefit analysis shows that supervisors give employees higher ratings than they deserve.

PROBLEMS

1. List the costs to a supervisor associated with giving a worker a lower rating than he deserves.

2. List the costs to a supervisor associated with giving a worker a higher rating than he deserves.

3. List the benefits to a supervisor from increasing a worker's rating.

4. Suppose that there are two equally-productive workers but that worker 1 complains and worker 2 does not. Show graphically which worker receives a higher performance rating.

5. Draw a graph similar to that in Figure 14.1 showing the cost curve of a manager whose only concern is not giving a worker a rating that is higher than he deserves.

CHAPTER 15
ADVERSE SELECTION

Up to this point the book has been about motivating workers to exert effort. We now turn attention to a different topic – identifying and hiring workers. We begin with the problem of identifying workers. For many jobs and many firms, the hiring process consists of an application, a short interview, and perhaps contacting references. This process does not reveal a whole lot about whether or not the prospective employee will be particularly adept in the job and environment under consideration. As demonstrated in this chapter, this lack of information can cause serious problems.

1. TRYING TO HIRE THE BEST WORKERS

Suppose that there are two types of workers, high-productivity ones and low-productivity ones. A high-productivity worker generates $25,000 in net revenue for the firm, and a low-productivity worker generates only $18,000 in net revenue. The next best alternative employer for both workers pays $20,000. How should the firm go about hiring a worker?

The firm can attract high-productivity workers by offering them more than $20,000. As long as the pay is less than $25,000, hiring the high-productivity worker is profitable. It is not profitable, though, to hire a low-productivity worker, since the firm would have to pay at least $20,000 to beat out the other employer, and low-productivity workers only generate $18,000 in net revenue. So, the firm would lose at least $2000 if it paid enough to attract a low-productivity worker.

The firm's hiring strategy is pretty clear. If it can tell the two types of workers apart, offer a little more than $20,000 to high-productivity workers, and offer nothing to low-productivity workers. The high-productivity workers will accept the job, and the firm will earn almost $5000 in profit from each worker hired. For example, the firm could offer a high-productivity worker $20,100, which the worker would prefer over the alternative employer, and the firm would earn $4900 in profit.

This is all fine, except that in many instances the firm cannot tell the two types of workers apart. Suppose that 25% of all workers are high-productivity and 75% are low-productivity, and the firm cannot tell the two types apart. Hiring a worker, then, is like

flipping a pair of coins and getting a high-productivity worker if they both land heads and a low-productivity worker if either coin lands tails. Now what should the firm do?

Let's try out some alternatives to see if they work. Begin with the contract offered when the firm could tell the two types apart. The firm offers workers $20,100, but, since it cannot tell the two types apart, it has to offer $20,100 to everyone. The high-productivity workers prefer this to the alternative employer, who pays only $20,000, so the high-productivity workers apply for the job. The low-productivity workers also prefer it to the alternative employer, so they apply for the job, too. Since both types apply for the job, the firm has a 25% chance of getting a high-productivity worker. The profit from lucking into a high-productivity worker is $25,000 − $20,100 = $4900, while the profit from hiring a low-productivity worker is $18,000 − $20,100 = −$2100. The firm's expected profit is (.25)($4900) + (.75)(−$2100) = −$350. The firm loses money hiring workers at this pay level.

Offering more pay does not help. If the firm offers $21,000 instead of $20,100, both types of workers still find the job attractive, so both types apply. This time the firm only earns $4000 in profit from the high-productivity workers, and loses $3000 from the low-productivity workers. Its profit is (.25)($4000) + (.75)(−$3000) = −$1250. Offering more pay results in a bigger loss for the firm.

What if the firm offers something lower, like $19,500? Since both types of workers can earn $20,000 working for the alternative employer, neither type finds the job attractive, and neither type applies. The firm hires no workers, since there are no applicants for the job, and its expected profit from hiring workers is $0. This will happen for any pay level less than $20,000.

The only alternative left is for the firm to offer $20,001. This is slightly better than the $20,000 the workers can earn somewhere else, so both types apply for the job. The firm makes $4999 off high-productivity workers, but loses $2001 on low-productivity workers. Its expected profit is (.25)($4999) + (.75)(−$2001) = −$251. The firm again loses money.

No matter what the firm does, it cannot profit from hiring a new worker. Even though a high-productivity worker generates up to $5000 in profit, any offer that gets high-productivity workers to apply gets low-productivity workers to apply, too. There are enough low-productivity workers in the market to make the firm's expected profit negative, and the best thing for the firm to do is not hire anybody.

This example illustrates a concept known as **adverse selection**, in which the bad types behave the same way as the good types in an attempt to get selected. In the process, they not only ruin the market for the good types, but for the bad types as well. One can think of a situation with adverse selection as the bad driving the good out of the market. It is clearly a cause of inefficiency. Potential gains from trade exist: the firm is willing to pay up to $25,000 for a high-productivity worker, and a high-productivity

worker is willing to accept as little as $20,000. However, the two are unable to exploit these gains from trade because of the presence of low-productivity types whom the firm cannot distinguish from the high-productivity types.

ADVERSE SELECTION AND HIRING AIRPORT SECURITY SCREENERS

Following the September 11, 2001 terrorist attacks, Congress mandated the hiring of 55,000 airport security personnel to screen passengers and baggage. They also mandated that the hiring and training be done quickly. The Transportation Security Administration waded through 1.7 million applications in a ten-month period.

Not surprisingly, some unqualified people managed to get hired. By May 2003, the TSA had fired 1,208 screeners for "suitability issues." These issues included providing false information on job applications, failing drug tests, or having criminal records, including 85 with felony convictions.

2. WHEN DOES ADVERSE SELECTION OCCUR?

The preceding section provided an example in which adverse selection occurred, that is, a situation in which the presence of bad types ruined the market for good types. In this section we use a more general setting to determine the conditions under which adverse selection occurs.

There are two types of workers. High-productivity workers generate net revenue NR_H for the firm, and low-productivity workers generate net revenue NR_L, with $NR_H > NR_L$. This inequality implies that the high-productivity workers really have higher productivity than the low-productivity workers, since they generate more net revenue for the firm than the low-productivity workers. A fraction p of the workers are high-productivity, which means that the fraction $1 - p$ of the workers are low-productivity. If the workers do not get a job with the firm in question, they work at another firm which pays them w_0. As with the example in the preceding section, both types of workers get the same pay from the alternative employer. One justification for this is that the skills that make one group more productive than the other at this firm may not be useful at the other firm, so that all workers are equally productive at the other firm.

The firm cannot distinguish between the two types of workers. Consequently, it has to offer the same wage w to all workers. We want to know if there is a value of w that is profitable, that is, if the expected profit from paying a worker w is greater than zero.

To address this issue, the first step is to determine who will apply for the job when the firm offers w. If $w < w_0$, both types of workers are better off working for the alternative employer and getting paid w_0 instead of w. So, no one applies for the job, no

one is hired, and the firm's expected profit is zero. Since we are looking for expected profits above zero, this low wage will not work.

Now suppose that $w \geq w_0$. Both types of workers now apply for the job, since both types can earn more working for the firm than they can from the alternative employer. The firm earns profit $NR_H - w$ from the high-productivity workers and profit $NR_L - w$ from the low-productivity workers. The firm's expected profit is

$$E\pi = p(NR_H - w) + (1 - p)(NR_L - w).$$

We can rearrange this expression to

$$E\pi = [pNR_H + (1 - p)NR_L] - w.$$

The term in square brackets is the expected net revenue generated by the workers. According to the equation, expected profit is expected net revenue less labor costs, which makes perfect sense.

We are looking for situations in which the firm earns positive expected profit, that is, where

$$E\pi = [pNR_H + (1 - p)NR_L] - w > 0.$$

Rearranging, this becomes

$$[pNR_H + (1 - p)NR_L] > w.$$

In order to attract workers, the firm must pay at least as much as the alternative employer, which implies that $w \geq w_0$. Adding this inequality to the above expression yields

$$[pNR_H + (1 - p)NR_L] > w \geq w_0. \qquad (*)$$

The above expression says that for the firm to earn positive profit, the expected net revenue must exceed the wage paid by the alternative employer. It is straightforward to see why this must be true. If the firm cannot distinguish between the two types of employees, but both types apply, then hiring a worker means getting a high-productivity one with probability p and a low-productivity one with probability $1 - p$. The expected net revenue earned is p times the net revenue generated by a high-productivity worker and $1 - p$ times the net revenue generated by a low-productivity worker. Expected profit is expected net revenue minus the amount paid to the worker. Since the firm must pay at least w_0 to attract an applicant, expected profit can be no greater than expected net

revenue minus w_0. Since this is the most profit the firm can possibly make, if the firm is going to earn positive profit, then the *most* it can earn must also be positive. It then follows that expected net revenue must be greater than w_0, the amount paid by the alternative employer.

Adverse selection occurs when it is impossible for the firm to earn positive profit. Since the only way for it to earn positive profit is by actually hiring a worker, if it is impossible to earn positive profit there is no incentive for the firm to hire a worker. Consequently, the market for the skills of high-productivity workers disappears. This is adverse selection.

The above analysis identifies two conditions that must hold for adverse selection to be a problem:

1. *The firm cannot know the workers' types.* This is asymmetric information. For adverse selection to be a problem, it must be the case that the employer cannot tell the different types of workers apart, but the workers know their own types. When the employer cannot tell the high-productivity workers from the low-productivity ones, the low-productivity types can apply for the same jobs as the high-productivity types.

2. *Expected net revenue must be below the wage paid by the alternative employer.* As shown by expression (*), if expected net revenue is above the wage paid by the alternative employer, the firm can earn positive profit by hiring a random worker. Adverse selection is a problem when there is no market for the skills of the high-productivity workers. If (*) holds, there is a market for their skills. So, for adverse selection to be a problem, (*) cannot hold.

CAN BASEBALL TEAMS IDENTIFY HIGH-PRODUCTIVITY PLAYERS?

The occurrence of adverse selection in the hiring process relies on the inability of employers to distinguish between high- and low-productivity workers. How reasonable is this assumption? It is difficult to find data on this issue. One place where data are abundant, though, is in baseball.

Baseball players are drafted and then assigned to a minor league team. Before they can get to the majors, they must progress through the minor league system. Also, baseball is a game of statistics, so teams should have an abundance of information about prospects before they are drafted. If the statistical information were not enough, baseball teams have platoons of scouts who watch prospects play before they are drafted.

With all of this information, if ever there was an employer who should be able to identify high-productivity employees before hiring them, it should be baseball teams. So, how well can they discern talent? According to Kirk Robinson of thebaseballpage.com, over 80% of the players drafted never make it to the majors. Furthermore, over a third of

the players drafted in the *top ten* never play a full season in the majors. Baseball teams hire a lot of low-productivity players.

3. SOLVING THE ADVERSE SELECTION PROBLEM

There are ways for the firm to solve the adverse selection problem. The problem arises in part because workers have information – about their own types – that the firm does not have. The fact that the workers know their own types turns out to be the solution. All the firm has to do is set things up so that high-productivity workers want to work there but low-productivity ones do not. Then only the high-productivity workers apply for jobs and the low-productivity workers choose to work at the alternative employer. Since there is now a market for the skills of the high-productivity workers, the adverse selection problem is avoided.

This type of solution to the adverse selection problem is called **self-selection**. Basically, the workers self-select in a way that takes care of the problem. High-productivity workers elect to apply for a job with the firm, while low-productivity workers elect not to. The workers' actions reveal their types to the firm. Since all information is revealed, there is no longer asymmetric information, and adverse selection is no longer a problem.

How, then, does the firm entice the high-productivity workers to apply and keep the low-productivity workers away, thereby revealing their information and solving the adverse selection problem? It does it through the compensation plan. If the compensation plan is constructed correctly, high-productivity workers make more there than at the alternative employer, while low-productivity workers make less. The high-productivity types then find it worthwhile to apply but the low-productivity types do not. We now describe two compensation plans that induce self-selection to solve the adverse selection problem.

PIECE RATES

When the firm uses a piece rate to compensate employees, high-productivity workers get paid more than low-productivity workers. This occurs for the simple reason that productivity refers to how much output a worker can produce, and a piece rate system pays workers based on output. Since high-productivity workers produce more output than low-productivity ones do, they get paid more than low-productivity workers do.

Suppose that high-productivity workers can produce x_H units of output and low-productivity workers can produce x_L units. Each unit of output generates net revenue of r for the firm. The workers can earn w_0 working for the alternative employer. The firm

pays the workers using the piece rate b, so that a worker who produces output x gets total compensation bx. Is there a piece rate that induces self-selection?

The answer to this question becomes pretty obvious once the question is rephrased. Is there a value of b that allows high-productivity workers to earn more than w_0 but forces low-productivity workers to earn less than w_0? If high-productivity workers earn more than they can get at the alternative employer they will choose to apply, and if low-productivity workers cannot make as much as they would at the alternative employer, they will choose not to apply.

High-productivity workers choose to apply if

$$bx_H > w_0.$$

The left-hand side is the amount that a high-productivity worker earns at this firm by producing x_H units and being paid b per unit produced. The right-hand side is the amount the worker earns at the alternative employer. The expression states that the high-productivity worker makes more at the firm than at the alternative employer.

Low-productivity workers choose not to apply if

$$bx_L < w_0.$$

The left-hand side is the amount a low-productivity worker earns at the firm, and the right-hand side is the amount he earns at the alternative employer. The expression states that he makes more at the alternative employer.

Combining and rearranging these two expressions yields the following condition for self-selection:

$$\frac{w_0}{x_H} < b < \frac{w_0}{x_L}. \qquad (**)$$

In order to induce self-selection, the piece rate b must be high enough to attract the high-productivity workers (the first inequality) but low enough to keep the low-productivity workers away (the second inequality).

The only remaining issue is whether or not a piece rate in the range identified by expression (**) is profitable for the firm. The firm earns net revenue r from each unit produced, so if a high-productivity worker produces x_H units, the firm's net revenue is rx_H. This is the most the firm is willing to pay a high-productivity worker. The least the firm can pay a high-productivity worker and still attract him away from the alternative employer is w_0. Consequently, it is profitable for the firm to attract a high-productivity

worker if $rx_H > w_0$, that is, if the most the firm is willing to pay the worker is greater than the least it has to pay the worker to make the job attractive.

All of this is illustrated in the following example. Suppose that a high-productivity worker can produce 12 units per hour and a low-productivity worker can only produce 8. Each unit generates \$6 net revenue for the firm. The alternative employer pays \$24 per hour. Can the firm use a piece rate to induce self-selection? The answer is yes, because a high-productivity worker generates \$6·12 = \$72 per hour in net revenue, and the alternative employer pays only \$24 per hour. What range of piece rates will induce self-selection? A high-productivity worker earns 12*b* per hour, and this must be greater than \$24 per hour, so *b* must be at least \$2 per unit. A low-productivity worker earns 8*b* per hour, and to keep him from applying this must be less than the \$24 he could earn from the alternative employer, so *b* must be smaller than \$3 per unit. Net revenue is \$6 per unit, so *b* must also be smaller than \$6 per unit, but if $b <$ \$3 then it must also be true that $b <$ \$6. The range of piece rates that induce self-selection is \$2 $< b <$ \$3.

PROBATIONARY CONTRACTS

A second way that the firm can induce the workers to self-select is through probationary contracts. A typical probationary contract works as follows. When a worker is hired, he must first go through a probationary period of specified length. If he passes the probationary period, he is allowed to continue working and is given a raise. If he does not pass the probationary period, he is fired and must find employment elsewhere.

We begin with an example. Suppose that a firm is hiring a worker who, if he passes the probation period, will stay with the firm for a total of three years. High productivity workers generate \$5500 per month in net revenue for the firm, and low-productivity workers generate \$3200 in net revenue per month. Three-fourths of all workers are low-productivity. The probationary period lasts for three months. During that time the worker earns \$3500 per month. If he passes the probationary period he earns \$5000 per month for the remainder of the three years. If he goes to work for the alternative employer instead, he earns \$4200 per month. High-productivity workers almost always pass the probationary phase, and low-productivity workers almost never do, but sometimes the firm makes mistakes in classifying the workers. More specifically, high-productivity workers are correctly identified, pass probation, and continue with the firm with probability 0.95, and low-productivity workers are correctly identified and fired with probability 0.95. In other words, the firm correctly classifies workers 95% of the time, and makes mistakes 5% of the time. So, there is a 5% chance that a low-productivity worker will be able to continue with the firm, and a 5% chance that a high-productivity worker will be fired.

We want to know whether or not high-productivity workers prefer this contract to working for the alternative employer, and whether or not low-productivity workers prefer the alternative employer. If so, then the contract induces the workers to self-select and solves the adverse selection problem. Begin with the decision faced by a high-productivity worker. If he works for the alternative employer, he gets $4200 per month for 36 months, or $151,200. If instead he works for the firm in question, he earns $3500 per month for the 3-month probationary period, and then with probability 0.95 he earns $5000 per month for the remaining 33 months, and with probability 0.05 he gets fired and so goes to the alternative employer for the remaining 33 months. His total expected pay is:

$$3(\$3500) + 33(0.95\cdot\$5000 + 0.05\cdot\$4200) = \$174{,}180.$$

High-productivity workers find the probationary contract worthwhile since the expected pay of $174,180 exceeds the $151,200 they could earn from the alternative employer.

A low-productivity worker also makes $151,200 at the alternative employer. If he chooses to work for the firm in question, he is paid $3500 per month for the first three months, and then with probability 0.95 he is correctly identified as a low-productivity worker and fired, in which case he works for the alternative employer for the remaining 33 months. But, there is a 5% chance that he is mistakenly identified as a high-productivity worker and can remain with the firm making $5000 per month for the remaining 33 months. His expected pay is

$$3(\$3500) + 33(0.95\cdot\$4200 + 0.05\cdot\$5000) = \$150{,}420.$$

Since his expected pay is less than he would make working for the alternative firm, the low-productivity worker does not apply for a job at this firm. The probationary contract induces self-selection, and only high-productivity workers take jobs at the firm.

This raises two subtle questions. The purpose of the probationary contract is to distinguish between the high- and low-productivity workers so that the firm can get rid of the latter. But, when the probationary contract is designed properly, only high-productivity workers take the job. Since there are no low-productivity workers to fire, the only ones who get fired are the unlucky 5% of the high-productivity workers who are incorrectly labeled as low-productivity. If the firm knows that the probationary contract is designed correctly so that no low-productivity workers apply, why does it still fire these unlucky high-productivity workers?

The answer is that it has to. If the firm assumes that any worker labeled as low-productivity must really be a high-productivity worker, no one gets fired. Then the low-productivity workers will find the job attractive, since there is now a 100% chance of

passing the probationary period. So the probationary contract would no longer serve its purpose, and workers would not be induced to self-select.

Because some of the high-productivity workers get fired, the probationary contract is not efficient. It does not always exploit all potential gains from trade. Five percent of the high-productivity workers are incorrectly labeled as low-productivity, and these workers are fired even though it is beneficial to the firm to hire them.

The second subtle question has to do with the firm's net revenue and the probationary wage. During the probationary period all workers are paid $3500 per month, but low-productivity workers generate only $3200 per month in net revenue. Why is the probationary wage so high? Doesn't the firm lose money on the low-productivity workers? The answer is that the amount of net revenue generated by low-productivity workers does not matter to the firm, since no low-productivity workers take the job, anyway. While it is true that the firm would lose money during the probationary period *if* it did hire a low-productivity worker, a properly-designed probationary contract keeps that from happening.

Whether or not a probationary contract successfully induces self-selection depends on all of the parameters of the contract. For example, if the firm had paid a probationary wage of $3800 per month instead of $3500 per month, low-productivity workers would have found the job worth taking. The extra $300 per month for the first three months raises expected pay by $900, making the low-productivity expected pay $151,320, which is greater than the $151,200 paid by the alternative employer. Similarly, if the probationary period was shorter, low-productivity workers would find the job acceptable. Cutting the probationary period in half to 1.5 months (with the $3500 probationary wage) we find that the expected pay for a low-productivity worker is

$$1.5(\$3500) + 34.5(0.95\cdot\$4200 + 0.05\cdot\$5000) = \$151{,}530,$$

which is more than he could make from the alternative firm. Finally, if the classification of workers by type becomes less accurate, low-productivity workers have a better chance of passing probation, making the job more attractive than the alternative employer. If the probability of being incorrectly labeled as high-productivity rises to 10% (with the 3-month probationary period), the worker's expected pay is

$$3(\$3500) + 33(0.90\cdot\$4200 + 0.10\cdot\$5000) = \$151{,}740.$$

For it to induce self-selection and solve the adverse selection problem, a probationary contract must be carefully designed.

The military uses a system similar to a probationary wage system to ensure that it gets recruits with the right levels of fitness and dedication. Instead of paying low wages

at the beginning, though, it sends recruits to basic training or boot camp. People who would like to join the military for the training and benefits it provides, but who are not sufficiently healthy or dedicated, will stay out of the military because they know they cannot handle boot camp. By having the harsh basic training, the armed services ensures that it does not get the "wrong" types of recruits.

4. ADVERSE SELECTION IN OTHER AREAS OF ECONOMICS

Adverse selection problems arise in many places besides the employment relationship. This section describes three additional areas in which adverse selection occurs. The last of the three turns out to be important in Chapter 19.

USED CARS

When someone has owned a car for a long time and then decides to sell it, he knows more about the condition of the car than the potential buyer. He knows its repair and accident histories, and also whether or not the car needs any current repairs. In many cases it is possible to hide problems with a temporary fix so that the potential buyer cannot find any defects until it is too late. So, the seller has information about the quality of the car but the buyer lacks this information, and the information asymmetry leads to an adverse selection problem.

Consider a concrete example. Used cars come in two types – good cars and bad ones. Half of all used cars are good, and half are bad. A good used car is worth $10,000 to the original owner, but a bad used car is worth only $5000. This is the seller's side of the market. Buyers value a good car at $12,000 but a bad car at $6000. Clearly there are gains from trade for both types of cars, and so the efficient outcome would involve both types of cars selling. However, only the seller knows whether the car is a good one or a bad one, and the buyer cannot tell the difference until after the sale when it is too late.

What would happen if the buyer offered $11,000 for a good car? Owners of good cars would try to sell their cars, since the $11,000 offer is higher than the $10,000 the car is worth to the original owner, but so would owners of bad cars since the $11,000 offer is higher than the $5000 a bad car is worth to the original owner. The expected value of a car bought for $11,000, then, is (½)($12,000) + (½)($6,000) = $9000, which is less than the $11,000 the buyer pays for it. The buyer has an expected loss of $2000 when he offers $11,000 for a car.

In fact, *any* offer greater than $10,000 will attract sellers of both types of cars, and, since the buyer cannot tell the two types of cars apart, his expected value of the car he buys is $9000, and he suffers an expected loss. Consequently, no buyer will offer more than $10,000 for a car. The only alternative is for buyers to offer $10,000 or less for a car. But in this case the owners of good cars refuse to sell their cars, and the only

cars on the market are bad used cars. Consequently, buyers will not offer more than $6000 for a car, and only bad used cars are sold.

This is a clear example of adverse selection. Because buyers cannot tell good cars from bad ones until it is too late, there is no market for good used cars. Bad used cars drive good ones out of the market.

CAR REPAIRS

Unless you have experience in auto mechanics, when something goes wrong with your car you must take it to a mechanic to diagnose and fix the problem. When you do, though, the mechanic has information that you do not have, and this can lead to adverse selection. Suppose that your car has a problem that could be either minor or major. A minor problem can be fixed with a minor repair that is inexpensive and not very profitable for the mechanic, and a major problem requires a major repair that is both expensive and profitable. The major repair also takes care of the minor problem, so the mechanic can recommend either to take care of the problem.

From what we have learned about adverse selection so far, we would expect the bad to drive the good out of the market. Here "bad" refers to recommending major repairs for minor problems, and "good" corresponds to minor repairs for minor problems. Since the customer cannot tell whether the car needs major or minor repairs, there is no reason for the mechanic to recommend a minor repair, and only major, high-profit repairs are done.

HEALTH INSURANCE

For years politicians in both parties have complained about the large portion of the population that does not have health insurance. Most of the effected people are poor or work for small businesses, and children are disproportionately effected. Why does this health insurance "crisis" exist? A major reason is adverse selection.

When people purchase health insurance policies, they do so because there is some chance that they will have a health problem, in which case they will receive benefit payments from the health insurance company. Not all people are the same, though, and some of them have higher expected benefit payments than others. The higher expected benefit payments could come because the person is more likely to have a health problem than other people are, or it could be that the person is likely to have a more expensive health problem than others. A problem arises because the people buying the insurance know more about how healthy they are than the company selling the insurance does.

Suppose an insurance company offers a policy for qualifying buyers that costs $6000 per year. This is an expensive insurance policy, and there are two groups of people who would be willing to buy it. One group contains people whose expected benefit payments are less than $6000 but who are sufficiently risk averse that they would

be willing to pay more than $6000 for the policy. The insurance company expects to make money from people in this low-risk group. The second group contains people whose expected benefit payments exceed $6000, and the insurance company expects to lose money from this high-risk group.

This is adverse selection. Even though there are gains from trade possible with the first group, the high-risk buyers ruin the market for the low-risk buyers. Insurance companies are unwilling to sell individual policies for prices that the buyers find worthwhile, since if the buyer finds it worthwhile the insurance company probably will not.

One way to solve this problem is through pooling. Keep in mind that the adverse selection problem arises because individual buyers have information about their health status that the insurer does not possess. Suppose that a company with 1000 employees wants to buy insurance for all of them. Presumably the company selected its employees for qualifications that had nothing to do with health risks, and so these 1000 employees have about the same average health risk as the population as a whole. The insurer has information about the average health risks of the population as a whole, and can therefore determine a profitable price for the insurance. Since no information asymmetries can be exploited, the adverse selection problem disappears, and a market for health insurance can exist.

PROBLEMS

1. Explain the difference between adverse selection and self-selection.

2. Explain the difference between adverse selection and moral hazard, as defined in Chapter 7.

3. There are two types of workers. High-productivity workers can produce 25 units per hour, and low productivity workers can only produce 20. High-productivity workers can get jobs elsewhere with a wage of $18 per hour, and low-productivity workers can get jobs elsewhere with a wage of $15 per hour. Find the range of piece rates that lead the workers to self-select and solve the adverse selection problem.

4. A firm wishes to hire workers for one year. There are two types of workers, skilled and unskilled. Skilled workers produce 2000 units per month, and unskilled workers produce 1500 units per month. Each unit of output generates $1 in net revenue for the firm. There are alternative sources of employment for the two types of workers. Skilled workers can earn $1800 per month in their alternative job, and unskilled workers can earn

$1500 per month in their alternative. The firm cannot tell whether a worker is skilled or unskilled until he or she has been employed for one month. After one month a worker's types is correctly identified with probability 0.95, so there is a 5% chance that an unskilled worker is incorrectly identified as being skilled and a 5% chance that a skilled worker is incorrectly identified as being unskilled. Construct a probationary contract that induces self-selection and generates positive expected profit for the firm.

5. A probationary contract specifies that a worker is paid $2110 per month for the first m months. After m months the worker is either fired or gets a raise to $2500 per month for $(10 - m)$ months. A low-productivity worker has a 90% chance of getting fired at the end of the probationary period. If a low-productivity worker can earn $2200 per month somewhere else, how many (whole) months must the probationary period last to keep him from applying?

CHAPTER 16
SIGNALING

As explained in the previous chapter, adverse selection problems cause there to be no market for the skills of high-productivity workers. Employers can benefit from hiring high-productivity workers, though, and firms can take actions, through the design of their compensation schemes, to solve the adverse selection problem. But the high-productivity workers also benefit from the solution to the adverse selection problem, since they can get paid more if their skills are identified. This chapter explores what high-productivity workers can do to distinguish themselves from low-productivity workers.

1. GETTING AN EDUCATION

One of the ways high-productivity workers can distinguish themselves is through education. Before discussing how the two different types of workers decide on different levels of education, though, it is instructive to analyze the problem of a single worker deciding whether or not to get an education.

Consider the problem of someone deciding whether or not to go back to school to earn an MBA degree. He currently has a job that pays $35,000 per year, but he would have to give it up if he goes back to school. Tuition, fees, books, and other expenses amount to $25,000 per year, and it takes two years to earn an MBA. He has been told that he can expect to make $55,000 per year after he earns a degree. The benefits from school come in the form of higher salary after he finishes, but all of the costs come up front. The longer he works the more benefits he enjoys. How long must he work for the MBA to be worthwhile, that is, how long must he work before the benefits make up for the up-front costs?

This question is answered using Table 16.1. The first column of the table shows the year. The second column shows the income from continuing at his current job, assuming no raises. The third column shows the income from getting an MBA, again assuming no raises after he gets a job. The first two entries are negative, reflecting both the tuition payments he must make and the fact that he must quit his current job if he wants to go back to school. The fourth column shows the net benefit of the MBA, which is the difference between his income with an MBA and his income without one. The

final column is the cumulative net benefit from earning an MBA. The first year he must give up his $35,000 job and pay $25,000 in tuition, for a net benefit of −$60,000. The second year he also foregoes the income from his $35,000 job, and he again pays $25,000 in tuition. His net benefit from the second year is −$60,000. Add this to the net benefit from the first year to get the cumulative net benefit of −$120,000. In the third year he gets a job that pays $55,000 per year. This is $20,000 more than he would have earned if he had remained in his old job, so $20,000 is added to the cumulative net benefit. Every year after that an additional $20,000 is added to his cumulative net benefit.

TABLE 16.1
Costs and benefits of education

Year	Keeps current job	Gets MBA then works	Net benefit of MBA	Cumulative net benefit of MBA
1	35,000	−25,000	−60,000	−60,000
2	35,000	−25,000	−60,000	−120,000
3	35,000	55,000	20,000	−100,000
4	35,000	55,000	20,000	−80,000
5	35,000	55,000	20,000	−60,000
6	35,000	55,000	20,000	−40,000
7	35,000	55,000	20,000	−20,000
8	35,000	55,000	20,000	0
9	35,000	55,000	20,000	20,000
10	35,000	55,000	20,000	40,000

At the end of year 8 his cumulative net benefit is zero. This means that after 6 years of work the extra $20,000 per year in salary has made up for the two years of tuition payments and foregone earnings. If he works into year 9 (his seventh year of work) his cumulative net benefit is positive, and getting an MBA is worthwhile. If he works less than 6 years, though, he would be better off staying with his old job. So, to make getting an MBA worthwhile, he must plan to work past year 8 in the table.

This analysis raises an important issue that is worth elaboration. His net benefit in a given year is the amount that he earns with an MBA minus the amount he earns without an MBA. Since we subtract the $35,000 he makes in his current job to compute net benefit, we are treating the $35,000 as a cost. In fact, the $35,000 per year is the *opportunity cost* associated with getting an MBA. An opportunity cost is the value of a resource in its next best alternative use, and the resource in question is his time. If he goes to school and then gets a job, he does not have time to work at his old job. The next best alternative use of his time is staying in his old job, which is worth $35,000 per year.

It is easy to see why this $35,000 per year opportunity cost arises in the years when he is in school since he cannot work when he goes to school. It is less

straightforward why the opportunity cost arises in the years after he finishes school. The reason is that when he takes the MBA-level job he cannot also work at the pre-MBA-level job, so he must give up the $35,000 per year salary. Consequently, he foregoes $35,000 per year every year.

One factor that affects how long someone must work to make additional education worthwhile is the gap between the salary he would make with the additional education and the salary he would make without it. If the salary gap widens, it takes less time working to make education worthwhile. In Table 16.1 the gap is $55,000 − $35,000 = $20,000. If the pay for the holder of an MBA rises to $65,000, the salary gap widens to $30,000. With that gap, the $120,000 cost of the education is paid off after only 4 years of work.

DISCOUNTING THE FUTURE

The calculations in Table 16.1 make an assumption about how the worker feels about the future. In particular, he does not discount the future at all, so that $1000 received ten years from now is worth exactly the same as $1000 received right now. This is probably not an accurate portrayal of the world, and people tend to discount the future much more than this. For almost everyone the value of $1000 ten years from now is much less than $1000 today. Even if the $1000 ten years from now was adjusted for inflation, almost everyone would still want the money today. People are impatient, wanting the consumption that $1000 brings right away, and not wanting to wait ten years to get that consumption.

Impatience can be captured using a discount factor. Let r denote the discount rate, which is generally a number greater than zero, like an interest rate. Then the value of the amount x received one year in the future is

$$\frac{x}{1+r},$$

and the value of the amount x received t years in the future is

$$\frac{x}{(1+r)^t}.$$

The farther the income is in the future, the greater the exponent t is, and the less valuable that income is now. Increasing the discount rate r also makes the denominator larger, and so the higher the discount rate, the lower the current value of future income.

Discount rates reflect impatience, with higher discount rates corresponding to higher degrees of impatience. Table 16.2 computes cumulative net benefits assuming that the discount rate is 5%, as compared with the discount rate of 0% used in Table 16.1. Since the tuition costs of education come at the beginning, where they are not discounted much, and the benefits come later, where they are discounted more heavily, discounting reduces the cumulative net benefit of an MBA. The higher the discount rate is, the longer the individual must work to make an MBA worthwhile. When the discount rate is 0% he must work through year 8, as shown in Table 16.1, but when the discount rate is 5% he must work through year 10. It is not shown in the table, but when the discount rate is 10% he must work through year 13 and when it is 15% he must work through year 27 to make an MBA worthwhile.

TABLE 16.2
Costs and benefits of education with a 5% discount rate.

Year	Net benefit	Discounted net benefit	Cumulative discounted net benefit
1	−60,000	−60,000	−60,000
2	−60,000	−57,143	−117,143
3	20,000	18,141	−99,002
4	20,000	17,277	−81,725
5	20,000	16,454	−65,271
6	20,000	15,671	−49,600
7	20,000	14,924	−34,676
8	20,000	14,214	−20,462
9	20,000	13,537	−6,925
10	20,000	12,892	5,967
11	20,000	12,278	18,245
12	20,000	11,694	29,939
13	20,000	11,137	41,076
14	20,000	10,606	51,682
15	20,000	10,101	67,783

GENERAL LESSONS ABOUT OBTAINING AN EDUCATION

In our simplified framework, the only reason for getting an education is to get a higher-paying job. In this case, it is only worthwhile to get an education if the person works long enough at the higher-paying job to make up for the costs of education. These costs are of two types: the actual monetary cost of school, including tuition, fees, books, etc., and the opportunity cost of school, which is the foregone earnings from a lower-paying job that does not require as much education.

The bigger the gap between the higher salary and the lower salary, the less time it takes to recoup the costs of education and the more worthwhile an education is. The more patient the individual is, or, put differently, the lower the individual's discount rate, the less time it takes to recoup the costs of education.

SOME REAL-WORLD NUMBERS

There exist data both on the size of the gap between the salary levels with and without an education and on the discount rate people use for evaluating income streams. Starting with salary levels, Table 16.3 reports the mean salary level for 35-44 year olds with different levels of education, as compiled by the Bureau of the Census in 2002.

TABLE 16.3

Mean salary levels for 35-44 year olds.

Highest education level attained	Mean 2002 salary
No high school	$22,803
Some high school but no degree	28,101
High school grad or GED	34,559
Some college but no degree	41,356
Associate's degree	42,446
Bachelor's degree	66,006
Master's degree	81,553
Professional degree	120,061
Doctoral degree	98,211

Source: US Bureau of the Census

The table reveals several patterns. First, education pays. People with graduate degrees earn more than people without, people with college degrees earn more than people without, and people with high school diplomas earn more than people without. Second, a bachelor's degree is very valuable. A person with a bachelor's degree earns over 90% more than a person who finished high school but never went to college. Third, even without finishing there is a huge return to college. People who start college, but do not finish, make on average about 20% more than people who stop with a high school degree. Fourth, and finally, there is a huge return to completing a degree. People who graduate from high school make almost 25% more than those who drop out of high school, and people who complete a bachelor's degree earn 60% more than people who start college but do not finish.

The best incentive to finish high school, finish college, and even go on to earn a graduate degree is provided by the market. Each of these degrees comes with a significant increase in average salary. In light of our analysis of the decision of whether

or not to get an education, Table 16.3 suggests that the salary gaps are wide enough to make it worthwhile for people to continue school and pursue advanced degrees, as long as they do not discount the future too heavily and they have the required aptitude to complete the schooling.

Estimates of discount rates comes from an analysis of retirement choices by members of the armed services.[1] In 1991 the Department of Defense was authorized to reduce active duty strength by 25%, with the reduction to come from every experience level. This was a difficult task, because ordinarily in the military retirement benefits can be collected only after 20 years of service. For obvious reasons they did not want to fire soldiers, so they created incentives for soldiers to leave. Military personnel who voluntarily departed were offered their choice of two pay packages, both based on the number of years of service and annual salary. One package offered a lump sum payment and the other offered a set of annual payments.

For example, an O-3 officer (e.g. an Army captain) with nine years of service could get a $46,219 lump sum or an annual payment of $7,703 for 18 years. An E-6 enlisted man (e.g. an Army staff sergeant) with 12 years of service could get a $35,549 lump sum or an annual payment of $5,925 for 24 years. In both cases the discounted value of the stream of annual payments is the same as the lump sum if the discount rate is 19%. So, personnel with discount rates higher than 19% should take the lump sum because they are too impatient to wait for the annual payments, and personnel with discount rates below 19% should take the annual payments.

More than half of the officers and over 90% of the enlisted men who chose to leave the military took the lump sum. This suggests that more than half of the officers, virtually all of whom are college graduates, and almost all of the enlisted men have discount rates higher than 19%. These are very high discount rates, and they are high enough to keep people from getting an education. For comparison purposes, the interest rate at the time was about 7%, and by taking the lump sum the military personnel actually saved the US government quite a bit of money.

We can use the numbers from Table 16.3 along with the discount rate deduced from the decisions of military personnel to work out a real-world example of an education choice. Let's consider a 40-year-old worker with a bachelor's degree who is thinking about going back to school for two years to get a master's degree. He plans to retire at age 65. He is a resident of Texas, and tuition and fees at the University of Texas total $3000 per year. To go back to school he must give up his $66,000 per year job, but after college he will earn $81,500. His discount rate is 20%, which is consistent with the discount rate for officers. Should he go back to school? The answer from a purely

[1] John T. Warner and Saul Pleeter, "The Personal Discount Rate: Evidence from Military Downsizing Programs," *American Economic Review* 91, 2001, 33-53.

financial perspective is no, as shown by Table 16.4. Even though the tuition cost is negligible, the foregone income while he goes back to school is so high that he is never able to make up for it when the future is discounted so heavily.

TABLE 16.4
Should a 40-year-old get a master's degree?

Year	Net benefit	Discounted net benefit	Cumulative discounted net benefit
1	-69,000	-69,000	-69,000
2	-69,000	-57,000	-126,500
3	15,500	10,764	-115,736
4	15,500	8,970	-106,766
5	15,500	7,475	-99,291
6	15,500	6,229	-93,062
7	15,500	5,191	-87,871
8	15,500	4,326	-83,545
9	15,500	3,605	-79,941
10	15,500	3,004	-76,937
11	15,500	2,503	-74,433
12	15,500	2,086	-72,347
13	15,500	1,738	-70,609
14	15,500	1,449	-69,160
15	15,500	1,207	-67,953
16	15,500	1,006	-66,947
17	15,500	838	-66,108
18	15,500	699	-65,410
19	15,500	582	-64,828
20	15,500	485	-64,342
21	15,500	404	-63,938
22	15,500	337	-63,601
23	15,500	281	-63,321
24	15,500	234	-63,087
25	15,500	195	-62,892

2. EDUCATION AS A SIGNAL OF QUALITY

Let's return to a situation with adverse selection. There are two types of workers, high-productivity ones and low-productivity ones, and the employer cannot tell the two types apart. The workers have an option to get a college degree. Is there any way that the two types can self-select by using the college degree? In particular, are there situations in which one type of worker gets a college degree and the other one does not?

In this section we construct an example in which exactly this type of self-selection occurs. In the example both workers have 40 years until retirement. There are two types of jobs. One pays $4000 per month, but it requires a college degree. The other pays $3200, and it requires only a high school diploma. College tuition and fees cost $40,000 per year. To ease calculations, assume that the future is not discounted.

If both types require the same amount of time to complete college, then both types will decide to do exactly the same thing. But, suppose that whatever characteristic that makes a high-type worker have high productivity also allows him to finish college in four years, while whatever characteristic that makes a low-type worker have low productivity also makes him take five years to finish college. Now there is a reason why high-productivity workers might choose to go to college but low-productivity workers will not.

Consider the choice facing a high-productivity worker. If he chooses not to go to college he can work for a full 40 years at $3200 per month. His total income from not going to college is (40)(12)($3200) = $1,536,000. If he chooses to go to college for four years, he must pay $40,000 per year for each of those four years, but then he earns $4000 per month for the remaining 36 years. His total income is therefore (4)(−$40,000) + (36)(12)($4000) = $1,568,000. If he goes to college, his lifetime income is higher by $32,000.

Now look at the choice faced by a low-productivity worker. His total income from not going to college is the same as for a high-productivity worker, $1,536,000. If he chooses to go to college, though, he must go for five years, paying $40,000 per year in tuition. Afterwards he works for the remaining 35 years and earns $4000 per month. His total lifetime income when he goes to college is (5)(−$40,000) + (35)(12)($4000) = $1,480,000. If he goes to college, his lifetime income is lower by $56,000.

In this example, high-productivity workers choose to go to college but low-productivity workers do not. Consequently, the firm can tell the two types of workers apart – the high-productivity workers have college degrees but the low-productivity workers do not. By choosing to go to college, the high-productivity workers are able to distinguish themselves from their low-productivity counterparts and benefit from having high productivity.

In this example a college education is a **signal**, a costly activity that has no effect on the individual's type but whose cost is related to his type. Let's make sure that both parts of the definition work here. First, does getting an education make a worker have high productivity? The answer is no. If a high-productivity worker gets a college degree he remains a high-productivity worker, and if a low-productivity worker gets a degree he remains a low-productivity worker. In the example college does not change low-productivity workers into high-productivity ones; instead it just labels people who get college degrees as high-productivity workers. That takes care of the first part of the

definition of a signal, that the activity has no effect on productivity. What about the second part, that the cost of the activity is related to productivity? In the example, a low-productivity worker needs one more year to complete college than a high-productivity worker, and that extra year costs him $40,000 in tuition and (12)($3200) = $38,400 in foregone wages for a total of $78,400.

This example gives a rather cynical view of the value of a college education. If education is really just a signal, then students learn nothing of value that makes them more productive in the first place. Instead, education just labels students as high-productivity workers, allowing them to get better jobs and higher pay in the future. If this is true, then education is socially wasteful because it does nothing to increase the productivity of workers in society. Instead, it uses up resources in the labeling of workers.

Is education really just a signal, or do students get something out of it that makes them more productive? This is a valid issue, and one we return to in Section 4.

3. SIGNALING AND EQUILIBRIUM

We can think of signaling as the outcome of a game between the two types of workers and the employer. In all of the games we have considered so far, an equilibrium is a situation in which all players best-respond to the equilibrium strategies are their opponents. Here, though, something different is happening and it is worth seeing what that difference is.

There is a new ingredient to the game: the employer's beliefs. In the example just completed, the firm offering $4000 per month believes that a worker with a college degree has high productivity, and one without a degree has low productivity. The firm's best response to these beliefs is to hire only workers with college degrees. A high-productivity worker's best response to the firm's strategy is to get a college degree, and a low-productivity worker's best response is to forego college and get a job with the alternative employer.

All of the strategy choices come from the firm's beliefs. But are these beliefs reasonable? Put another way, are these beliefs consistent with the strategies chosen by the two types of workers? It turns out that they are. Since high-productivity workers go to college and low-productivity ones do not, the firm is correct in its beliefs that all college graduates have high productivity and all non-graduates have low productivity.

For a general signaling game, let's call the player that sends the signal the Sender and the player that receives it the Receiver. The Sender can be of two types, high and low, and the Receiver forms beliefs about the Sender's type. An equilibrium has three requirements (in this type of game, it is customary to refer to the Sender as "he" and the Receiver as "she"):

1. The Receiver's strategy is a best response to her beliefs.
2. The Sender's strategy is a best response to his type and to the Receiver's strategy.
3. The Receiver's beliefs are consistent with the behavior generated by the Sender's strategy.

An equilibrium in which the different types of Senders use different strategies is called a **separating equilibrium**. In contrast, an equilibrium in which all Senders use the same action is called a **pooling equilibrium**. Since we are looking for a situation in which high types take actions that distinguish themselves from low types, we are necessarily looking for a separating equilibrium.

We close this section by showing that a different set of beliefs cannot generate a separating equilibrium. Using the example from the preceding section, suppose that the firm believes that workers with college degrees have *low* productivity and those without degrees have *high* productivity. These beliefs are the exact opposite of those in the preceding section. The firm's best response to these beliefs is to hire workers without degrees, since they are believed to have high productivity, and not hire workers with degrees, since they are believed to have low productivity. Clearly, a high-productivity worker's best response is to not get a degree. But a low-productivity worker's best response is also to not get a degree, because getting a degree is costly and has no benefits. So, neither type of worker gets a degree, and the firm ends up hiring both types. And, since neither type gets a degree, the firm's belief that low productivity workers get degrees is inconsistent with behavior. Criterion 3 above for an equilibrium fails, and we cannot get a separating equilibrium with these strange beliefs.

4. IS EDUCATION REALLY JUST A SIGNAL?

A signal is a costly action that has no effect on the sender's type but its cost does depend on the sender's type. If education is a signal, it has no effect on the productivity of the students who complete the education. All it does is indicate to employers that the students had high productivity before they started school. But, if education is not just a signal, then it does have an impact on the productivity of students, and it is not socially wasteful. So, is education really just a signal?

One can see why this is an important question. If education's only purpose is to allow high-productivity workers to distinguish themselves from low-productivity ones, there is no valid reason for the state to support education. Since it does nothing to improve worker productivity, there can be no spillovers that help the state as a whole and the only benefits go to the workers and their employers. So, workers should pay the entire cost of education themselves. On the other hand, if education is not just a signal, a

system of free or subsidized education makes the state's citizens more productive and can improve the incomes of everyone in the state.

This is a tricky question to sort out, though. If education is not just a signal, then it increases the productivity of workers, who would then be paid more. As Table 16.3 shows, workers with more education are paid more on average than workers with less education. On the other hand, if education is just a signal, higher-productivity workers get more education to distinguish themselves from lower-productivity workers. Since higher-productivity workers are worth more to the firm than lower-productivity ones, firms can afford to pay them more. Also, to make it worthwhile for higher-productivity workers to get more education, they must be paid more. So, the signaling model also predicts that workers with more education get paid more, consistent with the data in Table 16.3, but for completely different reasons. Since the traditional rationale for education, that it makes workers more productive, and the signaling rationale are both consistent with the data in Table 16.3, one needs to look deeper into the issue of which explanation drives the data.

The idea behind the signaling explanation is that since employers cannot distinguish between high- and low-productivity workers, high-productivity workers have an incentive to pursue further education in order to distinguish themselves from their low-productivity counterparts. This reasoning does not apply to self-employed workers, though, since they presumably know their own productivity levels and do not need an education to distinguish them from anyone else. If education is only a signal and does not make workers more productive, self-employed people should not go to school as long as other workers. A study found that self-employed workers obtained almost the same amount of education on average as salaried workers, suggesting that education does more than just signal a worker's type.[2]

Another study found that individuals who dropped out of high school in eleventh grade were roughly twice as likely to quit their jobs as individuals who completed high school, and, in general, more highly educated workers are less likely to quit than less highly educated workers.[3] This suggests that a high school degree is a signal, in this case revealing the worker's reliability and willingness to stay with a job, both qualities that employers value.

A third study is based on GED test scores.[4] GED exams are national, but different states have different thresholds for passing. So, for example, someone who barely failed in state A could have barely passed in state B. If education is a signal, then

[2] Kenneth I. Wolpin, "Education and Screening," *American Economic Review* 67, 1977, 949-958.
[3] Andrew Weiss, "Determinants of Quit Behavior," *Journal of Labor Economics* 2, 1984, 371-387.
[4] John H. Tyler, Richard J. Murnane, and John B. Willett, "Estimating the Labor Market Signaling Value of the GED," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 115, 2000, 431-468.

a person who barely passed in state B should get paid more than a person who barely failed with the same score in state A. On the other hand, if there is no signaling effect, workers with the same score should get the same pay in both states. The study found that workers who passed the exam got paid more than workers with the same score who did not pass, suggesting that the GED also has value as a signal.

Taken as a whole, the evidence suggests that education serves both purposes: it raises productivity and it acts as a signal.

5. OTHER EXAMPLES OF SIGNALING

Signaling exists in other settings besides the one in which a firm must distinguish between high- and low-productivity workers. This section provides some examples.

DRESSING FOR SUCCESS

Everyone knows that when they interview for a job they are supposed to dress up in a suit. But why? Wearing a suit to an interview does not make someone more productive than he would have been if he had not worn a suit. Besides, wearing a suit is costly. Since wearing a suit is a costly activity that has no effect on productivity, it can serve as a signal. To see what it is a signal of, imagine yourself on the other side of the interview table. You see two candidates who seem to be equally qualified, but one wears a suit and the other wears jeans and a sweatshirt. Which one would you hire? The one who did not wear a suit could not be bothered to dress up for the interview. There are probably other things that applicant cannot be bothered with, like paying attention to deadlines, showing up on time, and filing reports regularly. You would hire the one who wore the suit, because the effort involved in putting on a suit provides a signal about some qualities that are valuable to the firm.

LICENSING

States issue licenses for many things, from driving to practicing medicine or other professions. These licenses serve as a signal. To take a simple case, consider a license to practice medicine. Someone who is qualified to practice medicine already has all of the knowledge needed to pass the licensing exam, but someone who is unqualified will find it very difficult to meet the licensing requirements. It is much more costly for an unqualified individual to obtain a license, and so unqualified individuals choose not to become doctors. Since only qualified doctors take and pass the exam, the license is a signal of the doctor's qualifications.

CELEBRITY ENDORSEMENTS OF CHARITIES

There are many charities that rely on contributions for their funding. It is difficult for an individual to look at the long list of charities and tell which of them are

honest and use the contributions for charitable works and which are less honest and use a large part of the contributions on overhead or on frivolous expenses. This is where celebrity endorsements come in. A celebrity endorsement does not make the charitable works more worthwhile. However, the fact that a celebrity is willing to attach his or her name to a charity means that he or she (or their agent) was satisfied with the functioning of the charity. A celebrity endorsement is a signal of the honesty of a charity.

DEDUCTIBLES IN INSURANCE

As discussed in Chapter 15, insurance companies have a hard time telling how risky a potential customer is and, in many cases, the customer has better information about his own riskiness than the insurer does. Consider the case of car insurance for drivers who have no citations on their records. Some of them drive safely and carefully, while others speed regularly and engage in reckless behavior but have not yet been caught. The safe drivers can distinguish themselves from the risky ones by purchasing insurance policies with high deductibles. If they get in an accident, they must pay the deductible before receiving any claim. A policy with a high deductible is less costly for a safe driver than for a risky one because a safe driver is much less likely to have to pay the deductible. Willingness to have a high deductible signals to the insurer that the driver is safe.

WARRANTIES

When the Hyundai Motor Company wanted to enter the U.S. market, it had some hurdles to overcome. One of the biggest was that it had no reputation for quality, and consumers were unable to tell whether or not the cars were well-built and would last. To counter this, Hyundai offered longer warranties than its competitors, with a 5-year, 50,000 mile bumper-to-bumper warranty and a 10-year, 100,000 mile warranty on the powertrain. In part because of the warranty, Hyundai's U.S. sales rose 41% during a period in which the overall automobile market contracted.

A product warranty is a signal of the product's quality. The warranty itself does not make a good product more reliable, although it does insure the consumer against defects. However, the promise to repair any defects during a set period of time is more costly for the producer of a poor product than it is for a high-quality product, and so a warranty serves as a signal that the product is of high quality.

SIGNALS IN NATURE

Strong, healthy males of some species of elk grow huge antlers. These antlers are a burden, because they require energy to grow and carry and they put a strain on the elk's neck muscles. It is clearly more costly for an elk to grow large antlers than small ones. However, since only the strongest, healthiest elk can grow and carry these large

racks, the antlers provide a signal to potential mates about the health and strength of the male, and females can discern the quality of the male for mating purposes.

PROBLEMS

1. What is a signal?

2. Suppose that an individual must pay $10,000 this year and then receives $20,000 next year. What is his cumulative discounted net benefit if his discount rate is 20%?

3. An individual must decide whether to go to school for an extra year or not. If he does not go to school, his wage will be $18,000 per year every year. If he does go to school, his wage will be $36,000 per year every year. He cannot work while he goes to school. The year of school costs $25,000. The individual discounts the future at a rate of 20% per year.

   (a) How long would he have to work after going to school to make going to school worthwhile?

   (b) Compute the discounted net present value of schooling if he works for 2 years after going to school.

4. Workers come in two types, high productivity and low productivity. High productivity workers generate net revenue of $100,000 per year to their employers, and low productivity workers generate net revenue of $50,000 a year. Individuals work for 4 years. Before they start working, workers have the opportunity to take a licensing exam. To pass the exam, a high-productivity worker would have to study nights, and the implicit cost would be $20,000. A low-productivity worker would have to study nights and weekends, and take a special test-taking course, for a total cost of $40,000. Assuming that low-productivity workers are paid $50,000 per year in an alternative industry, what is the range of salaries that a firm can offer to licensed workers to guarantee that only high-productivity workers get licensed? Assume that the future is not discounted.

CHAPTER 17
SEARCH

When employers look for new employees, or when workers look for new jobs, they must go through a search process. The purpose of the employer's search is to identify a "better" worker to hire, and the purpose of the worker's search is to find a "better" job to take. This has the potential to be a really major task. Taking the employer's perspective, the set of potential hires can be huge, and it would be extremely costly to look at all of them. How does the firm decide how to go about searching among all of the potential workers? That is the topic of this chapter.

1. BENEFITS AND COSTS OF SEARCH

The fundamental question to be addressed in this chapter is, "How much should an individual search?" Since this is a "how much" question, the answer involves marginal analysis, and in particular involves a comparison of marginal benefits and marginal costs. Before we can do this comparison, though, we must first identify the benefits and costs of search.

COSTS

The cost side of the problem is the easier of the two. When a firm looks for a new worker, it must evaluate the applications and then interview some candidates. Evaluating the applications takes time away from other activities, and so evaluating applications is costly. Interviewing a candidate can be even more costly. In order to conduct the interview, the firm must bring the candidate to the firm, which could involve significant travel expenses. The firm must then house and feed the candidate, entailing additional expenses. Finally, during the interview the candidate meets with a number of different employees of the firm, and those interviews take time away from other productive issues. All told, an interview can be quite costly.

It is easiest to think about the firm's search as involving interviews. Specifically, searching more means interviewing more applicants. Since each interview entails additional travel, hotel, food, and time costs, the cost-of-search function is increasing. The marginal cost of search is the cost that arises from interviewing one more applicant.

BENEFITS

Benefits are little trickier than costs. The benefit a firm receives from hiring a worker is the net revenue that worker produces minus the amount the firm pays the worker. This difference is the profit generated by the employment relationship. Different workers generate different amounts of profit, and searching allows the firm to find workers who generate more profit.

While it is true that higher-productivity workers generate more net revenue for the firm than lower-productivity workers, it is not necessarily true that they generate more profit than lower-productivity workers. If higher-productivity workers have better outside options, the firm must pay them more to attract them, and this extra pay cuts into profit. Another way to think about is that the difference in the amount of net revenue generated by the workers might be smaller than the difference in the amount they must be paid, and if so, the lower-productivity workers are more profitable than the higher-productivity workers.

This said, what is the benefit of search? Search can potentially allow the firm to find a worker who generates a large amount of profit. Because of the uncertainty inherent in search, though, the firm cannot tell which workers will generate a lot of profit and which will not before it interviews them. So, when the firm interviews a job candidate it might find out that he will generate a large amount of profit or it might find out that he will generate no profit at all. This means that before the search takes place, the benefits of search are *expected* benefits, since the firm cannot know whether the search yields a high level of profit or a low one until after the search is over.

The marginal expected benefit of search is the expected benefit from searching one more time, that is, from interviewing one more candidate. After the first search, there is one candidate who is the most profitable so far, and further search is only beneficial when it leads to someone who is even more profitable. Put another way, searching one more time will not lead the firm to hire someone less profitable than its best candidate so far, and so the marginal expected benefit of search is the expected *gain* in profitability, beyond that of the best candidate so far, from searching one more time.

An example can help clarify the issues. Suppose that there are five types of workers. Type-1 workers generate no profit at all, type-2 workers generate \$2000 profit, type-3s generate \$4000 profit, type-4s generate \$6000 profit, and type-5s generate \$8000 profit, as shown in Table 17.1. Each of these types is equally likely since they make up equal fractions of the candidate pool, and the probability of drawing any specified type of worker is 0.2. Further suppose that the firm has already searched and has identified a type-4 candidate. What is the marginal expected benefit of search? The only way the firm can benefit is from finding a type-5 worker, because with any other type the firm is at least as happy with the type-4 worker it has already found. The probability of finding a type-5 employee is 0.2, and the gain from finding a type-5 worker is \$8000 − 6000 =

$2000. The expected gain is therefore (0.2)($2000) = $400, and this is the marginal expected benefit of search.

What if the best candidate so far is a type-3 worker who can generate $4000 in profit? Then the firm benefits from finding either a type-4 or a type-5. The expected gain from finding a type-4 worker is (0.2)($6000 − 4000) = $400. The expected gain from finding a type-5 worker is (0.2)($8000 − 4000) = $800. The marginal expected benefit is the sum of these two, or $1200.

The last column of Table 17.1 shows the marginal expected benefit of search for situations in which the best worker so far is of each different type. When the best candidate so far is a type-5 worker, there is no possible way to benefit from further search, and so the marginal expected benefit of search is zero. As the best candidate so far becomes less profitable, the marginal expected benefit of search increases, and it is as high as possible when the best candidate so far is the worst type, a type-1 worker.

TABLE 17.1

Computing the marginal benefit of search, marginal cost = $650

Type	Profit	Prob.	Marginal Expected Benefit of Search
1	$0	0.2	(0.2)($8000 − 0) + (0.2)($6000 − 0) + (0.2)(4000 − 0) + (0.2)($2000 − 0) = **$4000**
2	2000	0.2	(0.2)($8000 − 2000) + (0.2)($6000 − 2000)) + (0.2)($4000 − 2000) = **$2400**
3	4000	0.2	(0.2)($8000 − 4000) + (0.2)($6000 − 4000) = **$1200**
4	6000	0.2	(0.2)($8000 − 6000) = **$400**
5	8000	0.2	**$0**

2. OPTIMAL SEARCH

The question to be addressed in this section is, "How much should the firm search in order to maximize its expected profit?" As mentioned in the preceding section, the answer has something to do with marginal benefits and marginal costs. Let's look at the same problem as in the preceding section, where a firm is looking for one new worker, and the candidates' profitability levels are given in Table 17.1. When the firm picks a worker randomly, it has an equal chance of getting a worker who will generate $8000 in profit, one who will generate $6000 in profit, one who will generate $4000, one who will generate $2000, and one who will generate no profit at all. To determine which type of worker the candidate is, the firm must conduct an interview at a cost of $650.

Marginal analysis tells us that if the marginal benefit of an activity exceeds the marginal cost the individual should engage in more of the activity, and if the marginal benefit is less than the marginal cost the individual should either stop or engage in less of

the activity. Since the benefits generated by search are random, depending on the profitability of the worker drawn from the applicant pool, the benefits are expected benefits.

Suppose that the firm searches and finds a worker whose profitability is $2000. Should it hire that worker or should it keep looking? Table 17.1 shows that the marginal expected benefit of search is $2400 when the best candidate so far has profitability of $2000. The marginal cost of search is the cost of interviewing one more candidate, or $650. Since the marginal expected benefit of search exceeds the marginal cost, the firm should continue looking.

This example poses the question in the following way. If the best candidate the firm has found so far has profitability x, should the firm hire that worker or should it keep looking? It should keep looking if the marginal expected benefit of search is greater than the marginal cost, and it should hire the worker if the marginal benefit of search is less than the marginal cost. Looking at Table 17.1, we can see that the marginal expected benefit of search is greater than the $650 marginal cost when the best candidate so far generates zero profit, $2000 in profit, or $4000 in profit. When the best candidate so far generates either $6000 in profit or $8000 in profit, the firm should stop looking and hire that worker.

IMPORTANT FEATURES OF THE OPTIMAL SEARCH RULE

The above example illustrates several important features of optimal search rules.

1. *Optimal search relies on a stopping rule.* A **stopping rule** is a set of conditions under which a process stops. If the conditions are satisfied the individual ends the process, but if the conditions are not satisfied the individual continues the process. Optimal search uses a simple stopping rule: end the search if the marginal expected benefit of search is less than the marginal cost.

2. *Optimal search sometimes means hiring someone who is not the best possible worker.* In the example the firm does not hold out for the most profitable worker, one who can generate $8000 for the firm. Instead it takes any worker who can generate at least $6000 profit. When it finds someone who can generate $6000 profit, the expected benefit from searching one more time is only $400, while the cost of interviewing one more worker is $650. It is not worth searching for the best possible type, and one useful interpretation of the stopping rule is that the firm continues searching until it finds a worker who is "good enough."

3. *Because optimal search relies on a stopping rule, the searcher never passes up a candidate and then goes back and hires him.* A second useful interpretation of the

stopping rule is that the firm sets a standard and hires the first candidate who meets or exceeds the standard. Consequently, any worker who was passed over was deemed not good enough and, barring any change in the distribution of workers or in the cost of search, he will never be good enough.

There is another good reason for the firm to avoid waiting to hire a candidate it judges good enough. If the firm continues to interview after finding a good candidate, there is a chance that some other firm will come along and find the same candidate. If the other firm acts first, the candidate who met the standard might not be there when the firm finally gets around to offering him a job. The use of a stopping rule means that the firm does not have to worry about this consideration since it immediately offers a job to the first candidate it deems to be good enough.

DO PEOPLE USE THE OPTIMAL SEARCH STRATEGY?

The optimal search strategy states that individuals search until they find something that meets or exceeds some standard, and then they stop searching. If the search costs are sufficiently high, they stop searching before they find the very best alternative. Do people really do this?

Barry Schwarz of Swarthmore College and his colleagues performed a study on just this question.* They found that some people are apt to exhibit the "satisficing" behavior consistent with the optimal search rule, but not everybody is. A large fraction of their subjects they labeled "maximizers," and these people tend to keep searching until they either find the best possible alternative or they run out of time, whichever comes first. Their most striking result, though, is that the "maximizers" tend to be less happy than the "satisficers."

This finding is consistent with our model. "Satisficing," or taking the first alternative that meets or exceeds some standard, is optimal, which means that it is the rule that maximizes the searcher's utility. Doing anything else, like "maximizing," lowers utility and makes people less happy.

The internet has vastly expanded people's choices. It has given people more places to search, and at the same time has lowered search costs since people can now search without ever leaving their desks. The optimal response to this change is to search more. But this generates a real problem for "maximizers," since they feel a need to look at every possible option to find the best one. As the choices have expanded, they have become even less happy.

* Barry Schwartz, "The Tyranny of Choice," *Scientific American*, April 2004, pp. 70 -75.

3. DETERMINANTS OF THE AMOUNT OF SEARCH

What does it mean for a firm to search more or less when trying to hire a worker? After all, when the firm uses a stopping rule, the number of candidates it must interview is random. For example, in the example we have been using, the firm stops when it finds a worker who will generate at least $6000 in profit. The probability that it hires the first worker it interviews is 40%, since the probability of finding a worker worth $6000 is 20% and the probability of finding one worth $8000 is 20%. The probability that the firm must interview another worker is 60%, and the probability that the second worker is hired, given that the first worker was not, is again 40%. It could take the firm a long time before it gets a worker who fits the criterion of being good enough. So how can we talk about searching more?

The short answer is that we cannot. What we can talk about, though, is the standard the firm sets for whom it will hire. If the firm sets a stricter standard, in a sense it searches more because it holds out for a more profitable worker. Similarly, if it loosens the standard it is willing to settle for a less profitable worker, which is one way of thinking about searching less.

The standard a firm sets is determined in part by the distribution of workers in the pool. In Table 17.1 the five types of workers are equally likely, and the firm sets the standard at $6000 profitability, that is, it hires the first worker it finds who can generate at least $6000 profit. Now look at Table 17.2, where the five types are no longer equally likely. This time the firm is most likely to find someone who is entirely unsuited for the job and generates zero profit. We can compute the marginal expected benefit of search in exactly the same way as in Table 17.1. Since the marginal search cost is $650, the firm stops when it finds someone who generates $4000 in profit. The marginal expected benefit from searching after finding someone worth $4000 is only $600, which is less than the cost of interviewing one more employee.

TABLE 17.2

Search when the worst outcome is more likely, , marginal cost = $650

Type	Profit	Prob.	Marginal Expected Benefit of Search
1	$0	0.6	(0.1)($8000 − 0) + (0.1)($6000 − 0) + (0.1)(4000 − 0) + (0.1)($2000 − 0) = **$2000**
2	2000	0.1	(0.1)($8000 − 2000) + (0.1)($6000 − 2000) + (0.1)($4000 − 2000) = **$1200**
3	4000	0.1	(0.1)($8000 − 4000) + (0.1)($6000 − 4000) = **$600**
4	6000	0.1	(0.1)($8000 − 6000) = **$200**
5	8000	0.1	**$0**

Table 17.3 shows a third distribution of workers. This time the firm is most likely to find the best possible worker. Now the firm holds out for the best possible worker. When it finds someone who generates $6000 in profit, the expected benefit from interviewing one more candidate is $1200, but the cost of the interview is only $650. The firm should keep interviewing until it finds someone who can generate $8000 in profit.

TABLE 17.3

Search when the best outcome is more likely, marginal cost = $650

Type	Profit	Prob.	Marginal Expected Benefit of Search
1	$0	0.1	(0.6)($8000 − 0) + (0.1)($6000 − 0) + (0.1)(4000 − 0) + (0.1)($2000 − 0) = **$6000**
2	2000	0.1	(0.6)($8000 − 2000) + (0.1)($6000 − 2000)) + (0.1)($4000 − 2000) = **$4200**
3	4000	0.1	(0.6)($8000 − 4000) + (0.1)($6000 − 4000) = **$2600**
4	6000	0.1	(0.6)($8000 − 6000) = **$1200**
5	8000	0.6	**$0**

The final example for this section is found in Table 17.4. Table 17.2 made the worst outcome more likely, and the firm lowered its hiring standard. Table 17.3 made the best outcome more likely, and the firm raised its hiring standard. The new table makes both the best and worst outcomes more likely compared to Table 17.1. The intuition from Table 17.2 suggests that the firm should lower its standard, while the intuition from Table 17.3 suggests that it should raise the standard. Which effect dominates?

TABLE 17.4

Computing the marginal benefit of search, marginal cost = $650

Type	Profit	Prob.	Marginal Expected Benefit of Search
1	$0	0.35	(0.35)($8000 − 0) + (0.1)($6000 − 0) + (0.1)(4000 − 0) + (0.1)($2000 − 0) = **$4000**
2	2000	0.1	(0.35)($8000 − 2000) + (0.1)($6000 − 2000)) + (0.1)($4000 − 2000) = **$2700**
3	4000	0.1	(0.35)($8000 − 4000) + (0.1)($6000 − 4000) = **$1600**
4	6000	0.1	(0.35)($8000 − 6000) = **$700**
5	8000	0.35	**$0**

The table shows that the firm searches until it finds someone who can generate the maximal profit, $8000. When it finds someone worth $6000, the expected benefit from one more interview is $700 but the cost of that interview is only $650. The firm keeps interviewing until it finds the best possible worker.

The distribution of workers in Table 17.2 is worse than the distribution in Table 17.1, and we found that the worse distribution leads to a lower standard. The distribution in Table 17.3 is better than the distribution in Table 17.1, and we found that the better distribution leads to a higher standard. The distribution in Table 17.4 is neither better nor worse than the one in Table 17.1. Instead, it is *riskier*, since it increases the chances of getting an extreme outcome and reduces the chances of getting an intermediate outcome. The firm responds to the riskier outcome by raising its standard.

All three of these patterns really show the same effect. Table 17.2 reduces the chance of finding the best worker, but Tables 17.3 and 17.4 both increase the chance of finding the best worker. When finding the best worker becomes more likely, the firm raises its standard. It does not really matter what happens to the chance of the worst outcome, since the firm does not stop there anyway. The key to determining how much a firm will search is the probability of the best outcomes, not the probability of the worst.

4. JOB SEARCH

The problem of a worker searching for a job is very similar to that of a firm searching for a worker. To see the similarities, suppose that different jobs yield different levels of net benefit for the worker. If he gets a job at a great firm, his net benefit is high and equal to $50,000. If he gets a job at a good firm, his net benefit is lower, equal to $40,000. If he gets a job at an okay firm, his net benefit is equal to $30,000. Finally, sometimes he interviews for a job and does not get it, and not getting hired yields net benefit of zero.

TABLE 17.5

Job search

Type	Net benefit	Prob.	Marginal Expected Benefit of Search
No job	$0	0.5	(0.1)($50,000 − 0) + (0.2)($40,000 − 0) + (0.2)(30,000 − 0) = **$19,000**
Okay	30,000	0.2	(0.1)($50,000 − 30,000) + (0.2)($40,000 − 30,000))= **$4000**
Good	40,000	0.2	(0.1)($50,000 − 40,000) = **$1000**
Great	50,000	0.1	**$0**

Table 17.5 shows the probability of the different outcomes from applying for a job. The most likely outcome is no job offer, and the least likely outcome is a great job. Okay jobs and bad jobs are equally likely. The table also calculates the marginal expected benefit of search for each type of job offer.

How much will the worker search for a job? That depends on his marginal cost of search, which in turn depends on his circumstances. If the marginal cost of search is

less than $1000 he holds out for a great job, but if it is more than $4000 he settles for the first job he finds. It turns out that marginal search costs depend on the worker's circumstances, which we explore below.

SEARCHING FOR A FIRST JOB

When a worker searches for his first job, many of the costs of search are fixed. He must prepare a resume, but that is a fixed cost and does not depend on how many jobs he applies for. He must purchase an outfit suitable for interviews, but again that is a fixed cost since he can where the same outfit to every interview. Since fixed costs do not change with the number of jobs he applies for, they do not contribute to marginal costs.

Variable costs include the costs of contacting the firm to apply for the job and traveling to the interview. They would also include wages lost while interviewing, but since this is the worker's first job he has no wages to forego. Also, many firms pay any travel costs associated with an interview, and so these costs are small, too. It would seem, then, that the only component of the marginal cost of search is the cost of contacting one more firm to apply, which should be much less than $1000. This suggests that the worker should hold out for the best job.

This is not the whole story, though. Job offers do not always come rapidly, and months may pass between offers. So, if the worker turns down an okay job, he foregoes the wages he would have earned at that job while he waits for the next offer. These foregone wages can be substantial. So, think about the problem this way. Suppose that the worker is offered an okay job, which will generate $30,000 in net benefits. If he turns it down, he expects to forego $5000 in net benefits before the next offer comes in. Should he take the job? The answer is yes. The expected cost of searching one more time is $5000, while the expected benefit of searching one more time is $4000. He should take the okay job.

Even though we know that he would take it, look at what happens if he is offered a good job. Now the marginal search cost is higher for two reasons. First, he is foregoing the benefits of working at a good job instead of at an okay one. Second, he now waits for an offer of a great job, which could take longer than waiting for an offer of a good or a great job. For both of these reasons, his marginal expected search cost rises to, say, $10,000. The marginal expected benefit of search is only $1000, so he should accept a good job when it is offered.

The key to this analysis is recognizing that when the worker is searching for his first job part of his search cost is the foregone benefit from working at the jobs he turns down. Since this foregone benefit can be large, workers searching for their first job seldom hold out for their dream jobs.

SEARCHING FOR A JOB WHEN ALREADY EMPLOYED

When a job searcher is already employed, his search costs change in two ways. First, having a job decreases the value of the wages foregone when a job is turned down, since the worker can continue at his old job while waiting for the next offer. This reduces the marginal cost of search. The other change is that the worker may have to take time off from work to go to an interview. This requires either giving up paid hours or using vacation time, and either way it requires giving up something valuable. So, missing work for an interview increases the marginal cost of search.

There are two effects governing the comparison of marginal search costs between a worker who already has a job and one who does not. One effect pushes the marginal search cost downward, and the other pushes it upward. Which effect is likely to dominate? If a worker does not have a job yet, turning down a job entails foregoing the benefits of working for several months. If he has a job, these foregone benefits are reduced. If a worker does not yet have a job, he does not miss any work while interviewing. A worker with a job may have to miss a few days of work. One effect is the reduction in the foregone benefits over a several month period, and the other is the foregone benefits from working for a few days. The first effect is likely to dominate, and the marginal search cost for a worker who already has a job is probably lower than the marginal search cost for a worker looking for his first job.

This may seem counterintuitive, but look at the implications. Suppose that a worker with a job has marginal search costs of $800, compared to a worker without a job who has marginal search costs of $5000. According to Table 17.5, the worker who already has a job will turn down an offer of a bad job, and he will also turn down an offer of a good job. He holds out for a great job. He can afford to do so because he still gets paid when he turns down a job.

SEARCHING FOR A JOB WHILE COLLECTING UNEMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

There is a case in between the above two. Some workers who are laid off from their previous jobs collect unemployment benefits. The benefits pay them a fraction of the wages they earned before. Because they are still getting paid, the costs associated with turning down a job are reduced from the first-job case, but they are not reduced as much as they would be if the worker still had his original job. Consequently, unemployment compensation reduces the marginal cost of search compared to the case where the worker never had a job, but it increases the marginal cost of search compared to the case where the worker has a job.

Suppose that a worker with unemployment compensation has a marginal search cost of $2500, which is between that of a worker looking for a first job ($5000) and that of a worker who already has a job ($800). According to Table 17.5, he turns down an okay job but will accept a good job.

Unemployment compensation leads people to hold out for a better job, which means that they tend to search longer. While they are searching they stay unemployed, and they continue to collect unemployment compensation. This leads to an often-discussed policy conundrum: the same policy that helps out workers who are laid off by providing unemployment compensation also increases the level of unemployment in the country. Whenever politicians discuss reducing the duration of unemployment compensation, this is the reason why.

PROBLEMS

1. List the components of search costs for a firm.

2. List the components of search costs for a worker. How does the list depend on whether or not the worker has a job?

3. A firm is searching for a worker. There are two types of workers, high-productivity ones and low-productivity ones. High productivity workers generate $12,000 profit for the firm. Low-productivity workers generate only $9000 profit. Two-thirds of all workers are low-productivity workers. It costs the firm $2000 to fly a worker out for an interview and do all of the associated paperwork. The worker's type is revealed during the interview. Should the firm hire the first candidate it interviews or should it hold out for a high-productivity worker?

4, A firm is searching for a worker. There are three types of workers. High-productivity workers generate $9000 in profit for the firm, medium-productivity workers generate $8000 profit, and low-productivity workers generate $7000 profit. 20% of all workers have high productivity, 30% have medium productivity, and the rest have low productivity. It costs the firm $600 to interview an applicant. If the first applicant interviewed turns out to have low productivity, should the firm hire him or interview someone else?

CHAPTER 18
BARGAINING

Search is the first phase of the hiring process, and negotiation is the second. After a firm identifies a worker it would like to hire, it then negotiates with the worker over the compensation package. Economics has several things to say about the negotiation process, and these are the subject of this chapter. Everything said in this chapter holds for all types of negotiations and both sides of the bargaining table. Everything holds for firms trying to hire workers, workers trying to get the best possible compensation package from firms, people trying to buy houses or cars, and salespeople trying to sell houses or cars.

1. THE GOAL OF BARGAINING

Whenever two parties enter into a voluntary relationship, it must be because they both benefit from the relationship. After all, if the relationship makes one of them worse off, that individual would elect not to participate in the relationship. When a firm decides to hire a worker, it must be the case that the firm expects to benefit from the employment relationship. Similarly, when a worker decides to accept a job with a firm, it must be the case that he expects to benefit from the relationship. In general, any voluntary exchange relationship benefits all parties involved.

In Chapter 4 we referred to the expected total net benefit to both parties in an employment relation as the **surplus** from the relationship. Surplus arises from every voluntary exchange relationship. Since both parties in a voluntary relationship expect to enjoy positive net benefits from the relationship, the sum of the expected net benefits must be positive. So, all voluntary relationships generate surplus to be shared by the participants.

Each participant's goal in bargaining is to get as much of the surplus as possible. There are two ways that this can happen. First, the parties can reach an agreement that makes the surplus as large as possible, so that they have as much as possible to share. Second, each individual tries to get as large a share of the surplus as possible. To achieve the first of these the parties work together to find agreements that maximize the shared surplus. The second one, though, is contentious, since when one party gets a larger share of the surplus, the other party has to get a smaller share. Most of the attention in this

chapter is devoted to the contentious part of bargaining, that is, the splitting of the surplus.

Since positive surpluses result from all voluntary exchanges, the analysis of bargaining presented here applies to a wide variety of settings. The chapter is based on the employment relationship, and tends to take the perspective of a firm negotiating with a worker, with the firm trying to get as large a share of the surplus as possible. The analysis also works for negotiations between the buyer and seller of a house or a car, and negotiations between a union and management at a large corporation.

2. SEQUENTIAL BARGAINING

In this chapter we will take two separate approaches to the analysis of bargaining. The first one relies on game theory. The idea here is to construct a realistic game that captures what happens in a negotiation setting, and then analyze the game to determine what factors enable an individual to get a larger share of the surplus.

THE SIMPLEST POSSIBLE BARGAINING GAME

We begin with the simplest possible bargaining game in which one player makes a take-it-or-leave-it offer to the other player. To make this concrete, suppose that the total surplus to be shared is S. Player 1 (she) offers to give an amount x to player 2, and then player 2 (he) has the option of either accepting or rejecting the offer. If he accepts the offer he gets x and player 1 gets $S - x$, but if he rejects both he and player 1 each get zero.

What are the equilibrium strategies in this game? To find them we use backward induction, starting with the last move of the game and working our way back to the beginning. The last move is the decision by player 2 to either accept or reject the offer of x. Accepting gives him a payoff of x, and rejecting gives him a payoff of zero. If player 2 prefers more money to less, he should accept any offer in which $x > 0$.

Given player 2's strategy, what is player 1's best response? She should offer the smallest amount that player 2 will accept, which is the smallest positive offer she can possibly make. Let's suppose that offers must be in increments of a dollar, and that S is much larger than a dollar. Then player 1 should offer \$1 to player 2, who will accept the offer.

Many people think that a strong negotiating ploy when buying a car, for example, is to let the car dealer make one offer and they will either take it or leave it. They reason that the dealer will offer to sell the car for a low price in order to ensure that it gets to sell a car, and that the customer will therefore get a good deal. The above analysis shows, however, that if you must participate in take-it-or-leave-it bargaining, make sure that you are the one making the offer. The player making the take-it-or-leave-it offer gets almost all of the surplus, and the player deciding to take it or leave it gets almost none of the

surplus. So, people who let car dealers make take-it-or-leave-it offers get a bad deal, while if someone was able to make a take-it-or-leave-it offer to a car dealer would probably do better.

A TWO-ROUND BARGAINING GAME

Now let's make the bargaining game a little more complex. As above, suppose that the surplus to be shared is S and that offers must be in one-dollar increments. In the first period, player 1 offers x to player 2, who can either accept or reject. If he accepts he gets x and player 2 gets $S - x$. If he rejects, he gets to make a counteroffer of y in round 2, which player 1 can either accept or reject. If she accepts she gets y and player 2 gets $S - y$, and if she rejects both players get zero.

Using backward induction to solve the game, we begin with player 1's decision of whether to accept or reject player 2's offer of y. If player 1 prefers more money to less, she accepts any offer with $y > 0$. Knowing this, player 2's best response is t87o offer as little as possible above zero, which is \$1. So, in round 2, player 2's equilibrium strategy is to offer $y = \$1$ to player 1, and player 1's equilibrium strategy is to accept any offer of \$1 or more. If the game makes it to round 2, then, player 1 gets a payoff of \$1 and player 2 gets a payoff of $S - 1$.

Now move to the last decision in round 1, which is player 2's decision to either accept or reject player 1's offer of x. If he accepts the offer he gets x, but if he rejects the offer the game moves into round 2 where he gets a payoff of $S - 1$. He will therefore reject any offer that pays him less than $S - 1$, and so his equilibrium strategy is to accept any offer of $x \geq S - 1$. Player 1's best response is to offer $x = S - 1$. The outcome of the game is player 1 gets \$1, and player 2 gets $S - 1$. Player 2 gets almost all of the surplus.

A THREE-ROUND BARGAINING GAME

In the one-round, take-it-or-leave-it game, the first-mover gets almost all of the surplus, but in the two-round game the second-move gets almost all of the surplus. The common feature in both games is that the player who makes the *last* offer gets most of the surplus. To make sure this is true, let's see what happens when the game has three rounds.

In the first round player 1 offers x to player 2, who can either accept or reject. If he rejects the game moves to the second round where player 2 offers y to player 1, who either accepts or rejects. If she rejects the game moves to the third and final round, where player 1 offers z to player 2 who either accepts or rejects. If he rejects the offer both players get zero.

As before, in the last round the player making the accept/reject decision accepts any offer that is better than rejecting, so player 2 accepts any offer with $z \geq \$1$. Player 1's best response in round 3 is to offer \$1. In round 2 player 1 knows that she can get $S -$

1 if she holds out to round 3, and so she rejects any offer with $y < S - 1$. Player 2's best response is to offer $y = S - 1$. Moving to round 1, player 2 knows that he can do no better than \$1 if he rejects the offer, so he is willing to accept any offer with $x \geq \$1$. Player 1's best response is to offer $x = \$1$. Player 1, who makes the last offer in the three-round game, gets $S - 1$, and player 2 gets \$1. Once again, the player who makes the last offer gets most of the surplus.

3. IMPATIENCE. UNCERTAINTY, AND RISK AVERSION

So far the only aspect of the game that impacts a negotiator's bargaining power is the order of play, specifically who makes the last offer. In this section we explore two additional factors that affect bargaining power – impatience and risk aversion.

IMPATIENCE

Consider the two-round game in which the surplus to be shared is S, player 1 offers x to player 2 who either accepts or rejects, and if he rejects he makes a counteroffer of y to player 1. If player 1 rejects the offer in the second round they both get zero. Otherwise they get their agreed-upon payoffs. Offers must be made in increments of a dollar.

To account for impatience, suppose that player 1 has a discount factor of r_1 and that player 2 has a discount factor of r_2. (Discount factors were reviewed in Section 16.1.) This means that \$1 in round 2 is worth $\$1/(1 + r_2)$ to player 2 in round 1. The larger r_2 is the smaller $\$1/(1 + r_2)$ is, and the less player 2 values the future payment. So, higher values of r_2 make player 2 more impatient, and higher values of r_1 make player 1 more impatient.

In Section 2 we analyzed a game in which $r_1 = r_2 = 0$, so that both players were perfectly patient, and we found that player 2 gets a payoff of $S - 1$ while player 1 only gets \$1. Let's reanalyze the game with r_1 and r_2 greater than zero so that both players are impatient. As usual we start with the last decision and work our way back to the beginning of the game. The last decision is player 1's decision of whether to accept or reject the offer of y in round 2. Assuming she prefers more money to less, she accepts any offer with $y > 0$. Player 2's best response is to offer the smallest possible positive amount, which we assume is \$1. So, if the game gets to period 2 player 2 gets a payoff of $S - 1$ and player 1 gets \$1. This is the same as in Section 2.

The analysis becomes different when we start analyzing round 1. Look at player 2's decision of whether to accept or reject an offer of x. He knows that if he rejects the offer his payoff will be $S - 1$, but that payoff is in the future and so it is discounted. He is indifferent between receiving $S - 1$ in round 2 and receiving $(S - 1)/(1 + r_2)$ in round 1. Consequently, he is willing to accept any offer with $x \geq (S - 1)/(1 + r_2)$. Player 1's best response is to offer $x = (S - 1)/(1 + r_2)$.

In this game player 2 has all the bargaining power, since he makes the last offer, but that power is diminished when he is impatient. This is most easily seen with some numerical examples. Suppose that S = \$21. When he is completely patient with $r_2 = 0$, his payoff from bargaining is $S - 1$ = \$20. If he is a little impatient, with $r_2 = 0.05$, his payoff falls to \$20/1.05 = \$19.05. If he becomes more impatient, with $r_2 = 0.10$, his payoff falls further to \$20/1.10 = \$18.18. The less patient player 2 is, the worse he does in bargaining.

Car dealers know this and use it to their advantage. When someone tries to buy a car the salesperson makes the first offer, writing down a price that is very close to the sticker price of the car. The buyer makes a counteroffer, which the salesperson then takes to her manager. The two leave the customer alone with nothing to do in a little cubicle while they do something else, and eventually the salesperson comes back with a slightly better offer than the original one, but not much. An impatient buyer will get fed up at this point and try to speed up the bargaining process by giving away a greater amount of the surplus. The salesperson and her manager, in contrast, are very patient because this is their job. By negotiating slowly, they are able to capture more of the surplus.

UNCERTAINTY

Bargaining processes break down for a variety of reasons. When a firm negotiates with a prospective employee, sometimes the candidate gets a better offer from a different firm and the negotiation process ends. Sometimes while the negotiations are going on the firm suffers a negative demand shock and the position disappears. Sometimes circumstances arise for the candidate making it undesirable for him to move to the city where the firm is located, thereby ending his interest in the job.

To add randomness, consider once again the two-round bargaining problem, assuming that the two participants are patient as in Section 2. Without any randomness player 2's payoff is $S - 1$ and player 1 gets \$1. To add randomness, suppose that something happens between round 1 and round 2. If player 2 accepts player 1's offer in the first round they both get their agreed-upon payoffs. If player 2 rejects, though, a random event occurs, and with probability p the game ends and both players get nothing. With probability $1 - p$ the game moves on to the second round, and player 2 makes an offer to player 1, which she can either accept or reject, as usual. If she accepts they get their agreed-upon payoffs, and if she rejects they both get nothing.

The presence of uncertainty changes the outcome of the bargaining game even if the players are not risk averse. To see why, suppose that player 2 is risk neutral, caring only about the expected value of the payoff and not caring whether or not it is random. Start at the end of the game. If the game makes it to round 2, player 1 accepts any offer greater than zero, and player 2 offers her \$1, which she accepts. So, if the game makes it

to round 2, player 2 gets $S - 1$ and player 1 gets \$1. Now look at player 2's decision to accept or reject the offer in round 1. If he rejects the offer there is a probability p that he gets nothing and a probability $1 - p$ that he gets $S - 1$ because the game continues to round 2. His expected payoff is $p \cdot \$0 + (1 - p)\cdot(S - 1)$ which is less than $S - 1$, so he is willing to accept less in round 1 because of the chance that round 2 will never happen.

If the probability of breakdown is sufficiently high, bargaining power can switch from the party making the last offer to the one making the first offer. Suppose that the surplus is \$21 and that the probability of breakdown is $p = 0.6$. Then player 2 is willing to accept any offer $x \geq (1 - p)\cdot(S - 1) = (1 - 0.6)(\$21 - 1) = \$8$, and player 1's best response is to offer \$8. Player 1's surplus is $\$21 - 8 = \$13$ and player 2's is \$8. Compare this with what happens when the probability of breakdown is zero. Since player 2 makes the last offer his share of the surplus is \$20 and player 1 only gets \$1.

RISK AVERSION

The above analysis looked at a sequential alternating-offers bargaining problem in which the process breaks down with some probability. We saw that the existence of uncertainty alone had an impact on the players' bargaining power, even in the absence of risk aversion. People tend to be risk averse, though, and risk aversion has a further effect on the bargaining outcome.

When someone is risk averse he is willing to pay a positive risk premium to remove the randomness and receive the expected payoff for sure, and the more risk averse he is the higher the risk premium he is willing to pay. Look at player 2's decision in round 1. He knows that if he rejects the offer he can get $S - 1$ in round 2 with probability $1 - p$, and he gets 0 otherwise. The expected value of this gamble is $(1 - p)(S - 1)$, and he is willing to pay a risk premium of RP_2 (where the subscript is for the player, not the period) to avoid the risk. Consequently, the gamble is worth $(1 - p)(S - 1) - RP_2$, and he is willing to accept any offer in round 1 of $x \geq (1 - p)(S - 1) - RP_2$. Player 1's best response is to offer exactly $x = (1 - p)(S - 1) - RP_2$, which player 2 accepts. Player 1's payoff is $S - x$ which can be rearranged to get

$$\begin{aligned} S - x &= S - [(1 - p)(S - 1) - RP_2] \\ &= S - [S - 1 - pS + p - RP_2] \\ &= p(S - 1) + 1 + RP_2. \end{aligned}$$

So, player 2's risk aversion hurts player 2 but helps player 1. And, the more risk averse player 2 is, the higher the risk premium he is willing to pay to avoid the randomness. Consequently, being more risk averse worsens player 2's bargaining position.

Being risk averse herself does not hurt player 1 in the two-round game. It would in the three-round game. At the end of round 2 player 1 would have to decide whether or

not to accept player 2's offer. If she does she gets that payment for sure, but if she rejects it she has a $1 - p$ chance of getting $S - 1$ and a p chance of getting zero. If she is risk averse she is willing to pay a premium to avoid this gamble, and the more risk averse she is the higher the premium she is willing to pay. Let's work the three-round game through to find the payoffs of the two players. We already know that if the game gets to round 3 player 1 receives $S - 1$ and player 2 receives 1. Letting player 1's risk premium be RP_1, she is willing to accept any offer $y \geq (1 - p)(S - 1) - RP_1$ in round 2. Player 2's best response is to offer exactly $y \geq (1 - p)(S - 1) - RP_1$, which player 1 would accept. Player 2's payoff if the game reaches round 2, then, is $p(S - 1) + 1 + RP_1$. Moving back to round 1, if player 2 rejects player 1's offer he then faces a gamble which pays $p(S - 1) + 1 + RP_1$ with probability $1 - p$ and which pays zero with probability p. The expected value of this gamble is $(1 - p)[p(S - 1) + 1 + RP_1]$, and he is willing to pay a risk premium RP_2 to avoid the randomness. Consequently, he is willing to accept any offer

$$x \geq (1 - p)[p(S - 1) + 1 + RP_1] - RP_2,$$

and player 1 offers exactly this amount, which player 2 then accepts.

The right-hand side of the above expression is player 2's payoff in the three-round bargaining game with risk. Player 2's payoff rises when player 1 becomes more risk averse but falls when player 2 becomes more risk averse. Since player 1 gets S minus player 2's payoff, player 1's payoff increases when player 2 becomes more risk averse but decreases when player 1 becomes more risk averse. This leads to a simple summary: being risk averse reduces a player's bargaining power.

4. THE NASH APPROACH TO BARGAINING

Besides giving us our notion of equilibrium in games, John Nash analyzed bargaining problems in a non-game-theoretic way. Instead of looking at the give and take of a protracted negotiation *process*, he decided to look at the characteristics that a bargaining *outcome* should have, ignoring the process by which the outcome is reached. The resulting outcome is known as the **Nash bargaining solution**.

Nash identified four properties he thought a "nice" bargaining solution should have. Before getting to those four properties, though, it is necessary to set up some notation. There are two individuals bargaining over a surplus of size S, and we will call them 1 and 2. If they reach an agreement individual 1 gets x_1 and player 2 gets x_2. If they fail to reach an agreement player 1 gets a payoff of d_1 and player 2 gets d_2. These are their **disagreement payoffs**. The Nash bargaining solution allocates x_1^* to player 1 and x_2^* to player 2.

We can now list Nash's four properties of a "nice" bargaining solution.

1. *Pareto efficiency*: The allocation of x_1^* to individual 1 and x_2^* to individual 2 is a Pareto efficient allocation, which means that there is no other allocation which makes one individual better off without making the other one worse off. To see what this means in a bargaining setting, it is useful to look at an allocation that is *not* Pareto efficient. The allocation that gives each player $S/3$ is such an allocation. The total allocation to the two players is then $2S/3$, with $S/3$ left on the table and claimed by nobody. It is possible, for example, to give player 1 more without taking away from player 2 because of the money left on the table. In our setting the Pareto efficiency requirement is simply a requirement that the two parties leave no money on the table, that is, they split the entire surplus.

2. *Invariance to equivalent representations*: The allocation should not depend on how the payoffs are measured. For example, it should not matter whether the payoffs are measured in dollars or euros. The same split of the surplus should result no matter which way the payoffs are counted.

3. *Symmetry*. If the two parties are identical, they should get the same shares of the surplus. Given the setting, the only way that the two parties could differ is by having different disagreement points. The symmetry requirement states that if the two parties have the same disagreement payoffs then they must split the surplus equally.

4. *Independence of irrelevant alternatives*: This requirement is the trickiest to explain, so let's begin with an example. Suppose that when the surplus to be shared is $S = 20$ and the disagreement payoffs are $d_1 = 3$ and $d_2 = 2$, the two players reach an agreement that gives 12 to player 1 and 8 to player 2. Now suppose that the bargaining is restricted so that the players are not allowed to reach an agreement that gives either player a payoff less than 6. Since both players were already getting more than 6 anyway, restricting the bargaining in this way does not impede them from reaching the same agreement they would have reached before the restriction. So, the restriction is irrelevant, and it should not have any impact on the agreement that is reached.

What occurred in the preceding example was we restricted the bargaining process in a way that ruled out **irrelevant alternatives**, that is, alternatives that would not have been reached by the bargaining process anyway. The requirement is that ruling out irrelevant alternatives does not change the bargaining outcome.

Ruling out *relevant* alternatives can impact the bargaining solution. Suppose that in the above example bargaining is restricted so that players are not allowed to reach an agreement that gives either player a payoff less than 9. This would rule out the previous bargaining outcome that gave player 1 a payoff of 12 and player 2 a payoff of 8. The new restriction rules out this alternative, and it is a relevant alternative. The players would have to reach a different agreement.

Nash found that there is a unique bargaining outcome that satisfies the above four requirements of Pareto efficiency, invariance to equivalent representations, symmetry, and invariance to irrelevant alternatives. Moreover, the unique solution to the bargaining problem is

$$x_1^* = \frac{S + d_1 - d_2}{2}$$

and

$$x_2^* = \frac{S + d_2 - d_1}{2}.$$

This is a slick piece of mathematics, showing that a set of seemingly innocuous requirements yields a single formula for the bargaining solution. We will not be able to prove that these formulas are the *only* ones that satisfy the four requirements, but we can verify that the four requirements are satisfied.

As discussed above, Pareto efficiency holds if there is no money left on the table, that is, if the two shares add up to S, the total surplus available. Adding the two together yields

$$x_1^* + x_2^* = \frac{S + d_1 - d_2}{2} + \frac{S + d_2 - d_1}{2} = S.$$

The two shares add up to S, the total surplus, and so it is impossible to give one individual more of the surplus without taking some away from the other player.

Invariance to equivalent representations states that if we count the benefits differently, we still end up with the same shares. To see how this works, suppose that x_1^* and x_2^* are the amounts of surplus the two players get when the surplus and disagreement payoffs are measured in dollars. Player 1's share of the surplus is x_1^*/S and player 2's share is x_2^*/S. Now suppose that the surplus and disagreement payoffs are measured some alternative way, with the exchange rate given by e, so that the amount y in dollars is worth $z = ey$ in the alternative measurement system. The Nash bargaining solution for the new measurement system is

$$z_1^* = \frac{eS + ed_1 - ed_2}{2} = e \cdot \frac{S + d_1 - d_2}{2} = ex_1^*$$

and

$$z_2^* = \frac{eS + ed_2 - ed_1}{2} = e \cdot \frac{S + d_2 - d_1}{2} = ex_2^*.$$

Since the total surplus under the new measurement system is eS, player 1's share is $ex_1^*/eS = x_1^*/S$ and player 2's share is $ex_2^*/eS = x_2^*/S$. These are the same shares as under the original measurement system.

Symmetry states that if the two bargainers have the same disagreement payoffs then they get the same amounts of surplus. Let d be the common disagreement payoff, so that $d_1 = d_2 = d$. Then player 1's share is

$$x_1^* = \frac{S + d - d}{2} = \frac{S}{2}$$

and

$$x_2^* = \frac{S + d - d}{2} = \frac{S}{2}.$$

Both players get half of the surplus when their disagreement payoffs are the same, which is consistent with the symmetry requirement.

Finally, independence of irrelevant alternatives states that if we remove outcomes that are not the solution from consideration, we do not change the solution. This follows from the fact that x_1^* and x_2^* depend only on the total surplus available, S, and the two disagreement payoffs, d_1 and d_2. Since they do not depend on anything else, they cannot depend on which outcomes are allowed and which are not.

WHAT CAN WE LEARN FROM THE NASH BARGAINING SOLUTION?

From our perspective, the major difference between the Nash approach to bargaining and the game theory approach is that the Nash bargaining outcome is driven primarily by the disagreement payoffs while the game-theoretic outcome is driven mostly by the order of play, specifically who makes the last offer. Because the Nash bargaining solution has variables not considered in the game theory approach, we can learn something new about what strengthens an individual's bargaining power.

Look at player 1's payoff from the Nash bargaining solution, which is rewritten below.

$$x_1^* = \frac{S}{2} + \frac{d_1}{2} - \frac{d_2}{2}.$$

Written this way, it becomes clear that there are three ways to make x_1^* larger. First, if the surplus S grows, player 1's payoff increases. According to the Nash bargaining solution, an increase in the size of the surplus makes both players better off. This is in contrast to the game theoretic solution, in which the player making the last offer gets $S - 1$ and the other player gets \$1. In the game theoretic solution, only one player gains when the surplus grows.

Player 1's payoff in the Nash bargaining solution also grows when his disagreement payoff, d_1, gets larger. The disagreement payoff is the amount player 1 gets if the two players fail to reach an agreement. An increase in the disagreement payoff makes player 1 better off if they disagree, allowing him to be more discriminating about the agreements he makes. In order to entice player 1 to reach an agreement, player 2 must give up more, and so player 1 gets a higher payoff when his disagreement payoff rises. For the same reasons player 1 gets a higher payoff when player 2's disagreement payoff falls. When 2's disagreement payoff falls, player 1 need not give up as much in order to get 2 to agree, and so 2's bargaining position is weakened.

5. GENERAL LESSONS

By using the two approaches to bargaining, we have learned four lessons about what improves an individual's bargaining power and allows him to increase his share of the surplus.

1. *The order of play matters, and it is advantageous to be able to make the last offer.* In the game-theoretic model of Section 2, the player that makes the last offer gets almost all of the surplus and the other player gets almost none.

2. *The disagreement payoffs matter, and it is advantageous to have a higher disagreement payoff than your opponent.* The disagreement payoff is the payoff a player gets if the negotiation process fails to result in an agreement. In the Nash bargaining model a higher disagreement payoff leads to a larger share of the surplus.

3. *Impatience hurts.* Being impatient makes future payoffs less valuable, and if the negotiation process takes time, an impatient bargainer is willing to settle for a smaller share of the surplus in order to reach an agreement sooner.

4. *The existence of uncertainty helps the individual making the first offer*. When there is some chance that the negotiation process will end before an agreement is reached, both parties are willing to settle for less to avoid the risk. In particular, the party making the accept/reject decision in the first round is willing to settle for less because there might not be a second round after a rejection.

4. *Risk aversion hurts.* Risk averse negotiators are willing to pay a premium to avoid risk, which means that they are willing to pay a premium in order to avoid the possibility that negotiations break down. This translates into being willing to accept lower offers, and the more risk averse negotiators are the worse offers they are willing to accept.

PROBLEMS

1. What are the players' objectives in a bargaining game?

2. What are the differences between the alternating-offers approach and the Nash approach to bargaining?

3. Suppose that two players play alternating-offers bargaining game with a surplus of $100. Offers must be in increments of $5. The game is played for four rounds, with player 1 making the first offer. Both players have discount rates of zero, and the probability that the game ends between rounds is zero.

(a) Describe the strategies for both players.
(b) What agreement is reached, and when is it reached?

4. Suppose that two players play a two-period alternating offers bargaining game with a surplus of $100. Offers must be in increments of $1. Both players have a discount rate of 50%. Find the equilibrium of this game.

5. Suppose that two players play a two-period alternating offers bargaining game with a surplus of $100. Offers must be in increments of $1. The future is not discounted, but if no agreement is reached in the first period, there is a 90% chance that the game ends and both players get payoffs of $0. Neither player is risk averse. Find the equilibrium of this game.

6. For the situation in problem 5, find the highest probability of breakdown that guarantees that player 1 gets at least half of the surplus.

7. In the Nash bargaining game the surplus is $10,000, player 1's disagreement payoff is $500, and player 2's disagreement payoff is $2000.

(a) Find the Nash bargaining solution.

(b) What happens to the Nash bargaining solution when player 1's disagreement payoff doubles to $1000?

CHAPTER 19
TRAINING

When workers begin their first jobs, they often come unequipped with the skills needed to perform well. Because of this, it is common for companies to send new employees through training programs. These programs may cover such topics as the company's product line, general sales skills, or internal accounting procedures, and can last anywhere from a few days to months or even years. The employees get paid while they are trained, and often get a raise when the training session ends.

Perhaps the most visible example of training is the training of new restaurant servers. Usually when a server is being trained he is followed by an experienced server. The trainee does all of the work under the trainer's supervision. The trainer gets all of the tips, so that she gets her usual pay. The trainee is typically paid minimum wage during the training period. After the training period ends he moves to the standard restaurant server compensation plan, which is typically a small hourly wage plus tips.

Training raises an interesting issue for the employment relationship, and this chapter examines that issue.

1. TRAINING IN PROFESSIONAL SPORTS

When a player starts out in professional baseball, almost invariably he begins his career in a team's minor league system. Before making it to the major leagues he must work his way through three tiers of minor league teams. The minor leagues allow players to hone their talents and, at the same time, they allow teams to identify that talent. Players are paid for playing in the minor leagues, averaging about $1500 per month. Meanwhile the average salary for major league players is about $2.4 million per year.

What makes this interesting from our perspective is that the major league teams pay minor league players and, at the same time, provide them with skills that enable some of them to have extremely lucrative careers in the majors. Once a player works his way through the minor leagues, he is valuable not only to the team that paid for his training, but to all of the teams in the major leagues. Those other teams could offer him a higher salary and entice him away from the team that trained him, and could thereby get all the benefits of a training program without having to incur the expense of running training programs themselves. Nevertheless, all of the teams have minor league systems.

Why doesn't a team simply dispense with its minor league system and just steal talented rookies from other major league teams? The answer is that while a team is free to dispense with its minor league system, baseball rules prohibit them from outbidding other teams for their newest players. Players cannot become free agents and sell their services to the highest bidder until they have completed six seasons in the majors.

The minor league training program and the free agency rule go hand in hand. Without the free agency rule, teams would never receive the benefit from their training programs because all of the players they trained successfully would be bid away by other teams. This would allow players to enjoy all the benefits of the training program, since the result of the training would be extremely high salaries. The free agency rule, however, makes them wait six years before getting these extremely high salaries. Teams can pay them less than they are worth (but still a lot of money) for their first six years in the majors. In essence, when a player enters the minor leagues he promises to allow the team to capture some of the benefits of the training for his first six years in the majors.

Other sports operate differently. Football, for example, does not have a traditional minor league system, using college football as a training system instead. Since the NFL teams do not pay for the college training, they have less to lose when a player is bid away early in his professional career. This has led to a less restrictive free agency rule. In the NFL, a player is tied to his original team for his first two seasons. In his third year he is a restricted free agent, which means that he can negotiate with other teams but his original team has a right to match the competing offer. Beginning in his fourth year he is an unrestricted free agent and can sign with any team he wants. The NFL free agency rule restricts a player's choices for about half of the time that baseball's free agency rule does.

2. TRAINING AND HUMAN CAPITAL

Training is just like education except for who pays for it. Students (or their families) pay for their own education. Firms pay for their workers' training. The firm's training costs include not only the costs of instruction and materials, but also the amount they pay the trainees during the training period. Since the trainees produce very little during training, they generate very little or no revenue to offset these costs.

The reason that firms train their workers is to make them more productive. Training is not the only way to achieve this goal, though. Instead, the firm could provide the worker with more or better equipment to work with, and this new equipment would allow the worker to produce more output per hour of work. In economic terminology, equipment is a form of capital, and capital makes labor more productive. Since training also makes workers more productive, training can also be thought of as an investment in capital. This time, though, it is **human capital**, the skills, knowledge, and experience that makes workers more productive. Training is an investment in human capital.

It is useful to distinguish between two components of human capital – general skills and specific skills. **General skills** are skills that make a worker more productive and are useful at other firms besides the one where he currently works. **Specific skills** are skills that make a worker more productive at his current employer but do not make him more productive anywhere else.

Most skills you can think of are general skills. Being able to type, fly an airplane, drive a forklift, write a will, or make a sale are all general skills, since they are useful at more than one employer. If one firm trains its workers to provide them with one of these skills, that worker could use the same skill at another employer. For example, if a firm trains a worker to fly an airplane, the new pilot could also fly airplanes at different airline companies.

Specific skills are a little harder to think of, since almost all skills can be used at more than one firm. But examples do exist. Some firms use unique accounting or inventory software, and knowledge of these systems makes workers more productive as long as they stay at their current employers, but they do not make the workers any more productive anywhere else. Being able to connect a missile to the underside of a fighter jet is a useful skill in the air force, but it is not so useful in other lines of work. There are also more mundane examples. If the firm has a long-standing but difficult client with very peculiar tastes, being able to work with that client is a valuable skill as long as the worker is at the current firm, but it is not a valuable skill once the worker leaves.

It is also useful to look at some things that are not specific skills. Being able to hit a curve ball is a useful skill to a baseball player but not to anyone else. However, being able to hit a curve ball makes the player valuable to every baseball team, and since there are over 30 major league teams, the skill makes the player productive at more than one employer. Being able to hit a curve ball is a general, although highly specialized, skill.

Just because someone acquires specific skills does not mean that he cannot acquire general skills, too. For example, learning the tastes of a difficult client is a specific skill, but learning to be more tolerant of difficult people is a general skill. Nevertheless, we will look at the two types of skills as if they are separate, and the reason for separating the two types of human capital is that they have different implications for how the firm behaves, as will be seen in the next two sections.

3. BARGAINING AND THE VALUE OF TRAINING

After a worker acquires skills through company-sponsored training, he is more valuable to the firm than he was before. If he acquires general skills he is also more valuable to other firms, but if the skills are specific skills he is only more valuable to his original firm.

For the training to be potentially valuable to the firm, it must generate a surplus, that is, the benefit from the acquired skill must outweigh the cost of the training. Denote the potential benefit to the firm from training by X, and it measures the increase in net revenue generated by the worker's new skills. The cost of training is C, and it is the sum of the expense of running the training program and the amount paid to the worker during the training period. Since training generates a surplus, it must be the case that $X > C$. Finally, to provide us with a framework that covers both general and specific skills, suppose that if the worker leaves the firm after completing training his next best alternative pays him an amount Y more than he makes at the current firm.

BARGAINING

After he completes the training program, the employee finds himself more valuable to the firm than he was before. After all, the training program makes him more productive, able to produce more net revenue than he did before. The firm earns higher profit, and it is natural for the employee to want a share of the surplus. So he bargains with the firm for higher pay, and threatens to leave the firm if an agreement is not reached.

To find the outcome of the bargaining process we must choose one of the bargaining solutions from Chapter 18. There we had two basic approaches. One was the sequential approach in which the party that makes the last offer gets almost all of the surplus, and the other was the Nash bargaining approach in which the two parties share the surplus. Bargaining power in the sequential approach is determined by the rule determining who makes the last offer, though, and there is no clear reason why either the worker or the firm would always be the one to make the last offer. Since the Nash approach does not rely on the order of the offers, it makes sense to use the Nash approach here.

To use the Nash approach we must first find three things: the surplus, the worker's disagreement payoff, and the firm's disagreement payoff. This is trickier than one might think, though. After the training is complete the firm's training cost C is sunk, and so it no longer matters for the analysis. The surplus is the additional net revenue the firm can potentially receive from the worker applying his new skills, X. If the firm and worker fail to reach an agreement, the worker leaves for a new job. The firm's disagreement payoff is zero and, as discussed above, the worker goes to the alternative firm where his pay increases by the amount Y.

According to the Nash bargaining solution, when the surplus is S, player 1's disagreement payoff is d_1, and player 2's disagreement payoff is d_2, player 1's payoff from bargaining is

$$x_1^* = \frac{S + d_1 - d_2}{2}$$

and player 2's payoff is

$$x_2^* = \frac{S + d_2 - d_1}{2}.$$

Letting the worker be player 1 and the firm be player 2, we get that the surplus is $S = X$, the worker's disagreement payoff is $d_1 = Y$, and the firm's disagreement payoff is $d_2 = 0$. When the negotiation concludes the worker's payoff is

$$W = \frac{X + Y}{2}$$

and the firm's payoff is

$$F = \frac{X - Y}{2}.$$

To see how the two parties fare, let's try some numbers. Suppose that X = \$20,000, C = \$10,000, and Y = \$4000. The firm pays a training expense of \$10,000 in order to get a potential gain in net revenue of \$20,000. If the worker leaves the firm he can get a pay increase of \$4000 from the other firm. According to the Nash bargaining solution, after completing the training program and renegotiating his salary the worker gets a raise of W = (\$20,000 + 4000)/2 = \$12,000. The firm's payoff is F = (\$20,000 − 4000)/2 = \$8000.

This suggests a problem. The firm spends \$10,000 training the worker but is only left \$8000 after renegotiating the worker's salary. Training is not worthwhile for the firm. The worker gets too much of the benefit of the training and the firm gets too little. Since the firm can foresee the outcome of the renegotiation process, it never bothers training the worker in the first place.

CONDITIONS FOR TRAINING TO OCCUR

We have found that if the firm trains a worker at an expense of C, its benefit from the training is $F = (X - Y)/2$, where X is the firm's gain in net revenue if an agreement is reached and Y is the increase in pay the worker gets if he goes to the next best alternative employer. Several conditions must occur for the firm to find training worthwhile.

1. *For training to occur the worker must be better off staying at the current firm.* The only way for the firm to get a positive benefit from training the worker is if $X > Y$, so that $F > 0$. Thought about a different way, the most the firm can offer to the worker is X, and that would give away all of the benefit from training to the worker. If the worker can get more than X by going to the other firm, he will.

2. *For training to occur the firm must recover the costs of training*. The firm knows before it trains the worker that its benefit from training will be $F = (X - Y)/2$. Since the training program costs the firm C, it only undertakes the training program if $F > C$. Since $F \leq X/2$, the training cost cannot exceed half of the potential benefits if the program is going to be worthwhile for the firm. In addition, the more valuable the skills are to other firms, the less the firm is willing to spend on training.

3. *The worker benefits from both general and specific skills, but benefits more from general skills.* The worker's payoff after being trained and renegotiating his salary is $W = (X + Y)/2$, where X is the additional net revenue the skills generate from the firm and Y is the additional pay he could get from the next best alternative firm. Since it must be the case that $X > 2C$ for the firm to even consider having a training program, the worker makes at least C.

The difference between general and specific skills is found in the value of Y. General skills are valuable to the alternative employer, while specific skills are not. Consequently, $Y > 0$ for general skills and $Y = 0$ for specific skills. In general Y reflects the **portability** of the skills, that is, how much of the value of the skills goes with the worker when he moves to another firm. Specific skills are not portable at all. At the other extreme the general skills are completely portable in the sense that they are just as valuable at another firm as they are at the original firm, which implies that $Y = X$.

Completely portable skills are a problem for the firm. If $Y = X$ then the firm's benefit from training is $F = (X - Y)/2 = 0$. The firm gets no benefit from providing completely portable general skills.

4. *In this model the worker benefits more than the firm.* The worker's benefit is $W = (X + Y)/2$ and the firm's is $F = (X - Y)/2$. The difference is $W - F = Y$. The worker's additional benefit is the amount he would receive from the other firm if he failed to reach an agreement with the original firm.

When one considers the training cost, the worker does even better. The worker receives Y more in benefits than the firm, and the firm pays C more in costs, the gap between the worker's net benefit and the firm's net benefit is $Y + C$.

4. MAKING TRAINING WORTHWHILE FOR THE FIRM

The preceding section painted a pretty bleak picture for the firm. The firm benefits from training only when the costs involved are small and the skills imparted to the worker are either specific or not very portable. Even so, the worker benefits more than the firm. The firm's net benefit from training is $F - C = (X - Y)/2 - C$. There are two things the firm can do to increase its net benefit from training. It can reduce the training costs C or it can reduce the portability of the skills so that Y falls.

SHARING THE TRAINING COSTS

The only way for the firm to reduce the training costs is to share them with the worker. The way to do this is to negotiate the worker's pay *before* the training begins. When bargaining occurs before the training begins, the training costs are no longer sunk and therefore matter to the firm. The surplus being negotiated over is $X - C$, the additional net revenue generated by the new skills minus the cost of providing them.

This is not the only change, though. If the worker and the firm fail to reach an agreement, the outcome is that the worker does not receive any training and does not acquire any new skills. This does not make him any more valuable to outside firms, and so the worker's disagreement payoff is zero. The firm's disagreement payoff is also zero, since it incurs no training expense and gets no benefit.

Since the worker and the firm have the same disagreement payoffs, the Nash bargaining solution splits the surplus between them, so that

$$W = F = \frac{X - C}{2}.$$

The worker and the firm share the benefits and the costs equally.

There is still a problem, though. Once the worker completes training, he is more valuable to the firm and, depending on the skills, he may also be more valuable to outside employers. He could threaten to leave unless his salary is renegotiated. Recognizing this in advance, the firm will have to agree to pay the same salary after training as it would have if it negotiated the deal after the training ended. So, the worker's share of the training costs have to be paid up front, before the training ends. This is, in fact, the way most firms handle their training. They make workers accept low salaries during the training period and then they get raises after the training ends. Minor league baseball salaries provide a good example of this pattern.

REDUCING THE PORTABILITY OF SKILLS

Portability refers to the value of the skills to other firms. One way to reduce portability would be to provide training only in skills that are not very portable. This

does happen, and the best evidence is college education. Most students (or their families) pay their own way through college, and only rarely do firms send their workers to college. A college education provides very portable general skills, and it would not make any sense for an employer to provide these skills.

Sometimes, though, a firm finds it desirable to train a worker in general skills, and it still wants to reduce portability. It can do this by having the worker sign a contract saying that he will not leave the firm for a certain period after the training ends. This does two things. First, it makes the worker less valuable to other firms because they will not get the worker for as long. Second, it provides a period in which the firm does not have to pay the worker as much since it does not have to match salary offers by outside firms. Professional baseball uses this sort of contract to make minor league teams profitable. Players cannot negotiate with other teams during their first six seasons in the majors, and so teams can pay the players less during this time.

A PUZZLE: WHY DO SOME FIRMS REIMBURSE EMPLOYEES FOR COLLEGE TUITION?

Corporations in America spent an estimated $10 billion on tuition reimbursement in 2003.[*] These payments were made to reimburse employees who spent their own money on college tuition, and most corporations capped their reimbursement levels at $5250 per employee per year. At the same time, they paid little attention to which courses their employees take. Furthermore, about half of the corporate respondents in a survey were unsure that tuition reimbursement adds value to the company.

The analysis in the preceding section argues that by reimbursing tuition firms provide their workers with general skills, and that it is difficult for firms to benefit from providing such skills. Why, then, do so many firms do it? The explanation may well be that they are a leftover from pre-internet days. Tuition reimbursement programs were introduced in the 1970s and 1980s when workers would have to scrape together degrees from the few nighttime courses offered by local two- and four-year colleges. In the 1990s, though, on-line, for-profit universities became more common, offering relevant courses that are available after business hours. Today about 60% of their attendees receive at least some financial support from their employers.

[*] The information presented here is taken from Andy Meisler, "A Matter of Degrees," *Workforce Management*, May 2004.

5. TRAINING AND THE INCENTIVES TO REMAIN WITH A FIRM

From the above discussion it would seem that training gives workers an incentive to leave the firm, especially since it is the threat of leaving that allows them to benefit

from the training. Specific skills, though, give workers an incentive to stay with the firm as long as possible.

Specific skills are skills that are valuable to the current firm but not to any other firm. As we saw in Section 3, the worker benefits from acquiring specific skills since the firm is willing to pay him more to keep him from leaving and taking his specific skills with him. Because of this, the worker is worth more at his current firm than at any alternative firm, and is paid more at his current firm than he could get an any alternative firm. Specific skills provide workers with an incentive to stay with the firm longer.

The same sort of incentives occur in other places. One is college. If a student leaves his current college and transfers to another one, some of his courses will transfer and count toward a degree at the new college and some will not. The more courses he has that will not transfer, the less incentive he has to change schools.

An interesting application of this reasoning is to marriage. The longer people are married to each other, the more they learn about their spouse's likes and dislikes and the more skills they have at keeping each other happy. These are highly specific skills, since they will probably not work with different partners. The logic of specific skills says that the longer a couple is married, the more likely it is to stay married. Children can also be considered a form of specific capital, worth more in the current marriage than in any future marriage. The prediction is that couples with children are more likely to stay together than couples without children. Both of these predictions, that divorce rates are lower for couples who have been married longer or who have children, turn out to be verified by the evidence.

PROBLEMS

1. Define human capital.

2. List two general skills and two specific skills.

3. Suppose that a firm has trained a worker and provided him with $10,000 worth of completely-portable general skills. Since the skills are completely portable, the worker's disagreement point is $10,000. The firm's training cost is $2000. What are the payoffs for the worker and the firm? Should the firm have trained the worker?

4. Suppose that a firm has trained a worker and provided him with $10,000 worth of non-portable specific skills. Since the skills are completely non-portable, the worker's disagreement point is $0. The firm's training cost is $2000. What are the payoffs for the worker and the firm? Should the firm have trained the worker?

5. Suppose that a firm has trained a worker and provided him with $10,000 worth of semi-portable skills. Because the skills are semi-portable, the worker's disagreement point is *Y*. The firm's training cost is $2000. What is the smallest value *Y* can take for the firm to regret having trained the worker?

CHAPTER 20
BENEFITS

Companies provide their employees with a wide variety of benefits, which are non-monetary components of the compensation package. Some common examples of benefits are health insurance, paid sick leave, and paid vacation leave. But benefit packages can include more unusual items, too. Many large companies are building fitness centers and outdoor walking and jogging trails for their employees, and some companies are providing their employees with monthly chair massages. One of the newer areas in which companies are focusing their attention is the quality of the coffee and snacks that employees have access to.

Large companies spend about $2.50 per hour on employee benefits such as these, and so benefits are a significant component of the compensation package. Benefit packages raise many issues that are relevant for economic analysis, and this chapter explores several of those issues.

1. THE ISSUE OF CHILD CARE

A current topic of some contention in firms, especially large ones, is whether or not they should provide child care for their workers. Most of the issues that arise about benefits in general appear in arguments for or against child care facilities in firms, and so we begin the chapter with an overview of the debate.

Let's start with some facts.[1] According to the U.S. Census, 60% of mothers return to work within a year of having a baby. About half of those families rely on day care centers to look after their children. A study by the Children's Defense Fund found that fees at day care centers were higher than tuition at a state university. In 2003, only 5% of companies overall, and 10% of large companies, provided on-site or near-site day care.

In spite of its rarity, there is evidence that company-sponsored day care facilities can be attractive to both workers and firms. One study found that at companies with day care facilities, 42% of their employees said that day care was the reason that they joined the company, and 20% said that they had passed up better opportunities because they

[1] This section is based on "A Case for Child Care" by Patrick J. Kiger, *Workforce Management*, April 2004, pp. 34-40.

wanted the child care. A second study found that worker absenteeism falls significantly when the company provides day care, presumably because workers do not have trouble with babysitters who are sick or fail to show up. A third study showed that the availability of child care for emergencies actually saves the company $176 in lost productivity every time a worker uses it. Evidence also suggests that workers who place their children in company-sponsored day care facilities perform better and stay with the firm longer. Finally, the federal government and many states offer tax advantages to companies that operate day care centers for their employees.

Given that on-site day care centers have so many advantages, why do so few companies have them? There seem to be two main reasons. The first is that they are expensive. One study estimates that providing on-site day care costs companies somewhere between $4 and $8 per employee per hour, which is a substantial amount to spend on benefits for employees. In fact, companies typically spend only about $2.50 per hour on benefits, including health care, vacation time, and so on, and so the day care expense represents a significant increase. Many of the employees would rather just have the extra money. The second reason is that subsidized child care helps workers with young children, but does nothing for workers without young children. This raises fairness issues – why should the firm pay an extra $10,000 per year benefit to some workers but not to others? Essentially, workers without young children subsidize those with young children, because without the day care center their pay could be higher.

Many analysts think that large companies will soon have to build on-site day care centers in order to remain competitive. The reasoning goes like this. Younger workers will be attracted to companies with day care centers, because they are the ones who benefit most from the existence of the centers. Older workers will be attracted to companies without day care centers. In many industries younger workers are more productive than older workers, and in many other industries a firm with a mix of younger and older workers will outperform firms with only older workers. In order to achieve the right mix and meet the performance goals, large companies will have to have day care centers.

This discussion has raised several issues that will receive attention later in the chapter. Why is it that firms offer benefit packages that are better for some workers than for others, raising fairness issues? Why don't firms just pay workers more and let them buy their own benefits? And why are large firms different from small firms?

2. PREFERENCES OVER BENEFITS AND PAY

One of the issues raised in the preceding section on child care was the possibility that workers would be better off if they were given enough extra pay to purchase their own benefit packages. This section explores that issue in more detail.

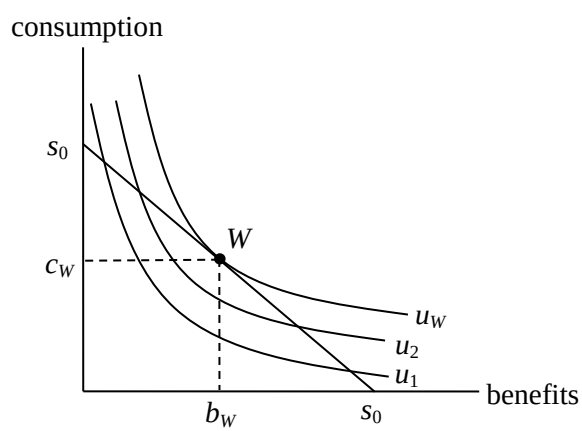
Workers earn income because it can be used to buy the things they care about, the goods and services that generate utility. Benefits are also goods and services that generate utility. However, income is used to buy hundreds of different goods and services, and benefits packages contain still more types of goods and services. Rather than talk about workers choosing amounts of hundreds of different goods and services, it is easier to divide the goods and services into two types, those provided in the benefits package and those bought with income.

Figure 20.1 shows the consumer choice problem for a worker deciding how to divide his total compensation between the goods and services provided in benefits packages and those purchased with income. The horizontal axis is labeled "benefits," and it measures the amount of goods and services that are contained in benefits packages that the worker consumes. The vertical axis is labeled "consumption," and it measures the amount of goods and services consumed that are not contained in benefits packages.

Let's begin with the following question. Suppose that the worker's total compensation package is worth s_0 and that he can use this money to buy either consumption goods or benefits. How much would he spend on benefits? This is a standard consumer choice problem, and we answer it using the tools of consumer theory. Figure 20.1 shows the budget line the worker faces. If he spends nothing on benefits he can spend a total of s_0 on consumption. For every dollar he wants to spend on benefits, he must give up a dollar of consumption on other goods and services, and so the slope of the budget line is −1.

FIGURE 20.1

The budget line shows all of the combinations of consumption and benefits that add up to the same total compensation, s_0. The worker's most preferred point is the one on the highest indifference curve, W. At this point the worker chooses a benefit package of size b_W and consumes the rest, c_W.



The worker's problem is to find his most-preferred point on the budget line. We can show this using indifference curves. An indifference curve is the set of all points that generate the same amount of utility. In other words, movements along the indifference curve leave the worker indifferent, neither increasing nor decreasing his utility. Movements to the northeast in the graph represent movements to points which have more consumption *and* more benefits, and since the worker likes more of both of these, movements to the northeast cannot leave the worker indifferent. For the same reason movements to the southwest give him less of both consumption and benefits, making him worse off, not leaving him indifferent. Indifference curves can only move from northwest to southeast, making them downward-sloping, as in the figure. Since movements to the northeast give the worker more of both types of goods, movements to higher indifference curves make the worker better off.

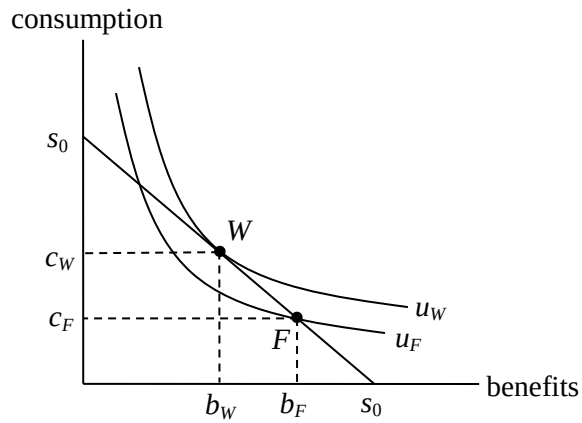
The most-preferred point on the budget line is the one on the highest indifference curve. This indifference curve must be tangent to the budget line, since it intersects the budget line at only one point. The most-preferred point is labeled W (for worker) in Figure 20.1, and at that point the worker spends b_W on benefits and c_W on consumption. The worker's most-preferred benefit package is b_W.

THE MOST-PREFERRED PACKAGE VS. THE ONE OFFERED BY THE FIRM

Figure 20.2 is very similar to Figure 20.1, except now there is another point, labeled F (for firm). The worker's most-preferred point is again W, but the firm does not let him choose. Instead the firm chooses for him, and offers the point F with a benefit package of size b_F. The total compensation is the same and equal to s_0 at both points, but the firm's benefit package is larger than the worker's most-preferred benefit package, b_W.

FIGURE 20.2

The worker's most-preferred combination is W, where the benefit package is b_W. The firm, however, offers the combination F, which has a larger benefit package, b_F. This makes the worker worse off than if he could choose himself, since F is on a lower indifference curve than W.

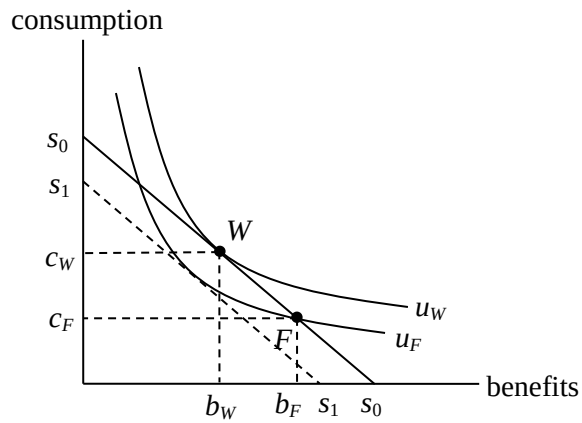


In this case the worker is worse off than he would be if he could choose his own benefit package anywhere along the budget line. We can tell this because the point F is on a lower indifference curve than the point W. In fact, F has to be on a lower indifference curve than W because W is the point on the budget line that is on the highest indifference curve. So, unless the firm offers the benefit package b_W, the worker is worse off than he would be if he could choose his own allocation of benefits and pay. Basically, by fixing the size of the benefit package the firm places a constraint on the worker's choice, and constraints on choice can only hurt in this setting.

We can measure how much the constraint hurts the worker. The dashed budget line in Figure 20.3 is parallel to the original budget line, but it is tangent to the indifference curve that runs through F. If the worker had faced this new budget line, he would have chosen a compensation plan that he would have found indifferent to the one at point F. But this new budget line intersects the vertical axis at s_1 which is lower than s_0, and so having the firm choose for him gives the worker the same amount of utility as getting paid s_1 and choosing his own benefit package. But his initial compensation package was worth s_0, not s_1, and so the firm choosing the benefit package for him is equivalent to reducing his total compensation by $s_0 - s_1$.

FIGURE 20.3

When the firm forces the worker to adopt the benefit package b_F instead of the most-preferred one, the worker's utility drops from u_W to u_F. The worker could also get utility u_F if his total compensation fell from s_0 to s_1 and he then chose his own benefit package from the dashed budget line. Since the firm's constraint on the benefit package reduces utility by the same amount as a decrease in total compensation of $s_0 - s_1$, this difference is a monetary measure of the loss caused by the worker not getting to choose his own benefit package.

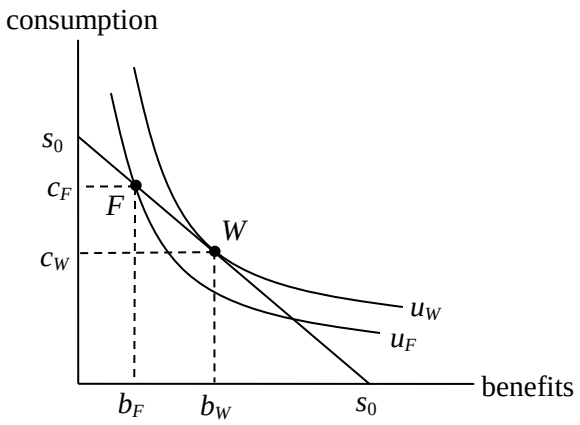


Figures 20.2 and 20.3 show a case in which the firm's benefit package is larger than the worker's most-preferred benefit package. It is easy to think of examples that fit this scenario. For child care, this would be the case of a worker without young children. The worker gets no utility from an on-site day care center, and so would prefer to have less of his total compensation spent on child care. Another example is a single worker who gets no utility from health insurance coverage for his spouse. Since he has no spouse, he would prefer to have less of his total compensation devoted to spousal insurance. A third example is a worker who does not drink coffee and would prefer to have the money the firm spends on coffee instead of the coffee itself.

Figure 20.4 shows a case in which the worker would prefer more benefits than the firm provides. Once again the worker's most-preferred point is W, but the point offered by the firm, F, has a smaller benefit package than the worker would like, since $b_W > b_F$. Examples of this scenario would be a worker with young children at a firm that does not provide on-site day care, or a worker with a family at a firm that does not provide family health coverage.

FIGURE 20.4

This figure shows the case in which the firm forces the worker to accept a smaller benefit package than his most-preferred package. As in the previous figures, the constraint on his choice reduces his utility.



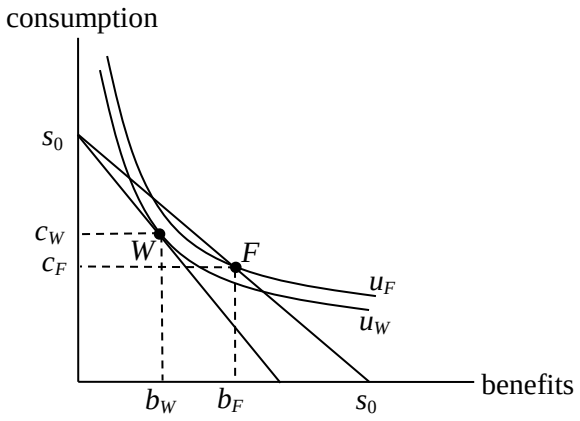
3. COST ADVANTAGES FOR THE FIRM

The previous section established that if the worker could purchase benefits at the same price as the firm pays for them, the worker would be better off being paid more and choosing his own benefit package. But this is not what happens in the real world. Many firms allow workers to purchase extra benefits, such as additional life insurance or additional health insurance for family members, but they do not allow workers to purchase fewer benefits. Why is this?

One reason is cost advantages. Firms can purchase the goods and services in the benefits package more cheaply than individual workers can. Before we explore why firms have this cost advantage, let's see how it impacts the worker's utility. Figure 20.5 shows what happens. If the worker's entire compensation package comes in the form of pay and not benefits, his income is s_0 as before. If the firm provides a dollar's worth of benefits, it does so by reducing pay by a dollar, and so the slope of the budget line when the firm pays for the benefits is −1. When the worker buys benefits, though, he must pay more for them than the firm would because of the firm's cost advantage. The budget line faced by the worker is steeper than the one that the firm operates on.

FIGURE 20.5

Because of the firm's cost advantage, when the firm chooses a compensation package it chooses a point on the higher budget line, but when the worker chooses a compensation package he must choose a point on the lower budget line. The firm offers point *F*. If the worker took all of his compensation in cash and then purchased his own benefits, the best he could do would be point *W*, which is on a lower indifference curve than point *F*. The worker is better off with the compensation package offered by the firm.



Suppose the firm offers the compensation package *F* with benefit package b_F. If the worker chooses his most-preferred compensation package on the steep budget line, he would choose point *W*, which is where his indifference curve is tangent to the steep budget line. As shown in the figure, though, *W* is on a lower indifference curve than *F*. Because of the cost advantage, the worker is better off with the firm's benefit package than he would be getting more pay and buying his own benefits.

THE SOURCES OF COST ADVANTAGES

There are many reasons why a company can purchase the goods and services in benefits packages more cheaply than individual workers can. The most obvious example is volume discounts. Large firms can often negotiate volume discounts with vendors. For example, a large firm might be able to negotiate low health club membership fees for its employees. Without the volume discount, individual workers would have to pay the same membership fee as everyone else.

There are three other reasons that are more important than volume discounts.

1. *Spreading fixed costs over workers*. Some companies provide their workers with monthly chair massages. Most of these workers would not go out and purchase massages on their own. An individual worker would have to pay quite a bit for a masseuse to come to his place of employment to give him a chair massage because she would have to be compensated for her travel time and expenses. A company, though, can hire the masseuse for an entire day, or even full-time, and spread those travel cost over all of the workers, greatly reducing the cost of a massage.

Many benefits entail costs that can be spread over workers. When firms provide their workers with paid vacation and paid sick leave, they must assign someone the task of keeping track of all of the leave time. This cost can be spread over all of the workers, reducing the cost of providing these benefits. Another example is when the firm provides a facility such as a weight room or a cafeteria. The fixed cost of building the facility is spread over all of the workers, making the facility affordable for the firm.

The spreading of fixed costs works better for large firms than for small ones because they have more workers over whom to spread the costs. A five-person firm is unlikely to hire a human resource officer to oversee the benefits package because the cost of that person's salary would have to be spread over the other five workers. They would be unwilling to take the pay cut necessary to hire the human resource officer.

2. *Solving the adverse selection problem*. If an individual worker wanted to purchase health insurance, he would face an adverse selection problem, as noted in Chapter 15. The only reason a worker would purchase health insurance is if either he was high enough risk that the expected benefits outweighed the cost, or if he was sufficiently risk averse that he is willing to pay the large premium. Workers in the second group would be profitable for the insurance company to cover, but workers in the first group would be unprofitable. Because workers have information about which group they are in, the adverse selection problem makes it difficult and expensive for low-risk but very risk averse workers who would like to buy health insurance.

Firms can solve this adverse selection problem because they hire workers for reasons that have nothing to do with their health status. The workers in a large firm, then, are representative of a cross-section of the working-age population in terms of health status, and insurance companies have enough information to make a profit from a cross-section of the population. The large firm cannot exploit an informational advantage because it is unlikely to have one. Small firms, though, still face an adverse selection problem. Workers at small firms know each others' health status, and so can still use this information to take advantage of the health insurer.

3. *Tax advantages*. When a firm provides benefits, those benefits are a cost for the firm and reduce the firm's tax bill. When an individual buys benefits, those are ordinary

consumption expenses and cannot be deducted from the tax bill. So, when the firm purchases benefits the government pays part of the cost, but when individual workers purchase the same goods and services the government does not share the cost. This makes it cheaper for all firms, both large and small, to purchase the benefits than it is for individual workers to buy the same goods and services.

This is not the only tax advantage, though. When workers receive benefits from their employers, that "income" is not taxed. If they were to receive the dollar value of the benefits instead, with the intention that they go out and purchase the same goods and services for themselves, that income would be taxed. After paying income taxes on the additional income, the workers would no longer be able to afford the same bundle of consumption goods and benefits that they could afford when the firm provided the benefits.

4. *Externalities*. Workers are not always the only ones who benefit from consuming the goods and services in benefits packages. Often the firm profits when the workers use the benefits the firm provides. The best example is sick leave. When workers do not have sick leave they tend to come into work when they are sick. Not only are they unproductive when they are sick, but they sometimes infect coworkers, exacerbating the problem. Workers with sick leave can stay home when they are sick, which is actually more profitable for the firm.

Health club memberships and vacation leave can also be profitable for the firm. Workers who do not take care of themselves tend to be less productive and also get sick more often. Vacations rejuvenate workers, making them more productive. This is why so many companies allow their workers to take paid vacation.

PHARMACIES AT CAESARS CASINOS

Caesars Entertainment, which operates Caesars Palace and other casinos in Las Vegas and Atlantic City, has 32,000 employees. In 2004 it began setting up pharmacies in its casinos to dispense free generic prescription drugs to its employees.

The move hopes to save Caesars money in two ways. First, by making medication cheap and easy to get it hopes that its workers will both recover from illnesses more quickly and not infect as many coworkers. The second source of savings comes from moving employees away from subsidized brand-name drugs to generic drugs. Before the new program, Caesars paid an average of $28 per generic prescription and $100 per brand-name prescription. Under the new program it is able to reduce the price of the generic medications to an average of $15 for a 30-day supply, and it is able to get more of its workers to switch to generic medications.

Source: Sally Roberts, "Caesars Betting Onsite Pharmacy Will Yield Savings," *Workforce Management*, May 3, 2004.

4. THE PROBLEMS FACED BY SMALL FIRMS

As already noted, small firms do not share in all of the cost advantages that large firms enjoy. They cannot solve the adverse selection problem for health insurance, they do not have enough employees over whom to spread fixed costs, and they do not provide enough volume to get any volume discounts. This means that large firms can pay their workers the same amount as small firms but provide better benefits packages, making it difficult for small firms to attract workers. To get workers, then, small firms must provide their workers with larger compensation packages, reducing the profitability of small firms.

Economists expect that in cases like this the market would provide a solution, and it has. Professional employer organizations (PEOs) are firms whose business is providing benefits to employees of other firms. A PEO signs on client firms and takes over the human resource duties of those client firms. By pooling together workers from a large number of small firms, the PEO has all of the cost advantages of a large firm. Health insurance risks are pooled over a large population, so it can provide affordable health insurance. The administrative costs borne by the PEO are spread over all of the workers at all of the client firms, so the advantages from spreading fixed costs can be realized. Finally, the PEO can negotiate volume discounts with the providers of benefits.

One PEO is Houston-based Administaff, Inc. It has grown from $750,000 in revenue in 1986 to $892 million in revenue in 2003, and it currently serves 4500 companies and 75,000 workers. Administaff is not unusual. The National Association of Professional Employer Organizations has more than 700 members. The industry has grown by 20% per year for the past six years, and generates $43 billion in revenue.

PROBLEMS

1. How do the fixed benefit costs per worker change when the firm grows?

2. Why can large firms solve the adverse selection problem for health insurance but small firms cannot?

3. Draw a graph with salary on the vertical axis and benefits on the horizontal axis that shows the case in which the firm makes the worker consume more benefits than he would if he could choose the benefit package himself.

4. Draw a graph similar to that in Figure 20.5 in which the worker must pay a higher price for benefits than the firm would on his behalf, but the worker would still prefer to take all of his compensation in salary.

GLOSSARY

Adverse selection – a situation in which the bad types behave like the good types in order to get selected for a transaction.

Backward induction – a technique for solving sequential games in which one starts by finding best responses at the end of the game and works back toward the beginning of the game.

Best-response curve – a graphical representation of the best-response function. It shows one player's best response to each of the other player's actions.

Best-response function – a mathematical function identifying one player's best response to each of the other player's possible actions.

Call option – an option which gives the owner the right to buy a share of stock for a pre-specified price during a designated time period.

Collusion – when workers get together to reduce their output in order to manipulate the compensation scheme offered by the firm.

Complementarity – a situation in which the members of a team can produce more when they work together than they can when they work individually.

Contest – a situation in which two or more players compete for a prize.

Cooperation – when workers work together to increase the firm's output.

Disagreement payoff – the payoff a participant in a bargaining problem receives if no agreement is reached.

Discount rate – the rate, like an interest rate, used to value future payoffs. Higher discount rates make future payoffs less valuable, and reflect greater impatience.

Duopoly – a market with exactly two firms.

Efficiency wage scheme – a situation in which the firm pays the worker an above-normal wage and the worker exerts extra effort.

Equal Compensation Principle – If the firm's profit is maximized when the employee undertakes more than one costly activity, all of the valuable activities must be compensated equally at the margin; otherwise the employee undertakes only those activities that are rewarded most highly.

Equilibrium – a situation in which there is no pressure for anything to change.

Exercise price – the pre-specified price at which an option-owner can purchase a share of stock.

Externalities – situations in which the actions of one individual or firm affect the net benefit of another individual or firm.

Favoritism – the tendency for the supervisor to select one worker over the other even though all evidence suggests that the other worker should have been selected.

Forced rating system – a situation in which supervisors must place a certain percentage of their employees in each rating category.

Free-riding – the tendency of individuals to not contribute themselves to a public good, but instead to rely on the contributions of others to provide the public good.

Gain-sharing – a compensation scheme similar to profit-sharing except the firm shares increases in some variable other than profit, such as revenue or cost-savings. The firm sets a target level for the variable, and pays the employees a fraction of any increase in the variable above the target level.

Game – a situation in which two or more parties interact to jointly determine their payoffs.

Game tree – a representation of a sequential game.

General skills – skills that make a worker more productive and are useful at other firms besides the one where he currently works.

Global optimum – the activity level that maximizes net benefit.

Human capital – the skills, knowledge, and experience that makes a worker more productive.

Incentive compatibility constraint – a condition that states that a high-type worker cannot be better off mimicking a low-type worker.

Incentive Intensity Principle – The optimal piece rate (or the optimal sales commission rate) is higher when: (1) the firm's marginal net revenue is higher; (2) employees are less risk averse; (3) the employer can measure effort more accurately; and (4) employees are less concerned with fairness.

Income risk – random fluctuations in income.

Influence activities – activities that improve a worker's probability of promotion without adding to the profitability of the firm.

Information rent – the additional net benefit a worker receives to induce him to reveal that he has high productivity. Information rents are paid to avoid moral hazard.

Local optimum – an activity level for which there is no other nearby activity level that generates strictly higher net benefit.

Marginal analysis – the identification of local optima through a comparison of marginal benefit and marginal cost.

Marginal benefit – the additional benefit from engaging in one more (small) unit of an activity.

Marginal condition – a mathematical expression in which marginal benefit is set equal to marginal cost.

Marginal cost – the additional cost involved in engaging in one more (small) unit of an activity.

Marginal net revenue – the additional net revenue generated by producing and selling one more unit of output.

Marginal probability – in a tournament, the additional probability of winning generated when a worker exerts one more unit of effort.

Marginal revenue – the additional revenue generated by selling one more unit of output.

Marginal revenue product of labor – the additional revenue resulting from the employment of one more unit of labor.

Moral hazard – a situation in which the high-types mimic the low-types.

Mutual best responses – a pair of strategies, one for each player, with the property that each player's strategy is a best response to the other player's strategy.

Nash bargaining solution – a particular solution to the bargaining problem that satisfies the properties of Pareto efficiency, invariance to equivalent representations, symmetry, and independence of irrelevant alternatives.

Nash equilibrium – in a game, a combination of strategies that are mutual best responses.

Net benefit – benefit minus cost.

Net revenue – revenue minus all non-labor costs.

Node – in a game tree, a point at which a player makes a decision.

Noise variable – a random variable with an expected value of zero.

Nonexclusionary – a good is nonexclusionary if it is impossible for the producer to prohibit anyone from consuming it.

Nonrival in consumption – a good is nonrival in consumption if one individual consuming it does not preclude another individual from consuming it, too.

Option value – in a tournament, the value of the right to compete in higher levels of the tournament.

Pareto efficient allocation – an allocation is Pareto efficient if there is no other allocation that makes someone better off and no one worse off.

Pareto efficient effort level – the effort level that generates a Pareto efficient allocation.

Participation constraint – for the worker, a condition that states that he must receive at least as much net benefit working at the job in question than in the next-best alternative use of his time. For the firm, a condition that states that its profit from employing the worker in question must be at least zero.

Payoff matrix – a tabular representation of the payoffs to the players in a simultaneous game.

Peter Principle – in every hierarchy, each employee tends to rise to his own level of incompetence.

Piece rate – a payment to a worker for every unit of output produced.

Piece rate compensation scheme – a compensation scheme consisting of a (possibly negative) salary and a piece rate.

Player – a participant in a game.

Pooling equilibrium – an equilibrium in which different types use the same strategy.

Portability of a skill – how much of the value of the skill goes with the worker when he moves to another firm.

Probationary contract – a contract in which new workers go through a probationary period in which they receive low pay, and at the end of which the firm can fire the worker.

Professional employer organization (PEO) – a firm whose business is providing benefits to employees of other firms.

Profit-sharing – a compensation scheme in which the firm pays to employees a share of profits above some target level, provided that target level of profit is met.

Public good – a good that is nonexclusionary and nonrival in consumption.

Put option – the right to sell a share of stock for a pre-specified price during a designated time period.

Rating inflation – a situation in which all employees receive higher ratings than they deserve.

Residual demand curve – in a duopoly, the demand left over for one firm after the other firm has sold all of its output.

Revenue – the amount a firm receives from the sales of its output.

Risk – random fluctuations in income or payoffs.

Risk averse – an individual is risk averse if he is willing to pay to avoid risk.

Risk premium – the amount a risk averse individual is willing to pay in order to avoid randomness and receive the expected value of the gamble for sure.

Sales commission – a payment to a worker for every dollar of revenue generated by that worker.

Self-selection – a situation in which one type chooses to enter a market and the other type does not.

Separating equilibrium – an equilibrium in which different types use different strategies.

Sequential game – a game in which time passes and players can observe their opponents' past actions.

Signal – a costly activity that has no effect on an individual's type but whose cost is related to his type.

Simultaneous game – a game in which the players make their choices at the same time.

Socially efficient – same as Pareto efficient

Solution of a game – a prediction of what strategies the players of the game will choose.

Specific skills – skills that make a worker more productive at his current employer but do not make him more productive anywhere else.

Stock option – the right to buy a share of stock for a pre-specified price during a designated time period.

Stopping rule – a set of conditions under which a process stops.

Strategy – a choice made by a player in a game. In a sequential game a strategy is a complete contingent plan.

Total surplus – the combined net benefit of all parties in a transaction or economic relationship.

Tournament – a sequence of contests in which the winners of the first round compete in the second round, the winners of the second round compete in the third round, and so on.

Training – education provided or paid for by the employer.